

# Chapter 700 Examination of Applications

- 701 Statutory Authority for Examination
- 702 Requisites of the Application
  - 702.01 Obviously Informal Cases
- 703 "General Information Concerning Patents"
- 704 Search
- 705 Patentability Reports
  - 705.01 Instructions re Patentability Reports
    - 705.01(a) Nature of P.R., Its Use and Disposal
    - 705.01(b) Sequence of Examination
    - 705.01(c) Counting and Recording P.R.'s
    - 705.01(d) Duplicate Prints of Drawings
    - 705.01(e) Limitation as to Use
    - 705.01(f) Interviews With Applicants
  - 706 Rejection of Claims
    - 706.01 Contrasted With Objections
    - 706.02 Rejections on Prior Art
      - 706.02(a) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (b), or (e); Printed Publication or Patent
      - 706.02(b) Overcoming a 35 U.S.C. 102 Rejection Based on a Printed Publication or Patent
      - 706.02(c) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (b); Knowledge by Others or Public Use or Sale
      - 706.02(d) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(c)
      - 706.02(e) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(d)
      - 706.02(f) Provisional Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(e); Reference is a Copending U.S. Application
      - 706.02(g) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(f)
      - 706.02(h) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(g)
      - 706.02(i) Form Paragraphs for Use in Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102
      - 706.02(j) Contents of a 35 U.S.C. 103 Rejection
      - 706.02(k) Provisional Rejection (Obviousness) Under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103
      - 706.02(l) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 and 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103; \*\* 35 U.S.C. 103 > (c) <
      - 706.02(m) Form Paragraphs for Use in Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 103
      - > 706.02(n) Biotechnology Process Applications; 35 U.S.C. 103(b) <
    - 706.03 Rejections Not Based on Prior Art
      - 706.03(a) Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 101
        - 706.03(a)(1) Guidelines For Examination of Applications for Compliance With the Utility Requirement of 35 U.S.C. 101
        - 706.03(b) Barred by Atomic Energy Act
        - 706.03(c) Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 112, First Paragraph
        - 706.03(d) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 112, Second Paragraph
        - 706.03(k) Duplicate Claims
        - 706.03(m) Nonelected Inventions
        - 706.03(o) New Matter
        - 706.03(s) Foreign Filing Without License
        - 706.03(u) Disclaimer
        - 706.03(v) After Interference or Public Use Proceeding
        - 706.03(w) *Res Judicata*
      - 706.03(x) Reissue
  - 706.04 Rejection of Previously Allowed Claims
  - 706.05 Rejection After Allowance of Application
  - 706.06 Rejection of Claims Copied From Patent
  - 706.07 Final Rejection
    - 706.07(a) Final Rejection, When Proper on Second Action
    - 706.07(b) Final Rejection, When Proper on First Action
    - 706.07(c) Final Rejection, Premature
    - 706.07(d) Final Rejection, Withdrawal of, Premature
    - 706.07(e) Withdrawal of Final Rejection, General
    - 706.07(f) Time for Response to Final Rejection
    - 706.07(g) Transitional After—Final Practice
  - 707 Examiner's Letter or Action
    - 707.01 Primary Examiner Indicates Action for New Assistant
    - 707.02(a) Cases Up for Third Action and 5—Year Cases
    - 707.05 Citation of References
      - 707.05(a) Copies of Cited References
      - 707.05(b) Citation of Related Art by Applicants
      - 707.05(c) Order of Listing
      - 707.05(d) Reference Cited in Subsequent Actions
      - 707.05(e) Data Used in Citing References
      - 707.05(f) Effective Dates of Declassified Printed Matter
      - 707.05(g) Incorrect Citation of References
    - 707.06 Citation of Decisions, Orders, Memorandums, and Notices
    - 707.07 Completeness and Clarity of Examiner's Action
      - 707.07(a) Complete Action on Formal Matters
      - 707.07(b) Requiring New Oath
      - 707.07(c) Draftsman's Requirement
      - 707.07(d) Language To Be Used In Rejecting Claims
      - 707.07(e) Note All Outstanding Requirements
      - 707.07(f) Answer All Material Traversed
      - 707.07(g) Piecemeal Examination
      - 707.07(h) Notify of Inaccuracies in Amendment
      - 707.07(i) Each Claim To Be Mentioned in Each Letter
      - 707.07(j) State When Claims Are Allowable
      - 707.07(k) Numbering Paragraphs
      - 707.07(l) Comment on Examples
    - 707.08 Reviewing and Initialing by Assistant Examiner
    - 707.09 Signing by Primary or Other Authorized Examiner
    - 707.10 Entry
    - 707.11 Date
    - 707.12 Mailing
    - 707.13 Returned Office Action
  - 708 Order of Examination
    - 708.01 List of Special Cases
    - 708.02 Petition To Make Special
    - 708.03 Examiner Tenders Resignation
  - 709 Suspension of Action
    - 709.01 Overlapping Applications by Same Applicant or Owned by Same Assignee
  - 710 Period for Response
    - 710.01 Statutory Period
      - 710.01(a) Statutory Period, How Computed

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- 710.02 Shortened Statutory Period and Time Limit Actions Computed
- 710.02(b) Shortened Statutory Period: Situations in Which Used
- 710.02(c) Time—Limit Actions: Situations in Which Used
- 710.02(d) Difference Between Shortened Statutory and Time—Limit Periods
- 710.02(e) Extension of Time
- 710.04 Two Periods Running
- 710.04(a) Copying Patent Claims
- 710.05 Period Ending on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal Holiday
- 710.06 Situations When Response Period is Reset or Restarted
- 711 Abandonment**
- 711.01 Express or Formal Abandonment
- 711.02 Failure To Take Required Action During Statutory Period
- 711.02(a) Insufficiency of Response
- 711.02(b) Special Situations Involving Abandonment
- 711.02(c) Termination of Proceedings
- 711.03 Reconsideration of Holding of Abandonment; Revival
- 711.03(a) Holding Based on Insufficiency of Response
- 711.03(b) Holding Based on Failure To Respond Within Period
- 711.03(c) Petitions Relating to Abandonment
- 711.03(d) Examiner's Statement on Petition To Set Aside Examiner's Holding
- 711.03(e) Petitions Relating to Revival of Abandoned Provisional Applications
- 711.04 Disposition of Abandoned Applications
- 711.04(a) Pulling and Forwarding Abandoned Applications
- 711.04(b) Ordering of Patented and Abandoned Files
- 711.04(c) Notifying Applicants of Abandonment
- 711.05 Letter of Abandonment Received After Application is Allowed
- 711.06 Abstracts, Abbreviations, and Defensive Publications
- 711.06(a) Citation and Use of Abstracts, Abbreviations, and Defensive Publications as References
- 712 Abandonment for Failure To Pay Issue Fee**
- 713 Interviews**
- 713.01 General Policy, How Conducted
- 713.02 Interviews Prior to First Official Action
- 713.03 Interview for "Sounding Out" Examiner Not Permitted
- 713.04 Substance of Interview Must Be Made of Record
- 713.05 Interviews Prohibited or Granted, Special Situations
- 713.06 No *Inter Partes* Questions Discussed *Ex Parte*
- 713.07 Exposure of Other Cases
- 713.08 Demonstration, Exhibits, Models
- 713.09 Finally Rejected Application
- 713.10 Interview Preceding Filing Amendment Under 37 CFR 1.312
- 714 Amendments, Applicant's Action**
- 714.01 Signatures to Amendments
- 714.01(a) Unsigned or Improperly Signed Amendment
- 714.01(c) Signed by Attorney Not of Record
- 714.01(d) Amendment Signed by Applicant But Not by Attorney of Record
- 714.02 Must Be Fully Responsive
- 714.03 Amendments Not Fully Responsive Action To Be Taken
- 714.04 Claims Presented in Amendment With No Attempt To Point Out Patentable Novelty
- 714.05 Examiner Should Immediately Inspect
- 714.06 Amendments Sent to Wrong Group
- 714.07 Amendments Not in Permanent Ink
- 714.08 Telegraphic Amendment
- 714.09 Amendments Before First Office Action
- 714.10 Claims Added in Excess of Filing Fee
- 714.11 Amendment Filed During Interference Proceedings
- 714.12 Amendments After Final Rejection or Action
- 714.13 Amendments After Final Rejection or Action, Procedure Followed
- 714.14 Amendments After Allowance of All Claims
- 714.15 Amendment Received in Examining Group After Mailing of Notice of Allowance
- 714.16 Amendment After Notice of Allowance, 37 CFR 1.312
- 714.16(a) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312, Copied Patent Claims
- 714.16(b) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312, Filed With a Motion Under 37 CFR 1.633
- 714.16(c) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312, Additional Claims
- 714.16(d) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312, Handling
- 714.16(e) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312, Entry in Part
- 714.17 Amendment Filed After the Period for Response Has Expired
- 714.18 Entry of Amendments
- 714.19 List of Amendments, Entry Denied
- 714.20 List of Amendments Entered in Part
- 714.21 Amendments Inadvertently Entered, No Legal Effect
- 714.22 Entry of Amendments, Directions for
- 714.23 Entry of Amendments, Directions for, Defective
- 714.24 Amendment of Amendments
- 714.25 Discourtesy of Applicant or Attorney
- 715 Swearing Back of Reference—Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131**
- 715.01 37 CFR 1.131 Affidavits versus 37 CFR 1.132 Affidavits
- 715.01(a) Reference is a Joint Patent to Applicant and Another
- 715.01(b) Reference and Application Have Common Assignee
- 715.01(c) Reference is Publication of Applicant's Own Invention
- 715.02 How Much of the Claimed Invention Must Be Shown, Including the General Rule as to Generic Claims

- 715.03 Genus—Species, Practice Relative to Cases Where Predictability Is In Question
- 715.04 Who May Make Affidavit or Declaration; Formal Requirements of Affidavits and Declarations
- 715.05 Patent Claiming Same Invention
- 715.07 Facts and Documentary Evidence
- 715.07(a) Diligence
- 715.07(b) Interference Testimony Sometimes Used
- 715.07(c) Acts Relied Upon Must Have Been Carried Out in This Country or a NAFTA or WTO Member Country
- 715.07(d) Disposition of Exhibits
- 715.08 Passed Upon by Primary Examiner
- 715.09 Seasonable Presentation
- 715.10 Review of Affidavit or Declaration for Evidence of Prior Public Use or Sale or Failure to Disclose Best Mode
- 716 Affidavits or Declarations Traversing Rejections, 37 CFR 1.132**
- 716.01 Generally Applicable Criteria
- 716.01(a) Objective Evidence of Nonobviousness
- 716.01(b) Nexus Requirement and Evidence of Nonobviousness
- 716.01(c) Probative Value of Objective Evidence
- 716.01(d) Weighing Objective Evidence
- 716.02 Allegations of Unexpected Results
- 716.02(a) Evidence Must Show Unexpected Results
- 716.02(b) Burden on Applicant
- 716.02(c) Weighing Evidence of Expected and Unexpected Results
- 716.02(d) Unexpected Results Commensurate in Scope With Claimed Invention
- 716.02(e) Comparison with Closest Prior Art
- 716.02(f) Advantages Disclosed or Inherent
- 716.02(g) Declaration or Affidavit Form
- 716.03 Commercial Success
- 716.03(a) Commercial Success Commensurate in Scope With Claimed Invention
- 716.03(b) Commercial Success Derived From Claimed Invention
- 716.04 Long—Felt Need and Failure of Others
- 716.05 Skepticism of Experts
- 716.06 Copying
- 716.07 Inoperability of References
- 716.08 Utility and Operability of Applicant's Disclosure
- 716.09 Sufficiency of Disclosure
- 716.10 Attribution
- 717 File Wrapper**
- 717.01 Papers in File Wrapper
- 717.01(a) Arrangement of Papers in File Wrapper
- 717.01(b) Prints
- 717.02 Data Entered on File Wrapper
- 717.02(b) Name or Residence of Inventor or Title Changed
- 717.03 Classification During Examination
- 717.04 Index of Claims
- 717.05 Field of Search
- 717.06 Foreign Filing Dates
- 717.07 Related Applications
- 720 Public Use Proceedings**
- 720.01 Preliminary Handling
- 720.02 Examiner Determination of *Prima Facie* Showing
- 720.03 Preliminary Hearing
- 720.04 Public Use Proceeding Testimony
- 720.05 Final Decision
- 724 Trade Secret, Proprietary, and Protective Order Materials**
- 724.01 Completeness of the Patent File Wrapper
- 724.02 Method of Submitting Trade Secret, Proprietary, and/or Protective Order Materials
- 724.03 Types of Trade Secret, Proprietary, and/or Protective Order Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02
- 724.04 Office Treatment and Handling of Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02
- 724.04(a) Materials Submitted in an Application Covered by 35 U.S.C. 122
- 724.04(b) Materials Submitted in Reissue Applications Open to the Public Under 37 CFR 1.11(b)
- 724.04(c) Materials Submitted in Reexamination Files Open to the Public Under 37 CFR 1.11(d)
- 724.05 Petition To Expunge Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02

## 701 Statutory Authority for Examination [R-1]

### >35 U.S.C. 131. Examination of application.

The Commissioner shall cause an examination to be made of the application and the alleged new invention; and if on such examination it appears that the applicant is entitled to a patent under the law, the Commissioner shall issue a patent therefor.

The main conditions precedent to the grant of a patent to an applicant are set forth in 35 U.S.C. 101, 102, 103.

### 35 U.S.C. 101. Inventions patentable.

Whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, may obtain a patent therefor, subject to the conditions and requirements of this title.

Form Paragraph 7.04 copies 35 U.S.C. 101.

### 35 U.S.C. 100. Definitions.

When used in this title unless the context otherwise indicates —

(a) The term “invention” means invention or discovery.

(b) The term “process” means process, art or method, and includes a new use of a known process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter, or material.

(c) The terms "United States" and "this country" mean the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

(d) The word "patentee" includes not only the patentee to whom the patent was issued but also the successors in title to the patentee. <

## 702 Requisites of the Application [R-1]

> When a new application is assigned in the examining group, the examiner should review the contents of the application to determine if the application meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 111(a). Any matters affecting the filing date or abandonment of the application, such as lack of an oath or declaration, filing fee, or claims should be checked before the application is placed in the storage racks to await the first action.

The examiner should be careful to see that the application meets all the requisites set forth in MPEP Chapter 600 both as to formal matters and as to the completeness and clarity of the disclosure. If all of the requisites are not met, applicant may be called upon for necessary amendments. Such amendments, however, must not include new matter. <

### 702.01 Obviously Informal Cases [R-2]

When an application is reached for its first action and it is then discovered to be impractical to give a complete action on the merits because of an informal or insufficient disclosure, the following procedure may be followed:

(1) A reasonable search should be made of the invention so far as it can be understood from the disclosure, objects of invention and claims and any apparently pertinent art cited. In the rare case in which the disclosure is so incomprehensible as to preclude a reasonable search the action should clearly inform applicant that no search was made;

(2) Informalities noted by the Application Division and deficiencies in the drawing should be pointed out by means of attachments to the examiner's letter (see MPEP § 707.07(a));

(3) A requirement should be made that the specification be revised to conform to idiomatic English and United States practice;

(4) The claims should be rejected as failing to define the invention in the manner required by 35 U.S.C. 112 if they are informal. A blanket rejection is usually sufficient.

The examiner should \* attempt to point out the \* points of informality in the specification and claims. The

burden is on the applicant to revise the application to render it in proper form for a complete examination.

If a number of obviously informal claims are filed in an application, such claims should be treated as being a single claim for fee and examination purposes.

It is obviously to applicant's advantage to *file* the application with an adequate disclosure and with claims which conform to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office usages and requirements. This should be done whenever possible. If, however, due to the pressure of a Convention deadline or other reasons, this is not possible, applicants are urged to submit *promptly, preferably within 3 months after filing*, a preliminary amendment which corrects the obvious informalities. The informalities should be corrected to the extent that the disclosure is readily understood and the claims to be initially examined are in proper form, particularly as to dependency, and otherwise clearly define the invention. "New matter" must be excluded from these amendments since preliminary amendments do not enjoy original disclosure status, MPEP § 608.04(b).

Whenever, upon examination, it is found that the terms or phrases or modes of characterization used to describe the invention are not sufficiently consonant with the art to which the invention pertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to enable the examiner to make the examination specified in 37 CFR 1.104, the examiner should make a reasonable search of the invention so far as it can be understood from the disclosure. The action of the examiner may be limited to a citation of what appears to be the most pertinent prior art found and a request that applicant correlate the terminology of the specification with art-accepted terminology before further action is made.

Use Form Paragraph 7.01 where the terminology is such that a proper search cannot be made.

#### ¶ 7.01 Use of Terminology, Cannot Be Examined

A preliminary examination of this application reveals that it includes terminology which is so different from that which is generally accepted in the art to which this invention pertains that it is impractical to make a proper search of the prior art.

For example: [1]

Applicant is required to provide a clarification of these matters or correlation with art-accepted terminology so that a proper comparison with the prior art can be made. Applicant should be careful not to introduce any new matter into the disclosure (i.e., matter which is not supported by the disclosure as originally filed).

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire THIRTY DAYS from the date of this letter.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Use this or paragraph 7.02 when a proper search cannot be made.
2. In bracket 1, fill in an appropriate indication of the terminology, properties, units of data, etc., that are the problem as well as the pages of specification involved.
3. For the procedure to be followed when only the drawing is informal, see MPEP §§ 608.02(a) and 608.02(b).

Use Form Paragraph 7.02 where the application is so incomprehensible that a reasonable search cannot be made.

**¶ 7.02 Disclosure is Incomprehensible**

The disclosure is objected to under 37 CFR 1.71, as being so incomprehensible as to preclude a reasonable search of the prior art by the examiner. For example, the following items are not understood: [1].

Applicant is required to submit an amendment which clarifies the disclosure so that the examiner may make a proper comparison of the invention with the prior art.

Applicant should be careful not to introduce any new matter into the disclosure (i.e., matter which is not supported by the disclosure as originally filed).

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire THIRTY DAYS from the date of this letter.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Use this paragraph when a search cannot be made.
2. In bracket 1, indicate the page numbers and features which are not understood.
3. See form paragraphs 6.28 and 6.30 for improper idiomatic English.

Use Form Paragraph 7.03 where the invention cannot be understood because of illegible handwritten pages.

**¶ 7.03 Pages Are Illegible**

The examiner cannot understand the invention because certain portions of the disclosure are illegible. The illegible portion(s) consist of [1].

Applicant is required to submit an appropriate amendment rectifying this deficiency. In the alternative, a substitute specification, preferably in typed, double spaced format, may be filed. The filing of a substitute specification requires the submission of a hand-corrected copy of the portions of the original specification which are being added or deleted with additions being underlined and deletions being bracketed. In addition, a statement that the substitute specification contains no new matter and that the substitute specification includes the same changes as are indicated in the hand corrected original specification is required. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office. See MPEP § 714.20.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire THIRTY DAYS from the date of this letter.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, identify the portions of the specification which are illegible.
2. This form paragraph is to be used only when the invention cannot be understood because of the illegible material; see MPEP § 702.01.

3. See Chapter 1700 for handwritten specifications filed by *pro se* applicants.
4. Use form paragraph 7.02 when the disclosure is incomprehensible.

For the procedure to be followed when only the drawing is informal, see MPEP § 608.02(a) and § 608.02(b).

**703 "General Information Concerning Patents" [R-1]**

>The pamphlet "General Information Concerning Patents" for use by applicants contemplating the filing or prosecution of their own applications, may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402. <

**704 Search [R-1]**

>After reading the specification and claims, the examiner searches the prior art.

The subject of searching is more fully treated in MPEP Chapter 900. See MPEP § 904 through § 904.02. The invention should be thoroughly understood before a search is undertaken. However, informal cases, or those which can only be imperfectly understood when they come up for action in their regular turn are also given a search, in order to avoid piecemeal prosecution.

**PREVIOUS EXAMINER'S SEARCH**

When an examiner is assigned to act on an application which has received one or more actions by some other examiner, full faith and credit should be given to the search and action of the previous examiner unless there is a clear error in the previous action or knowledge of other prior art. In general the second examiner should not take an entirely new approach to the case or attempt to reorient the point of view of the previous examiner, or make a new search in the mere hope of finding something. See MPEP § 717.05. <

**705 Patentability Reports [R-1]**

>Where an application, properly assigned to one examining group, is found to contain one or more claims, *per se*, classifiable in one or more other groups, which claims are not divisible *inter se* or from the claims which govern classification of the application in the first group,

**705.01**

the application may be referred to the other group or groups concerned for a report as to the patentability of certain designated claims. This report is known as a Patentability Report (P.R.) and is signed by the primary examiner in the reporting group.

The report, if legibly written, need not be typed.

Note that the Patentability Report practice is suspended, except in extraordinary circumstances. See MPEP § 705.01(e). <

**705.01 Instructions re Patentability Reports**

**[R-1]**

>When an application comes up for any action and the primary examiners involved (i.e., from both the requesting and the requested group) agree that a Patentability Report is necessary, and if the Group Director of the requesting group approves, the application is forwarded to the proper group with a memorandum attached, for instance, "For Patentability Report from group -- as to claims --." <

**705.01(a) Nature of P.R., Its Use and Disposal**

**[R-1]**

>The primary examiner in the group from which the Patentability Report is requested, if he or she approves the request, will direct the preparation of the Patentability Report. This Patentability Report is written or typed on a memorandum form and will include the citation of all pertinent references and a complete action on all claims involved. The field of search covered should be endorsed on the file wrapper by the examiner making the report. When an examiner to whom a case has been forwarded for a Patentability Report is of the opinion that final action is in order as to the referred claims, he or she should so state. The Patentability Report when signed by the primary examiner in the reporting group will be returned to the group to which the application is regularly assigned and placed in the file wrapper.

The examiner preparing the Patentability Report will be entitled to receive an explanation of the disclosure from the examiner to whom the case is assigned to avoid duplication of work.

If the primary examiner in a reporting group is of the opinion that a Patentability Report is not in order, he or she should so advise the primary examiner in the forwarding group.

**DISAGREEMENT AS TO CLASSIFICATION**

Conflict of opinion as to classification may be referred to a patent classifier for decision.

If the primary examiner in the group having jurisdiction of the case agrees with the Patentability Report, he or she should incorporate the substance thereof in his or her action, which action will be complete as to *all* claims. The Patentability Report in such a case is *not* given a paper number but is allowed to remain in the file until the case is finally disposed of by allowance or abandonment, at which time it should be removed.

**DISAGREEMENT ON PATENTABILITY REPORT**

If the primary examiner does not agree with the Patentability Report or any portion thereof, he or she may consult with the primary examiner responsible for the report. If agreement as to the resulting action cannot be reached, the primary examiner having jurisdiction of the case need not rely on the Patentability Report but may make his or her own action on the referred claims, in which case the Patentability Report should be removed from the file.

**APPEAL TAKEN**

When an appeal is taken from the rejection of claims, all of which are examinable in the group preparing a Patentability Report, and the application is otherwise allowable, formal transfer of the case to said group should be made for the purpose of appeal only. The receiving group will take jurisdiction of the application and prepare the examiner's answer. At the time of allowance, the application may be sent to issue by said group with its classification determined by the controlling claims remaining in the case. <

**705.01(b) Sequence of Examination [R-1]**

>In the event that the supervisory primary examiners concerned in a P.R. case cannot agree as to the order of examination by their groups, the supervisory primary examiner having jurisdiction of the case will direct that a complete search be made of the art relevant to his or her claims prior to referring the case to another group for report. The group to which the case is referred will be advised of the results of this search.

If the supervisory primary examiners are of the opinion that a different sequence of search is expedient, the order of search should be correspondingly modified. <

### 705.01(c) Counting and Recording P.R.'s [R-1]

>The forwarding of the application for a Patentability Report is not to be treated as a transfer by the forwarding group. When the P.R. is completed and the application is ready for return to the forwarding group, it is not counted either as a receipt or action by transfer. Credit, however, is given for the time spent. See MPEP § 1705.

The date status of the application in the reporting group will be determined on the basis of the dates in the group of original jurisdiction. To ensure orderly progress in the reported dates, a timely reminder should be furnished to the group making the P.R. <

### 705.01(d) Duplicate Prints of Drawings [R-1]

>In Patentability Report cases having drawings, the examiner to whom the case is assigned will furnish to the group to which the case is referred, prints of such sheets of the drawings as are applicable, for interference search purposes. That this has been done may be indicated by a pencil notation on the file wrapper.

When a case that has had Patentability Report prosecution is passed for issue or becomes abandoned, NOTIFICATION of this fact will AT ONCE be given by the group having jurisdiction of the case to each group that submitted a Patentability Report. The examiner of each such reporting group will note the date of allowance or abandonment on the duplicate set of prints. At such time as these prints become of no value to the reporting group, they may be destroyed. <

### 705.01(e) Limitation as to Use [R-1]

>The above outlined Patentability Report practice is not obligatory and should be resorted to only where it will save total examiner time or result in improved quality of action due to specialized knowledge. A saving of total examiner time that is required to give a complete examination of an application is of primary importance. Patentability Report practice is based on the proposition that when plural, indivisible inventions are claimed, in some instances either less time is required for examination, or the results are of better quality, when specialists on each character of claimed invention treat the claims directed to their specialty. However, in many instances a single examiner can give a complete examination of as good quality on all claims, and in less total examiner time

than would be consumed by the use of the Patentability Report practice.

Where claims are directed to the same character of invention but differ in scope only, prosecution by Patentability Report is never proper.

Exemplary situation where Patentability Reports are ordinarily not proper are as follows:

(1) Where the claims are related as a manufacturing process and a product defined by the process of manufacture. The examiner having jurisdiction of the process can usually give a complete, adequate examination in less total examiner time than would be consumed by the use of a Patentability Report.

(2) Where the claims are related as product and a process which involves merely the fact that a product having certain characteristics is made. The examiner having jurisdiction of the product can usually make a complete and adequate examination.

(3) Where the claims are related as a combination distinguished solely by the characteristics of a subcombination and such subcombination, *per se*. The examiner having jurisdiction of the subcombination can usually make a complete and adequate examination.

Where it can be shown that a Patentability Report will save total examiner time, one is permitted with the approval of the group director of the group to which the application is assigned. The "Approved" stamp should be impressed on the memorandum requesting the Patentability Report. <

### 705.01(f) Interviews With Applicants [R-1]

>In situations where an interview is held on an application in which a Patentability Report has been adopted, the reporting group may be called on for assistance at the interview when it concerns claims treated by them. See MPEP § 713 to § 713.10 regarding interviews in general. <

### 706 Rejection of Claims [R-1]

>Although this part of the Manual explains the procedure in rejecting claims, the examiner should never overlook the importance of his or her role in allowing claims which properly define the invention.

#### 37 CFR 1.106. Rejection of Claims

(a) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(b) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his command. When a

reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(c) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to § 1.107.

(d) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(e) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter (1) which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration and (2) which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

#### UNIFORM APPLICATION OF THE PATENTABILITY STANDARD

The standards of patentability applied in the examination of claims must be the same throughout the Office. In every art, whether it be considered "complex," "newly developed," "crowded," or "competitive," all of the requirements for patentability (e.g., novelty, usefulness and unobviousness, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 101, 102, and 103) must be met before a claim is allowed. The mere fact that a claim recites in detail all of the features of an invention (i.e., is a "picture" claim) is never, in itself, justification for the allowance of such a claim.

An application should not be allowed, unless and until issues pertinent to patentability have been raised and resolved in the course of examination and prosecution, since otherwise the resultant patent would not justify the statutory presumption of validity (35 U.S.C. 282), nor would it "strictly adhere" to the requirements laid down by Congress in the 1952 Act as interpreted by the Supreme Court. The standard to be applied in all cases is the "preponderance of the evidence" test. In other words, an examiner should reject a claim if, in view of the prior art and evidence of record, it is more likely than not that the claim is unpatentable.

#### DEFECTS IN FORM OR OMISSION OF A LIMITATION; CLAIMS OTHERWISE ALLOWABLE

When an application discloses patentable subject matter and it is apparent from the claims and the applicant's arguments that the claims are intended to be directed to such patentable subject matter, but the claims in their present form cannot be allowed because of defects in form or omission of a limitation, the examiner should not stop with a bare objection or rejection of the claims. The examiner's action should be constructive in nature and when possible should offer a definite suggestion for correction.

#### PATENTABLE SUBJECT MATTER DISCLOSED BUT NOT CLAIMED

If the examiner is satisfied after the search has been completed that patentable subject matter has been disclosed and the record indicates that the applicant intends to claim such subject matter, he or she may note in the Office action that certain aspects or features of the patentable invention have not been claimed and that if properly claimed such claims may be given favorable consideration.

#### RECONSIDERATION OF CLAIMS AFTER RESPONSE BY APPLICANT

##### *37 CFR 1.112. Reconsideration.*

After response by applicant or patent owner (§ 1.111), the application or patent under reexamination will be reconsidered and again examined. The applicant or patent owner will be notified if claims are rejected, or objections or requirements made, in the same manner as after the first examination. Applicant or patent owner may respond to such Office action in the same manner provided in § 1.111, with or without amendment. Any amendments after the second Office action must ordinarily be restricted to the rejection or to the objections or requirements made. The application or patent under reexamination will be again considered, and so on repeatedly, unless the examiner has indicated that the action is final.

See 37 CFR 1.112 for reexamination and reconsideration of a patent under reexamination after responses by the patent owner.

## REJECTIONS IN STATUTORY INVENTION REGISTRATIONS

See MPEP Chapter 1100 for rejection of claims in an application for a Statutory Invention Registration. <

### 706.01 Contrasted With Objections [R-1]

>The refusal to grant claims because the subject matter as claimed is considered unpatentable is called a "rejection." The term "rejected" must be applied to such claims in the examiner's letter. If the form of the claim (as distinguished from its substance) is improper, an "objection" is made. An example of a matter of form as to which objection is made is dependency of a claim on a rejected claim, if the dependent claim is otherwise allowable. See MPEP § 608.01(n). The practical difference between a rejection and an objection is that a rejection, involving the merits of the claim, is subject to review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, while an objection, if persisted, may be reviewed only by way of petition to the Commissioner.

Similarly, the Board will not hear or decide issues pertaining to objections and formal matters which are not properly before the Board. These formal matters should not be combined in appeals to the Board. <

### 706.02 Rejection on Prior Art [R-2]

*35 U.S.C. 102. Conditions for patentability; novelty and loss of right to patent.*

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless --

(a) the invention was known or used by others in this country, or patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country, before the invention thereof by the applicant for a patent, or

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States, or

(c) he has abandoned the invention, or

(d) the invention was first patented or caused to be patented, or was the subject of an inventor's certificate, by the applicant or his legal representatives or assigns in a foreign country prior to the date of the application for patent in this country on an application for patent or inventor's certificate filed more than twelve months before the filing of the application in the United States, or

(e) the invention was described in a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent, or on an international application by another who has fulfilled the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2), and (4) of section 371(c) of this title before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent, or

(f) he did not himself invent the subject matter sought to be patented, or

(g) before the applicant's invention thereof the invention was made in this country by another who had not abandoned, suppressed, or concealed it. In determining priority of invention there shall be considered not only the respective dates of conception and reduction to practice of the invention, but also the reasonable diligence of one who was first to conceive and last to reduce to practice, from a time prior to conception by the other.

*35 U.S.C. 103. Conditions for patentability; non-obvious subject matter.*

>(a) <A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negated by the manner in which the invention was made.

>(b)(1) Notwithstanding subsection (a), and upon timely election by the applicant for patent to proceed under this subsection, a biotechnological process using or resulting in a composition of matter that is novel under section 102 and nonobvious under subsection (a) of this section shall be considered nonobvious if --

(A) claims to the process and the composition of matter are contained in either the same application for patent or in separate applications having the same effective filing date; and

(B) the composition of matter, and the process at the time it was invented, were owned by the same person or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person.

(2) A patent issued on a process under paragraph (1) --

(A) shall also contain the claims to the composition of matter used in or made by that process, or

(B) shall, if such composition of matter is claimed in another patent, be set to expire on the same date as such other patent, notwithstanding section 154

(3) For purposes of paragraph (1), the term "biotechnological process" means --

(A) a process of genetically altering or otherwise inducing a single- or multi-celled organism to --

(i) express an exogenous nucleotide sequence,

(ii) inhibit, eliminate, augment, or alter expression of an endogenous nucleotide sequence or

(iii) express a specific physiological characteristic not naturally associated with said organism;

(B) cell fusion procedures yielding a cell line that expresses a specific protein, such as a monoclonal antibody; and

(C) a method of using a product produced by a process defined by subparagraph (A) or (B), or a combination of subparagraphs (A) and (B). <

>(c) <Subject matter developed by another person, which qualifies as prior art only under subsection (f) or (g) of section 102 of this title, shall not preclude patentability under this section where the subject matter and the claimed invention were, at the time the invention was made, owned by the same person or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person.

By far the most frequent ground of rejection is on the ground of unpatentability in view of the prior art, that is, that the claimed subject matter is either not novel under

**706.02(a)**

35 U.S.C. 102, or else it is obvious under 35 U.S.C. 103. The language to be used in rejecting claims should be unequivocal. See MPEP § 707.07(d).

**CHOICE OF PRIOR ART; BEST AVAILABLE**

Prior art rejections should ordinarily be confined strictly to the best available art. Exceptions may properly be made, e.g., (1) where the propriety of a 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103 rejection depends on a particular interpretation of a claim; (2) where a claim is met only in terms by a reference which does not disclose the inventive concept involved; or (3) where the most pertinent reference seems likely to be antedated by a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration. Such rejections should be backed up by the best other art rejections available. Merely cumulative rejections, i.e., those which would clearly fall if the primary-rejection were not sustained, should be avoided.

See also MPEP § 707.05.

**REEXAMINATION**

For scope of rejections in reexamination proceedings see MPEP § 2258.

**DISTINCTION BETWEEN 35 U.S.C. 102 AND 103**

The distinction between rejections based on 35 U.S.C. 102 and those based on 35 U.S.C. 103 should be kept in mind. Under the former, the claim is anticipated by the reference. No question of obviousness is present. In other words, for anticipation under 35 U.S.C. 102, the reference must teach every aspect of the claimed invention either explicitly or impliedly. Any feature not directly taught must be inherently present. Whereas, in a rejection based on 35 U.S.C. 103, the reference teachings must somehow be modified in order to meet the claims. The modification must be one which would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made. See MPEP § 2131 – § 2146 for guidance on patentability determinations under 35 U.S.C. 102 and 103.

**DETERMINING THE EFFECTIVE FILING DATE OF THE APPLICATION**

(1) If the application is a continuation or divisional of one or more earlier U.S. applications and if the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 120 have been satisfied, the ef-

fective filing date is the same as the earliest filing date in the line of continuation or divisional applications.

(2) If the application is a continuation—in-part of an earlier U.S. application, any claims in the new application not supported by the specification and claims of the parent application have an effective filing date equal to the filing date of the new application. Any claims which are fully supported under 35 U.S.C. 112 by the earlier parent application have the effective filing date of that earlier parent application.

(3) If the application claims foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d), the effective filing date is the filing date of the U.S. application, unless situation 1 or 2 as set forth above applies. The filing date of the foreign priority document is not the effective filing date, although the filing date of the foreign priority document may be used to overcome certain references. See MPEP § 706.02(b) and § 2136.05.

(4) If the application is entitled to priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) from a provisional application, the effective filing date is the filing date of the provisional application.

**706.02(a) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (b), or (e); Printed Publication or Patent [R-1]**

>Once the examiner conducts a search and finds a printed publication or patent which discloses the claimed invention, the examiner should determine whether the rejection should be made under 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (b), or (e).

In order to determine which section of 35 U.S.C. 102 applies, the effective filing date of the application must be determined and compared with the date of the reference. See MPEP § 706.02 regarding determination of effective filing date of the application.

**DETERMINING THE REFERENCE ISSUE OR PUBLICATION DATE**

The examiner must also determine the issue or publication date of the reference so that a proper comparison between the application and reference dates can be made. Where the last day of the year dated from the date of publication falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday, the publication is not a statutory bar under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) if the application was filed on the next succeeding business day. *Ex parte Olah and Kuhn*,

131 USPQ 41 (Bd. App. 1960). It should also be noted that a magazine is effective as a printed publication under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as of the date it reached the addressee and not the date it was placed in the mail. *Protein Foundation Inc. v. Brenner*, 260 F. Supp. 519, 151 USPQ 561 (D.D.C. 1966). See MPEP § 707.05(f) for more information. For foreign patents see MPEP § 901.05. See MPEP § 2124, § 2126, and § 2128 – § 2128.02 for case law holdings in regard to reference date determination.

#### DETERMINING WHETHER TO APPLY 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (b), or (e)

First, the examiner should consider whether the reference qualifies as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) because this section results in a statutory bar to obtaining a patent. If the publication or issue date of the reference is more than 1 year prior to the effective filing date of the application (MPEP § 706.02), the reference qualifies as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(b).

If the publication or issue date of the reference is too recent for 35 U.S.C. 102(b) to apply, then the examiner should consider 35 U.S.C. 102(e). For section 102(e) to apply:

(1) The reference must be a U.S. Patent with a filing date earlier than the effective filing date of the application. Note that, for purposes of 35 U.S.C. 102(e), the filing date of the reference patent which has issued on an application entitled to priority from a provisional application under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) is the filing date of the provisional application, except for a patent granted on an international application (PCT) in which applicant has fulfilled the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2) and (4) of 35 U.S.C. 371. The filing date of a patent granted on such a 35 U.S.C. 371 application is the date on which paragraphs (1), (2) and (4) of 35 U.S.C. 371 have been fulfilled; and

(2) The inventive entity of the application must be different than that of the reference. Note that, where there are joint inventors, only one inventor need be different for the inventive entities to be different and a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) is applicable even if there are some common inventors.

If 35 U.S.C. 102(e) does not apply, then the examiner should consider 35 U.S.C. 102(a). For section 102(a) to apply, the reference must have a publication date earlier in time than the effective filing date of the application, and must not be applicant's own work.<

#### 706.02(b) Overcoming a 35 U.S.C. 102 Rejection Based on a Printed Publication or Patent [R-2]

Rejection based on 35 U.S.C. 102(b)

The rejection can be overcome by:

- (1) Persuasively arguing that the claims are patentably distinguishable from the prior art; or
- (2) Amending the claims to patentably distinguish over the prior art.

Rejection based on 35 U.S.C. 102(e)

The rejection can be overcome by:

- (1) Persuasively arguing that the claims are patentably distinguishable from the prior art;
- (2) Amending the claims to patentably distinguish over the prior art;
- (3) Filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 showing that the reference invention is not by "another." See MPEP § 715.01(a), § 715.01(c), and § \* > 716.10 <;
- (4) Filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 showing prior invention, if the reference is not a U.S. patent or application claiming the same patentable invention as defined in 37 CFR 1.601(n). See MPEP § 715 for more information on 37 CFR 1.131 affidavits. When the claims of the reference and the application are directed to the same invention or are obvious variants, an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 is not an acceptable method of overcoming the rejection unless a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 is granted in a common ownership situation. See MPEP § 715. Under these circumstances, the examiner must determine whether a double patenting rejection or interference is appropriate. If there is a common assignee or inventor between the application and patent, a double patenting rejection must be made. See MPEP § 804. If there is no common assignee or inventor and the rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) is the only possible rejection, the examiner must determine whether an interference should be declared. See MPEP Chapter 2300 for more information regarding interferences; or
- (5) Perfecting a claim to priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d). The foreign priority filing date must antedate the reference and be perfected. The filing date of the priority document is not perfected unless applicant has filed a certified priority document in the application

**706.02(c)**

(and an English language translation, if the document is not in English) (see 37 CFR 1.55) and the examiner has established that the priority document satisfies the enablement and description requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph;

(6) Perfecting priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) by amending the specification of the application to contain a specific reference to a provisional application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.78(a)(4).

**Rejection based on 35 U.S.C. 102(a)**

The rejection can be overcome by:

- (1) Persuasively arguing that the claims are patentably distinguishable from the prior art;
- (2) Amending the claims to patentably distinguish over the prior art;
- (3) Filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131. See MPEP § 715 for information on the requirements of 37 CFR 1.131 affidavits.
- (4) Filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 showing that the reference invention is not by "another." See MPEP § 715.01(a), § 715.01(c), and § 716.10;
- (5) Perfecting a claim to priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d) as explained in reference to 35 U.S.C. 102(e) above;
- (6) Perfecting priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) by amending the specification of the application to contain a specific reference to a provisional application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.78(a)(4).

**706.02(c) Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (b); Knowledge by Others or Public Use or Sale [R–2]**

An applicant may make an admission, or submit evidence of sale of the invention or knowledge of the invention by others, or the examiner may have personal knowledge that the invention was sold by applicant or known by others in this country. The language "in this country" means in the United States only and does not include other WTO or NAFTA member countries. In these cases the examiner must determine if 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or 102(b) applies. See MPEP § 2133.03 for a discussion of case law treating the "public use" and "on sale" statutory bars.

If the activity is by an entity other than the inventors or assignee, such as sale by another, manufacture by

another or disclosure of the invention by applicant to another then both 35 U.S.C. 102(a) and (b) may be applicable. If the evidence only points to knowledge within the year prior to the effective filing date then 35 U.S.C. 102(a) applies. However, no rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) should be made if there is evidence that applicant made the invention and only disclosed it to others within the year prior to the effective filing date.

\* 35 U.S.C. 102(b) is applicable if the activity \*\* occurred more than 1 year prior to the effective filing date of the application \*\*. See MPEP § 2133.03 for a discussion of "on sale" and "public use" bars under 35 U.S.C. 102(b).

Note that as an aid to resolving public use or on sale issues, as well as to other related matters of 35 U.S.C. 102(b) activity, an applicant may be required to answer specific questions posed by the examiner and to explain or supplement any evidence of record. 35 U.S.C. 132, 37 CFR 1.104(b). Regarding reissues see 37 CFR 1.175(b). Information sought should be restricted to that which is reasonably necessary for the examiner to render a decision on patentability.

A 1– or 2–month time period should be set by the examiner for any response to the requirement, unless the requirement is part of an Office action having a shortened statutory period, in which case the period for response to the Office Action will also apply to the requirement. If applicant fails to respond in a timely fashion to a requirement for information, the application will be regarded as abandoned, 35 U.S.C. 133. See MPEP § 2133.03.

If there is not enough information on which to base a public use or on sale rejection, the examiner should make a requirement for more information. Form paragraph \*>7.104< can be used.

**¶\*>7.104< Requirement for information, public use or sale.**

An issue of public use or on sale activity has been raised in this application. In order for the examiner to properly consider patentability of the claimed invention under 35 U.S.C. 102(b), additional information regarding this issue is required as follows: [1].

Applicant is reminded that failure to fully respond to this requirement for information will result in a holding of abandonment.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Information sought should be restricted to that which is reasonably necessary for the examiner to render a decision on patentability. See MPEP § 2133.03.

2. A one or two month time period should be set by the examiner for response to the requirement unless it is part of an Office action having an SSP, in which case the period for response will apply also to the requirement.

3. If sufficient evidence already exists to establish a prima facie case of public use or on sale, use form paragraph 7.16 to make a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(b). See MPEP § 2133.03.

### **706.02(d) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(c) [R-1]**

>Under 35 U.S.C. 102(c), abandonment of the "invention" (as distinguished from abandonment of an application) results in loss of right to a patent. See MPEP § 2134 for case law which sets forth the criteria for abandonment under 35 U.S.C. 102(c).<

### **706.02(e) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(d) [R-1]**

>35 U.S.C. 102(d) establishes four conditions which, if all are present, establish a statutory bar against the granting of a patent in this country:

(1) The foreign application must be filed more than 12 months before the effective filing date of the United States application. See MPEP § 706.02 regarding determination of the effective filing date of the application.

(2) The foreign and United States applications must be filed by the same applicant, his or her legal representatives or assigns.

(3) The foreign application must have actually issued as a patent or inventor's certificate (e.g., granted by sealing of the papers in Great Britain) before the filing in the United States. It need not be published but the patent rights granted must be enforceable.

(4) The same invention must be involved.

If such a foreign patent or inventor's certificate is discovered by the examiner, the rejection is made under 35 U.S.C. 102(d) on the ground of statutory bar.

See MPEP § 2135.01 for case law which further clarifies each of the four requirements of 35 U.S.C. 102(d).

#### **SEARCHING FOR 35 U.S.C. 102(d) PRIOR ART**

The examiner should only undertake a search for an issued foreign patent for use as 35 U.S.C. 102(d) prior art if there is a reasonable possibility that a foreign patent covering the same subject matter as the U.S. application has been granted to the same inventive entity before the U.S. effective filing date, i.e., the time period between

foreign and U.S. filings is greater than the usual time it takes for a patent to issue in the foreign country. Normally, the probability of the inventor's foreign patent issuing before the U.S. filing date is so slight as to make such a search unproductive. However, it should be kept in mind that the average pendency varies greatly between foreign countries. In Belgium, for instance, a patent may be granted in just a month after its filing, while in Japan the patent may not issue for a decade.

The search for a granted patent can be accomplished on an electronic database either by the examiner or by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center. See MPEP § 901.06 (a) STIC SERVICES (2) for more information on online searching. The document must be a patent or inventor's certificate and not merely a published or laid open application.<

### **706.02(f) Provisional Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(e); Reference is a Copending U.S. Patent Application [R-1]**

>If a copending U.S. patent application discloses subject matter which would anticipate the claims in another pending U.S. application which has a different inventive entity, the examiner should determine whether a provisional 35 U.S.C. 102(e) rejection can be made.

1. Copending U.S. applications; at least one common inventor or are commonly assigned.

If (1) at least one common inventor exists between the applications or the applications are commonly assigned and (2) the effective filing dates are different, then a provisional rejection of the later filed application should be made. The provisional rejection is appropriate because if the earlier filed application becomes a patent it would constitute actual prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102. Since neither application is published at the time of the provisional rejection, the rejection must be made under 35 U.S.C. 102(e).

A provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) can be overcome in the same manner that a 35 U.S.C. 102(e) rejection can be overcome. See MPEP § 706.02(b). The provisional rejection can also be overcome by abandoning the applications and filing a new application containing the subject matter of both.

**706.02(g)**

Form paragraph 7.15.01 should be used when making a provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e).

¶ *7.15.01 Provisional Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(e) – Common Assignee or At Least One Common Inventor*

Claim[1] provisionally rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by copending application no. [2] which has a common [3] with the instant application.

Based upon the earlier effective U.S. filing date of the copending application, it would constitute prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) if patented. This provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) is based upon a presumption of future patenting of the copending application. [4].

This provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) might be overcome either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that any invention disclosed but not claimed in the copending application was derived from the inventor of this application and is thus not the invention “by another,” or by an appropriate showing under 37 CFR 1.131.

This rejection may not be overcome by the filing of a terminal disclaimer. See *In re Bartfeld*, 17 USPQ2d 1885 (Fed. Cir. 1991).

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is used to provisionally reject over a copending application with an earlier filing date that discloses the claimed invention. The copending application must have either a common assignee or at least one common inventor.

2. If the claims are obvious over the invention disclosed in the other copending application, use paragraph 7.21.01.

3. In bracket 3, insert either “assignee” or “inventor.”

4. In bracket 4, an appropriate explanation may be provided in support of the Examiner’s position on anticipation, if necessary.

5. If the claims of the copending application conflict with the claims of the instant application, a provisional double patenting rejection should also be given using paragraphs 8.30 and 8.32.

6. If evidence is additionally of record to show that either invention is prior art unto the other under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g), a rejection using paragraphs 7.13 and/or 7.14 should also be made.

2. Copending applications; no common inventor or assignee

If there is no common assignee or common inventor, the confidential status of applications under 35 U.S.C. 122 must be maintained and no rejection can be made relying on the earlier filed application as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e). If the filing dates of the applications are within 6 months of each other (3 months for simple subject matter) then interference may be proper. See MPEP Chapter 2300. Otherwise, the application with the earliest effective U.S. filing date must be allowed to issue. After the allowed application is published, it can be used as a reference in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) in the still pending application.<

**706.02(g) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(f)**  
**[R–1]**

>35 U.S.C. 102(f) bars the issuance of a patent where an applicant did not invent the subject matter being claimed and sought to be patented. See also, 35 U.S.C. 101, which requires that whoever invents or discovers is the party who may obtain a patent for the particular invention or discovery. The examiner must presume the applicants are the proper inventors unless there is proof that another made the invention and that applicant derived the invention from the true inventor.

See MPEP § 2137 – § 2137.02 for more information on the substantive requirements of rejections under 35 U.S.C. 102(f).<

**706.02(h) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102(g)**  
**[R–1]**

>35 U.S.C. 102(g) bars the issuance of a patent where another made the invention in the United States before applicant and had not abandoned, suppressed, or concealed it. This section of 35 U.S.C. 102 forms a basis for interference practice. See MPEP Chapter 2300 for more information on interference procedure. See MPEP § 2138 – § 2138.07 for more information on the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 102(g).<

**706.02(i) Form paragraphs for Use in Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 102**  
**[R–2]**

The following form paragraphs should be used in making the appropriate rejections.

Note that the particular of the reference relied upon to support the rejection should be identified.

¶ *7.07 Statement of Statutory Basis, 35 U.S.C. 102*

The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless—

**Examiner Note:**

1. The statute is no longer being \* >recited< in all Office actions. It is only required in first actions on the merits and final rejections. Where the statute is not being cited in an action on the merits, use paragraph \* >7.103<.

2. Paragraphs 7.07 to 7.14 are to be used ONLY ONCE in a given Office action.

¶ 7.08 102(a), *Activity by Another Before Invention by Applicant*

(a) the invention was known or used by others in this country, or patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country, before the invention thereof by the applicant for a patent.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07.

¶ 7.09 102(b), *Activity More Than One Year Prior to filing*

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07, and may be preceded by paragraph 7.08.

¶ 7.10 102(c), *Invention Abandoned*

(c) he has abandoned the invention.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07, and may be preceded by one or more of paragraphs 7.08 and 7.09.

¶ 7.11 102(d), *Foreign Patenting*

(d) the invention was first patented or caused to be patented, or was the subject of an inventor's certificate, by the applicant or his legal representatives or assigns in a foreign country prior to the date of the application for patent in this country on an application for patent or inventor's certificate filed more than twelve months before the filing of the application in the United States.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07, and may be preceded by one or more of paragraphs 7.08 to 7.10.

¶ 7.12 102(e), *Patent to Another With Earlier Filing Date*

(e) the invention was described in a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent, or on an international application by another who has fulfilled the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2), and (4) of section 371(e) of this title before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07, and may be preceded by one or more of paragraphs 7.08 to 7.11.

¶ 7.13 102(f), *Applicant not the Inventor*

(f) he did not himself invent the subject matter sought to be patented.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07, and may be preceded by one or more of paragraphs 7.08 to 7.12.

¶ 7.14 102(g), *Priority of Invention*

(g) before the applicant's invention thereof the invention was made in this country by another who had not abandoned, suppressed, or concealed it. In determining priority of invention there shall be considered not only the respective dates of conception and reduction to

practice of the invention, but also the reasonable diligence of one who was first to conceive and last to reduce to practice, from a time prior to conception by the other.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.07 and may be preceded by one or more of paragraphs 7.08 to 7.12.

¶ 7.15 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (b) Patent or Publication, and (g)*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 ([2]) as being [3] by [4]. \*

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the appropriate paragraph letter or letters of 35 U.S.C. >. < 102 in parentheses. If paragraph (e) of 35 U.S.C. 102 is applicable, use form paragraph 7.15.02.

2. In bracket 3, insert either \*\* "clearly anticipated" > or "anticipated" with an explanation at the end of the paragraph <.

3. In bracket 4, insert the prior art relied upon.

\*\*

\* > 4. < This rejection must be preceded either by paragraph 7.07 and paragraphs 7.08, 7.09, and 7.14 as appropriate, or by paragraph \* > 7.103 <.

\* > 5. < If 35 U.S.C. 102(e) is also being applied, this paragraph must be followed by either form paragraph 7.15.02 or 7.15.03.

¶ 7.15.01 *Provisional Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(e) – Common Assignee or At Least One Common Inventor*

Claim [1] provisionally rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by copending application no. [2] which has a common [3] with the instant application.

Based upon the earlier effective U.S. filing date of the copending application, it would constitute prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) if patented. This provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) is based upon a presumption of future patenting of the copending application. [4].

This provisional rejection under Section 102(e) might be overcome either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that any invention disclosed but not claimed in the copending application was derived from the inventor of this application and is thus not the invention "by another," or by an appropriate showing under 37 CFR 1.131.

This rejection may not be overcome by the filing of a terminal disclaimer. See *In re Bartfeld*, 17 USPQ2d 1885 (Fed. Cir. 1991).

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is used to provisionally reject over a copending application with an earlier filing date that discloses the claimed invention. The copending application must have either a common assignee or at least one common inventor.

2. If the claims are obvious over the invention disclosed in the other copending application, use paragraph 7.21.01.

3. In bracket 3, insert either "assignee" or "inventor."

4. In bracket 4, an appropriate explanation may be provided in support of the Examiner's position on anticipation, if necessary.

5. If the claims of the copending application conflict with the claims of the instant application, a provisional double patenting rejection should also be given using paragraphs 8.30 and 8.32.

6. If evidence is additionally of record to show that either invention is prior art unto the other under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g), a rejection using paragraphs 7.13 and/or 7.14 should also be made.

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

### 706.02(j)

¶ 7.15.02 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(e), Common Assignee or Inventor(s)*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by [2].

The applied reference has a common [3] with the instant application. Based upon the earlier effective U.S. filing date of the reference, it constitutes prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e). This rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) might be overcome either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that any invention disclosed but not claimed in the reference was derived from the inventor of this application and is thus not the invention "by another," or by an appropriate showing under 37 CFR 1.131.

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph is used to reject over a patent with an earlier filing date that discloses but does not claim the same invention. The patent must have either a common assignee or a common inventor.

2. In bracket 3, insert either "assignee" or "inventor."

¶ 7.15.03 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(e), No Common Assignee or Inventor(s)*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being \* > [2] < by \* > [3] <.

#### Examiner Note:

> 1. < This paragraph is used to reject over a patent with an earlier filing date that discloses but does not claim the same invention. The patent must have neither a common assignee nor a common inventor.

> In bracket 2, insert either "clearly anticipated" or "anticipated" with an explanation at the end of the paragraph.

In bracket 3, insert the prior art relied upon. <

¶ 7.16 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(b), Public use or on Sale*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) based upon a public use or sale of the invention. [2].

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph must be preceded either by paragraphs 7.07 and 7.09 or by paragraph \* > 7.103. <

2. A full explanation of the evidence establishing a public use or sale must be provided in bracket 2.

¶ 7.17 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(c), Abandonment of Invention*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(c) because the invention has been abandoned. [2].

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph must be preceded either by paragraphs 7.07 and 7.10 or by paragraph \* > 7.103. <

2. In bracket 2, insert a full explanation of the evidence establishing abandonment of the invention. See MPEP § 2134.

¶ 7.18 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(d), Foreign Patenting*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(d) as being barred by applicant's [2]. [3].

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph must be preceded either by paragraphs 7.07 and 7.11 or by paragraph \* > 7.103. <

2. In bracket 3, insert an explanation of this rejection which must include appropriate dates and how they make the foreign patent available under 35 U.S.C. 102(d).

3. Refer to MPEP § 2135 for applicable 102(d) prior art.

¶ 7.19 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 102(f), Applicant not the Inventor*  
Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) because the applicant did not invent the claimed subject matter. [2].

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph must be preceded either by paragraphs 7.07 and 7.13 or by paragraph \* > 7.103. <

2. In bracket 2, insert an explanation of the supporting evidence establishing that applicant was not the inventor.

### 706.02(j) Contents of a 35 U.S.C. 103 Rejection [R-2]

35 U.S.C. 103 authorizes a rejection where to meet the claim, it is necessary to modify a single reference or to combine it with one or more other references. After indicating that the rejection is under 35 U.S.C. 103, the examiner should set forth in the Office action (1) the relevant teachings of the prior art relied upon, preferably with reference to the relevant column or page number(s) and line number(s) where appropriate, (2) the difference or differences in the claim over the applied reference(s), (3) the proposed modification of the applied reference(s) necessary to arrive at the claimed subject matter, and (4) an explanation why \*\* > one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made would have been motivated to make the proposed modification <.

To establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness, three basic criteria must be met. First, there must be some suggestion or motivation, either in the references themselves or in the knowledge generally available to one of ordinary skill in the art, to modify the reference or to combine reference teachings. Second, there must be a reasonable expectation of success. Finally, the prior art reference (or references when combined) must teach or suggest all the claim limitations. The teaching or suggestion to make the claimed combination and the reasonable expectation of success must both be found in the prior art, and not based on applicant's disclosure. *In re Vaeck*, 947 F.2d 488, 20 USPQ2d 1438 (Fed. Cir. 1991). See MPEP § 2143 -- § 2143.03 for decisions pertinent to each of these criteria.

The initial burden is on the examiner to provide some suggestion of the desirability of doing what the inventor has done. "To support the conclusion that the claimed invention is directed to obvious subject matter, either the

references must expressly or impliedly suggest the claimed invention or the examiner must present a convincing line of reasoning as to why the artisan would have found the claimed invention to have been obvious in light of the teachings of the references." *Ex parte Clapp*, 227 USPQ 972, 973 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1985). See MPEP § 2144 – § 2144.09 for examples of reasoning supporting obviousness rejections.

Where a reference is relied on to support a rejection, whether or not in a minor capacity, that reference should be positively included in the statement of the rejection. See *In re Hoch*, \*\* 428 F.2d 1341, 166 USPQ 406, \*n. < 3 (>CCPA<1970).

It is important for an examiner to properly communicate the basis for a rejection so that the issues can be identified early and the applicant can be given fair opportunity to respond. Furthermore, if an initially rejected application issues as a patent, the rationale behind an earlier rejection may be important in interpreting the scope of the patent claims. Since issued patents are presumed valid (35 U.S.C. 282) and constitute a property right (35 U.S.C. 261), the written record must be clear as to the basis for the grant. Since patent examiners cannot normally be compelled to testify in legal proceedings regarding their mental processes (see MPEP § 1701.01), it is important that the written record clearly explain the rationale for decisions made during prosecution of the application.

See MPEP § 2141 – § 2144.09 generally for guidance on patentability determinations under 35 U.S.C. 103, including a discussion of the requirements of *Graham v. John Deere*, 383 U.S. 1, 148 USPQ 459 (1966). See MPEP § 2145 for consideration of applicant's rebuttal arguments. See MPEP § 706.02(l) for a discussion of \*\* 35 U.S.C. 103>(c)<.

### **706.02(k) Provisional Rejection (Obviousness) Under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 [R-2]**

Where two applications of different inventive entities are copending and the filing dates differ, a provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 should be made in the later filed application if the applications have a common assignee or a common inventor. Otherwise the confidential status of applications under 35 U.S.C. 122 must be maintained. Such a rejection alerts the applicant that he or she can expect an actual rejection on

the same ground if one of the applications issues and also lets applicant know that action must be taken to avoid the rejection.

This gives applicant the opportunity to analyze the propriety of the rejection and possibly avoid the loss of rights to desired subject matter. Provisional rejections of the obviousness type under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 are rejections applied to copending applications having different effective filing dates wherein each application has a common assignee or a common inventor. The earlier filed application, if patented, would constitute prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e). The rejection can be overcome by:

(1) arguing patentability over the earlier filed application,

(2) combining the subject matter of the copending applications into a single application claiming benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of the prior applications and abandoning the copending applications,

(3) filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 showing that any unclaimed invention disclosed in the copending application was derived from the inventor of the other application and is thus not invention "by another" (see MPEP § 715.01(a), § 715.01(c), and § 716.10), or

(4) filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 showing a date of invention prior to the effective U.S. filing date of the copending application. Where the applications are claiming the same patentable invention, an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 may be used to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103 only if a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 has been granted in a common ownership situation. See MPEP § 715.

If a provisional rejection is made and the copending applications are combined into a single application and the resulting single application is subject to a restriction requirement, the divisional application would not be subject to provisional or actual rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 since the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 121 preclude the use of a patent issuing therefrom as a reference against the other application. Additionally, the resulting continuation—in-part is entitled to 35 U.S.C. 120 benefit of each of the prior applications. This is illustrated in Example 2, below.

The examples below are instructive as to the application of 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103:

**MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE**

**706.02(k)**

*Example 1*

Assumption: Employees A and B work for C, each with knowledge of the other's work, and with obligation to assign inventions to C while employed.

| <b>SITUATIONS</b>  | <b>RESULTS</b>  |
|--|---|
| 1. A invents X and later files application.  | This is permissible.  |
| 2. B modifies X to XY.<br>B files application after A's filing   | No 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 102(g)/103 rejection; provisional 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 rejection applies. Provisional double patenting rejection made.   |
| 3. A's patent issues.  | B's claims rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 and double patenting.  |
| 4. B files 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit to swear behind A's filing date, along with a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 to waive the prohibition of the use of 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit where the same patentable invention is being claimed.<br>Terminal disclaimer filed under 37 CFR 1.321(c) to overcome double patenting rejection. | Provisional or actual rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 may be overcome and double patenting rejection may be overcome if inventions X and XY are commonly owned and all requirements of 37 CFR 1.321 are met. |

In situation (2.) above, the result is a provisional rejection by the examiner under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103. The rejection is provisional since the subject matter and the prior art are pending applications.

*Example 2*

Assumption: Employees A and B work for C, each with knowledge of the other's work, and with obligation to assign inventions to C while employed

| <b>SITUATIONS</b>  | <b>RESULTS</b>  |
|--|---|
| 1. A invents X and files application   | This is permissible.  |
| 2. B modifies X to XY after A's application is filed, B files application establishing that A and B were both under obligation to assign inventions to C at the time the inventions were made. | Provisional 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 rejection made; provisional double patenting rejection made; no 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 102(g)/103 rejection made. |
| 3. A and B file continuing application claiming priority to their earlier applications and abandon the earlier applications.   | Assume it is proper that restriction be required between X and XY.  |
| 4. X is elected and patent issues on X with divisional application being timely filed on XY.   | No rejection of divisional application under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 in view of 35 U.S.C. 121.   |

**Statement of Principle:**

The disclosure of an earlier filed patent application which issues as a patent continues to be prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) against a later invented and filed application of another inventor even though the patent and the later invention were owned by, or subject to, an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made.

**Examination of Applications of Different Inventive Entities Where Common Ownership Is Established**

See MPEP § 706.02(1) for examination of applications of different inventive entities where common ownership has not been established.

Once the examiner checks the applications and it is established from the record that common ownership existed at the time the later invention was made, he or she should:

(1) examine the applications as to all grounds except 35 U.S.C. 102(f) and (g) as they apply through 35 U.S.C. 103,

(2) examine the applications for double patenting, including double patenting of the obviousness type, and make a provisional double patenting rejection, if appropriate (See *In re Mott*, >539 F.2d 1291, < 190 USPQ 536 (CCPA 1976)),

(3) examine the later filed application under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as it applies through 35 U.S.C. 103 and make a provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/35

U.S.C.103 in the later filed application, if appropriate, and

(4) permit the applicant of the later filed application to file an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131, along with a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 if the same patentable invention is being claimed (see MPEP 715.05), or an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 showing the invention is not "by another," to overcome the provisional or actual 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/35 U.S.C. 103 rejection, if appropriate, and a terminal disclaimer to overcome the provisional or actual rejection on double patenting of the obviousness type.

The practice of rejecting claims on the ground of double patenting in commonly owned applications of different inventive entities is in accordance with existing case law and prevents an organization from obtaining two or more patents with different expiration dates covering nearly identical subject matter. See MPEP Chapter 800 for guidance on double patenting issues. In accordance with established patent law doctrines, double patenting rejections can be overcome in certain circumstances by disclaiming, pursuant to the existing provisions of 37 CFR 1.321, the terminal portion of the term of the later patent and including in the disclaimer a provision that the patent shall be enforceable only for and during the period the patent is commonly owned with the application or patent which formed the basis for the rejection, thereby eliminating the problem of extending patent life.

**MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE**

**706.02(k)**

The example below is illustrative:

**ASSUMPTION:** Employees A and B work for C, each with knowledge of the other's work, and with obligation to assign inventions to C while employed:

| <b>SITUATIONS</b>   | <b>RESULTS</b>   |
|---|--|
| 1. A invents X and files application with assignment to C recorded in PTO showing C's ownership at the time the invention X was made.   | This is permissible.   |
| 2. A and B modify X to XY and file application with assignment recorded in PTO showing C's ownership at the time the invention XY was made.   | Provisional double patenting rejections of the obviousness type may be made.<br>Provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 may be made in later filed application. |
| 3. A and B file terminal disclaimers to overcome provisional double patenting and insufficient 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit to overcome provisional 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 rejection.           | Examiner finds 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit insufficient; accepts terminal disclaimers.  |
| 4. A and B file continuing application disclosing and claiming both X and XY and claiming 35 U.S.C. 120 benefit of both prior applications; both prior applications are then abandoned. | This is permissible.   |

**Examination of Continuing Application Commonly Owned With Abandoned Parent Application to Which Benefit Is Claimed Under 35 U.S.C. 120**

An application claiming the benefit of a prior filed copending national or international application under 35 U.S.C. 120 must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the prior filed application. The prior filed application must also disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. This practice contrasts with the practice in effect prior to November 8, 1984 (the date of enactment of Public Law 98-622) where the inventorship entity in each of the applications was required to be the same for benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120.

So long as the applications have at least one inventor in common and the other requirements are met, the Office will permit a claim for 35 U.S.C. 120 benefit without any additional submissions or notifications from applicants regarding inventorship differences.

In addition to the normal examination conducted by the examiner, he or she must examine the earlier filed application to determine if the earlier and later applications have at least one inventor in common and that the other 35 U.S.C. 120 requirements are met. The claim for 35 U.S.C. 120 benefit will be permitted without examination of the earlier application for disclosure and support of at least one claim of the later filed application under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph unless it becomes necessary to do so, for example, because of an intervening reference.

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

706.02(k)

Examination of Commonly Owned Pending Applications Having Different Inventive Entities Claiming Benefit Under 35 U.S.C. 120

See MPEP § 706.02(l) for examination of applications of different inventive entities where common ownership is not established.

Commonly owned applications of different inventive entities may be rejected on the ground of double patenting. Despite the fact that a later filed application claims 35 U.S.C. 120 benefit to an earlier application, a double

patenting rejection may also be appropriate so long as at least one inventor is common to each application. The rejection based on a pending application would be a provisional rejection since no patent has issued.

If the applications are commonly owned, a rejection of the applications on the ground of double patenting can be overcome by an appropriate terminal disclaimer as long as the identical invention is not being claimed. See *In re Robeson*, 331 F.2d 610, 141 USPQ 485 (CCPA 1964) and *In re Kaye*, 332 F.2d 816, 141 USPQ 829 (CCPA 1964).

The following example is illustrative:

**ASSUMPTION:** Employees A and B work for C, each with knowledge of the other's work, and with obligation to assign inventions to C while employed.

| SITUATIONS   | RESULTS  |
|--|--|
| 1. A invents X, A and B together modify X to XY.   | This is permissible.   |
| 2. A later files application on X with assignment to C.  | This is permissible.   |
| 3. A and B later file application on XY with assignment to C.  | Examiner may make provisional rejection of A and B's application on grounds of double patenting and 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 in view of A's application. |
| 4. A and B file 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit to swear behind A's filing date, along with 37 CFR 1.183 petition to waive prohibition where same patentable invention claimed, and terminal disclaimers in both applications | This is permissible.   |

**706.02(1)**

**706.02(1) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C.  
102(f)/103 and 35 U.S.C.  
102(g)/103; \*\* 35 U.S.C.  
103>(c)< [R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.106. Rejection of Claims*

(a) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(b) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his command. When a reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(c) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to § 1.107.

(d) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(e) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter (1) which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration and (2) which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

37 CFR 1.106 basically reiterates the requirements of \*\* 35 U.S.C. 103>(c)< which provides that subject matter developed by another which qualifies as "prior art" only under subsections 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or 35 U.S.C. 102(g) is not to be considered when determining whether an invention sought to be patented is obvious under 35 U.S.C. 103, provided the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned at the time the invention was made. Note that if the prior art is published and the inventive entity is not identical then 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103 will apply and the prior art will not be disqualified under 35 U.S.C. 103>(c)< \*\*.

The subject matter that is disqualified as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 is strictly limited to subject matter that qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or

35 U.S.C. 102(g). If the subject matter qualifies as prior art under any other subsection (e.g., subsection 35 U.S.C. 102(a), 35 U.S.C. 102(b), or 35 U.S.C. 102(e)) it will not be disqualified as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103>(c)< \*\*.

It is important to recognize that \*\* 35 U.S.C. 103>(c)< applies only to consideration of prior art for purposes of obviousness under 35 U.S.C. 103. It does not apply to or affect subject matter which qualifies as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102. A patent applicant urging that subject matter is disqualified has the burden of establishing that it was commonly owned at the time the claimed invention was made. Absent proper evidence of common ownership at the time the later invention was made, the appropriate rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or 35 U.S.C. 102(g) as it applies through 35 U.S.C. 103 should be made.

Information learned from or transmitted to persons outside the organization is not disqualified as prior art. The term "subject matter" will be construed broadly, in the same manner the term is construed in the remainder of 35 U.S.C. 103. The term "another" as used in 35 U.S.C. 103 means any inventive entity other than the inventor and would include the inventor and any other persons. The term "developed" is to be read broadly and is not limited by the manner in which the development occurred. The term "commonly owned" means wholly owned by the same person, persons, or organization at the time the invention was made.

Inventors of subject matter not commonly owned at the time of the invention, but currently commonly owned, may file as joint inventors in a single application. However, the claims in such an application are not protected from a 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103 rejection. Applicants in such cases have an obligation pursuant to 37 CFR 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim and the lack of common ownership at the time the later invention was made to enable the examiner to consider the applicability of a 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103 rejection. The examiner will assume, unless there is evidence to the contrary, that applicants are complying with their duty of disclosure.

Foreign applicants will sometimes combine the subject matter of two or more related applications with different inventors into a single U.S. application naming

joint inventors. The examiner will make the assumption, absent contrary evidence, that the applicants are complying with their duty of disclosure if no information is provided relative to invention dates and common ownership at the time the later invention was made. Such a claim for 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d) benefit based upon the foreign filed applications is appropriate and 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d) benefit can be accorded based upon each of the foreign filed applications.

### *1. Definition of Common Ownership*

In order to be disqualified as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103(c) \*\*, the subject matter which would otherwise be prior art to the claimed invention and the claimed invention must be commonly owned at the time the claimed invention was made.

The term “commonly owned” is intended to mean that the subject matter which would otherwise be prior art to the claimed invention and the claimed invention are entirely or wholly owned by the same person, persons, or organization at the time the claimed invention was made. If the person, persons, or organization owned less than 100 percent of the subject matter which would otherwise be prior art to the claimed invention, or less than 100 percent of the claimed invention, then common ownership would not exist. Common ownership requires that the person, persons, or organization own 100 percent of the subject matter and 100 percent of the claimed invention. As long as principal ownership rights to either the subject matter or the claimed invention reside in different persons or organizations common ownership does not exist. A license of the claimed invention to another by the owner where basic ownership rights are retained would not defeat ownership.

The requirement for common ownership at the time the claimed invention was made is intended to preclude obtaining ownership of subject matter after the claimed invention was made in order to disqualify that subject matter as prior art against the claimed invention.

The question of whether common ownership exists at the time the claimed invention was made is to be determined on the facts of the particular case in question. Actual ownership of the subject matter and the claimed invention by the same individual or organization or a legal obligation to assign both the subject matter and the claimed invention to the same individual or organization must be in existence at the time the claimed invention

was made in order for the subject matter to be disqualified as prior art. A moral or unenforceable obligation would not evidence common ownership.

Under 35 U.S.C. 103(c) \*\*, an applicant’s admission that subject matter was developed prior to applicant’s invention would not make the subject matter prior art to applicant if the subject matter qualifies as prior art only under sections 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or 35 U.S.C. 102(g), and if the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned at the time the invention was made. See *In re Fout*, 675 F.2d 297, 213 USPQ 532 (CCPA 1982), for a decision involving an applicants’ admission which was used as prior art against their application. If the subject matter and invention were not commonly owned, an admission that the subject matter is prior art would be usable under 35 U.S.C. 103.

The burden of establishing that subject matter is disqualified as prior art under \*\*>35 U.S.C. 103(c)< is intended to be placed and reside upon the person or persons urging that the subject matter is disqualified. For example, a patent applicant urging that subject matter is disqualified as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103(c) \*\*, would have the burden of establishing that it was commonly owned at the time the claimed invention was made. The patentee in litigation would likewise properly bear the same burden placed upon the applicant before the Patent and Trademark Office. To place the burden upon the patent examiner or the defendant in litigation would not be appropriate since evidence as to common ownership at the time the claimed invention was made might not be available to the patent examiner or the defendant in litigation, but such evidence, if it exists, should be readily available to the patent applicant or the patentee.

In view of 35 U.S.C. 103(c) \*\*, the Commissioner has reinstated in appropriate circumstances the practice of rejecting claims in commonly owned applications of different inventive entities on the grounds of double patenting. Such rejections can be overcome in appropriate circumstances by the filing of terminal disclaimers. This practice has been judicially authorized. See *In re Bowers*, 359 F.2d 886, 149 USPQ 57 (CCPA 1966). The use of double patenting rejections which then could be overcome by terminal disclaimers preclude patent protection from being improperly extended while still permitting inventors and their assignees to obtain the legitimate benefits from their contributions.

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

### 706.02(1)

The following examples are provided for illustration only:

- Ownership of both inventions must be 100% the same
- Parent Company owns 100% of Subsidiaries A and B
  - inventions of A and B are commonly owned.
- Parent Company owns 100% of Subsidiary A and 90% of subsidiary B
  - inventions of A and B not commonly owned.
- If same person owns subject matter and invention at time invention was made, license to another may be made without the subject matter becoming prior art.
- Different Government inventors retaining certain rights (e.g. foreign filing rights) in separate inventions owned by Government precludes common ownership of inventions.
- Joint Venture

#### Situation

- \* Company A and Company B form Joint Venture Company C. Employees of A while working for C with an obligation to assign inventions to C, invent invention #1, Employees of B while working for C with an obligation to assign inventions to C, invent invention #2, with knowledge of #1.

Question: Are #1 and #2 commonly owned at the time the later invention was made so as to preclude a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) in view of 35 U.S.C. 103?

Answer: Yes—An official of company C can sign an affidavit that C owned both inventions.

The examiner must examine the application as to all grounds except 35 U.S.C. 102(f) and (g) as they apply through 35 U.S.C. 103 only if the application file(s) establishes common ownership at the time the later invention was made. Thus, it is necessary to look to the time at which common ownership exists. If common ownership does not exist at the time the later invention was made, the earlier invention is not disqualified as potential prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) and (g) as they apply

through 35 U.S.C. 103. An invention is \*"<made" when conception is complete as defined in *Mergenthaler v. Scudder*, II App. D.C. 264, 1897 C.D. 724 (D.C. Cir. 1897); *In re Tansel*, 253 F.2d 241, 117 USPQ 188 (CCPA 1958). Common ownership at the time the invention was made for purposes of obviating a 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/35 U.S.C. 103 or 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/35 U.S.C. 103 rejection may be established irrespective of whether the invention was made in the United States or abroad. The provisions of 35 U.S.C. 104, however, will continue to apply to other proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office, e.g. in an interference proceeding, with regard to establishing a date of invention by knowledge or use thereof, or other activity with respect thereto, in a foreign country. The foreign filing date will continue to be used for interference purposes under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) and 35 U.S.C. 365.

#### 2. Evidence Required to Establish Common Ownership

It is important to recognize just what constitutes sufficient evidence to establish common ownership at the time the invention was made. The common ownership must be shown to exist at the time the later invention was made. A statement of present common ownership is not sufficient. *In re Onda*, 229 USPQ 235 (Comm'r Pat. 1985).

#### \*\*>NATURE OF THE SHOWING<

37 CFR 1.104. Nature of examination; examiner's action.

\*\*\*\*\*

(e) Co-pending applications will be considered by the examiner to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person if: (1) the application files refer to assignments recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with part 3 of this chapter which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization; or (2) copies of unrecorded assignments which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization are filed in each of the applications; or (3) an affidavit or declaration by the common owner is filed which states that there is common ownership and states facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership; or (4) other evidence is submitted which establishes common ownership of the applications. In circumstances where the common owner is a corporation or other organization, an affidavit or declaration may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization.

37 CFR 1.104 specifies the nature of the showing necessary before the examiner would consider copending applications to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person for purposes of

35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103, 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103 and 37 CFR 1.106(d). If common ownership does not exist at the time the later invention was made, the earlier invention is not disqualified as potential prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) and (g) as they apply through 35 U.S.C. 103.

The rule permits the necessary showing to be made in different alternative ways. The necessary showing will be considered by the examiner to be present if the application files refer to assignments which are recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3 as long as the assignments conveyed the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization.

A second alternative which can be used, if assignments have not been recorded, permits the examiner to consider copies of unrecorded assignments filed in each of the applications by the applicants as long as the unrecorded assignments convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization. The submission of copies of assignment agreements that were filed in the Office and that were executed at the time the application was filed would not be sufficient to disqualify the earlier invention as potential prior art against the later invention unless the assignment document itself contained language which indicate the relevant dates involved and established that the inventions were commonly owned at the time the later invention was made. Absent specific language in the assignment document which would establish that the inventions claimed in the applications were commonly owned at the time the later invention was made, the attorney/applicants would have to supply additional evidence or showings establishing common ownership at the time the later invention was made. This additional evidence or showing might take the form of an affidavit or declaration by the common owner which refers to the assignment and further avers that the inventors of the subject matter of the applications were all under an obligation to assign the inventions to the common owner at the time the later invention was made, e.g., by virtue of employment agreements. > The affidavit or declaration might also include copies of the employment agreements although the submission of the copies of the employment agreements would not be essential as long as unqualified averments are made that the inventions were commonly owned at the time the later invention was made.

A third alternative permits an affidavit or declaration to be filed by the common owner stating that there is common ownership and stating facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership. Under this alternative, sufficient facts will have to be presented in order to enable the examiner to conclude that a *prima facie* case of common ownership exists. It is expected that the most common form of submission to establish common ownership at the time the later invention was made will be verified statements, i.e., oaths or declarations from the common owner. It should be emphasized that such oaths or declarations must be executed by the common owner or someone empowered to act on behalf of the common owner. \*\*

The fourth alternative permits other evidence to be used which would establish common ownership of the applications; e.g., a court decision determining the owner.

>SHOWING BY AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION;  
WHO MAY SIGN ON BEHALF OF AN  
ORGANIZATION<

The terms "person" and "organization" in the rule would include circumstances where the ownership resided in more than one person and/or organization as long as the applications are owned jointly by the same owners. Paragraph (e) also provides that where the common owner is a corporation or other organization an affidavit or declaration averring common ownership may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization who is empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization. >The requirements of 37 CFR 3.73(b) do not apply.< A mere power of attorney to prosecute a patent application will not make an individual an official of the corporation or organization or empower the individual to act on behalf of the corporation or organization for purposes of averring common ownership. However, such an affidavit could be made by a patent attorney, patent agent, or other individual if the attorney, agent, or other individual has been appointed in writing by the corporation or organization as an official of the corporation or organization specifically empowered to make affidavits or declarations on its behalf averring to common ownership. In circumstances where such a written appointment has been given to a patent attorney, patent agent, or other individual, that person could then make

**706.02(m)**

affidavits or declarations averring to common ownership as long as the affidavit or declaration referred to an attached copy of the written appointment and averred that the authority is still in effect. Under this practice the original signed copy of the written appointment would be retained by the affiant or declarant unless the Patent and Trademark Office specifically required it to be filed. Unless some question arose as to the authority of the individual to make the averment as to common ownership, the Patent and Trademark Office would ordinarily not need to require the original signed copy of the written appointment. While this practice should simplify the establishing of common ownership by necessitating only one original signed written appointment, corporations and other organizations must exercise care that the written appointment is only given to those persons who are in a position to know that common ownership does in fact exist and can therefore properly make affirmative representations to that effect to the Patent and Trademark Office.

*3. Examination of Applications of Different Inventive Entities Where Common Ownership is not Established*

See MPEP § 706.02(k) for examination of applications of different inventive entities where common ownership is established.

Where the applications do not establish common ownership, the examiner will:

- (a) assume that the applications are not commonly owned;
- (b) examine the applications on all grounds other than any conflict between the applications;
- (c) consider the applicability of 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103 if one application refers to the other or if one inventor is common to both applications. If there is no cross-reference or common inventor between the applications it would be inappropriate for the examiner to refer to one application in the other in view of 35 U.S.C. 122;
- (d) consider interference if appropriate; and
- (e) suspend the later filed application if it is otherwise allowable until the earlier filed application is abandoned or issues as a patent and then reject the later filed application under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)/103, if appropriate.

**706.02(m) Form Paragraphs for Use in Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 103 [R-2]**

The following form paragraphs should be used in making the appropriate rejections under 35 U.S.C. 103.

¶ 7.20 *Statement of Statutory Basis, 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<*

The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

>(a)<A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negated by the manner in which the invention was made.

\*\*

**Examiner Note:**

- 1. The statute is not to be \*>recited< in all Office actions. It is only required in first actions on the merits employing 35 U.S.C. 103 and final rejections. Where the statute is being applied, but is not cited in an action on the merits, use paragraph \*>7.103.<
- 2. This paragraph should only be used ONCE in a given Office action.
- 3. This paragraph must precede paragraphs 7.20.01 – 7.22 when this paragraph is used to cite the statute in first actions and final rejections.

¶ 7.20.01 *>103(a)< Rejection Using Art Disqualified Under 102(f) \*>or< (g)*

Applicant has provided evidence in this file showing that the invention was owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same entity as [1] at the time this invention was made. Accordingly, [2] is disqualified as prior art through 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) in any rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< in this application. However, this applied art additionally qualifies as prior art under section [3] of 35 U.S.C. 102 and accordingly is not disqualified as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<.

Applicant may overcome the applied art either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that the invention disclosed therein was derived from the invention of this application, and is therefore, not the invention “by another”, or by antedating the applied art under 37 CFR 1.131.

**Examiner Note:**

- 1. This paragraph must be included following paragraph 7.20 in all actions containing rejections under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< using art that is disqualified under 103>(a)< through 102 (f) or (g), but which qualifies under another section of 35 U.S.C. 102.
- 2. In brackets 1 and 2, identify the commonly owned applied art (patent or co-pending application).
- 3. In bracket 3, insert “(a)” or “(e)” as appropriate.

¶ 7.20.02 *Joint Inventors, Common Ownership Presumed*

This application currently names joint inventors. In considering patentability of the claims under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<, the examiner

presumes that the subject matter of the various claims was commonly owned at the time any inventions covered therein were made absent any evidence to the contrary. Applicant is advised of the obligations under 37 CFR 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim that was not commonly owned at the time a later invention was made in order for the examiner to consider the applicability of potential 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must be used in all applications with joint inventors (unless the claims are clearly restricted to only one claimed invention, e.g., only a single claim is presented in the application).

¶ 7.21 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< as being unpatentable over [2], [3]>.<

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by either paragraph 7.20 or by paragraph \*7.103.<
2. In bracket 3, an explanation of the rejection applying the *Graham >et al< v. Deere* test must be provided.
3. If this rejection relies upon art that is disqualified under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) based upon common ownership of the invention, paragraph 7.20.01 must follow this paragraph.
4. If this rejection is a provisional 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< rejection based upon a copending application that would comprise prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) if patented, use paragraph 7.21.01 instead of this paragraph.

¶ 7.21.01 *Provisional Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<, Common Assignee or At Least One Common Inventor Only*

Claim [1] provisionally rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< as being obvious over copending application no. [2] which has a common [3] with the instant application. Based upon the earlier effective U.S. filing date of the copending application, it would constitute prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) if patented. This provisional rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< is based upon a presumption of future patenting of the conflicting application. [4].

This provisional rejection might be overcome either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that any invention disclosed but not claimed in the copending application was derived from the inventor of this application and is thus not the invention "by another", or by a showing of a date of invention prior to the effective U.S. filing date of the copending application under 37 CFR 1.131.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is used to provisionally reject claims not patentably distinct from the disclosure in a copending application having an earlier U.S. filing date and also having either a common assignee or at least one common inventor.
2. If the claimed invention is fully disclosed in the copending application, use paragraph 7.15.01.
3. In bracket 3, insert either "assignee" or "inventor".
4. In bracket 4, insert explanation of obviousness.
5. If the claimed invention is also claimed in the copending application, a provisional obviousness double patenting rejection should additionally be made using paragraph 8.33 and 8.37.
6. If evidence of record indicates that the copending application is also prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) and the copending

application has not been disqualified as prior art in a 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< rejection based upon common ownership, a rejection should additionally be made under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< using paragraph 7.21 (e.g., applicant has named the prior inventor in response to a requirement made using paragraph 8.28).

¶ 7.21.02 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<, Common Assignee or At Least One Common Inventor*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< as being obvious over [2].

The applied reference has a common [3] with the instant application. Based upon the earlier effective U.S. filing date of the reference, it constitutes prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(e). This rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< might be overcome either by a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that any invention disclosed but not claimed in the reference was derived from the inventor of this application and is thus not the invention "by another", or by a showing of a date of invention for the instant application of any unclaimed subject matter prior to the effective U.S. filing date of the reference under 37 CFR 1.131. [4].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is used to reject over a patent with an earlier filing date that discloses the claimed invention. The patent must have either a common assignee or at least one common inventor.
2. In bracket 3, insert either "assignee" or "inventor."
3. In bracket 4, insert explanation of obviousness.

¶ 7.22 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)<, Further in View of*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< as being unpatentable over [2] as applied to claim [3] above, and further in view of [4], [5]>.<

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.21.
2. An explanation of the rejection applying the *Graham >et al< v. Deere* test must be provided in bracket 5.

¶ 7.23 *Graham v. Deere, Test for Obviousness*

The factual inquires set forth in *Graham >et al< v. John Deere Co.*, 148 USPQ 459, that are applied for establishing a background for determining obviousness under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< are summarized as follows:

1. Determining the scope and contents of the prior art\*>.<
2. Ascertaining the differences between the prior art and the claims at issue\*\*>.<
3. Resolving the level of ordinary skill in the pertinent art.
4. Considering objective evidence present in the application indicating obviousness or unobviousness.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph may be used, if appropriate, in response to an argument of the use of *Graham >et al< v. Deere*.

¶ 7.27 *Rejection 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103>(a)<*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 ([2]) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< as obvious over [3], [4]>.<

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is NOT intended to be commonly used as a substitute for a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102. In other words, a single rejection under either 35 U.S.C. 102 or 35 U.S.C. 103>(a)< should be made whenever possible using appropriate form paragraphs 7.15 to 7.19,

**706.02(n)**

7.21 and 7.22. Examples of circumstances where this paragraph may be used are as follows:

a.>.< When the interpretation of the claim(s) is or may be in dispute, i.e. given one interpretation, a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102 is appropriate and given another interpretation, a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a)< is appropriate. See MPEP § 2111-§ 2117 for guidelines on claim interpretation.

b. When the reference discloses all the limitations of a claim except a property or function, and the examiner cannot determine whether or not the reference inherently possesses properties which anticipate or render obvious the claimed invention but has basis for shifting the burden of proof to applicant as in *In re Fitzgerald et al*, 619 F.2d 67, 205 USPQ 594 (CCPA 1980). See MPEP § 2112-§ 2112.02>.<

c. When the reference teaches a small genus which places a claimed species in the possession of the public as in *In re Schaumann*, 572 F.2d 312, 197 USPQ 5 (CCPA 1978), and the species would have been obvious even if the genus were not sufficiently small to justify a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102. See MPEP § 2131.02 and § 2144.03 for more information on anticipation and obviousness of species by a disclosure of a genus.

d. When the reference teaches a product that appears to be the same as, or an obvious variant of, the product set forth in a product-by-process claim although produced by a different process. See *In re Marosi*, 218 USPQ 289 (Fed. Cir. 1983) and *In re Thorpe*, 227 USPQ 964 (Fed. Cir. 1985). See also MPEP § 2113>.<

e. When the reference teaches all claim limitations except a means plus function limitation and the examiner is not certain whether the element disclosed in the reference is an equivalent to the claimed element and therefore anticipatory, or whether the prior art element is an obvious variant of the claimed element. See MPEP § 2183 -§ 2184.

f. When the ranges disclosed in the reference and claimed by applicant overlap in scope but the reference does not contain a specific example within the claimed range. See the concurring opinion in *Ex parte Lee*, 31 USPQ 2d 1105 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1993). See MPEP § 2131.03.

2. If the interpretation of the claim(s) renders the claim(s) indefinite, a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, 2nd paragraph, may be appropriate.

3. In bracket 2, insert the appropriate paragraph letter(s) in parenthesis.

4. In bracket 4, a full explanation should be provided.

5. This paragraph must be preceded by 7.07, one or more of paragraphs 7.08 to 7.14 as appropriate, and paragraph 7.20 or paragraph \*>7.103.<

**>706.02(n) Biotechnology Process Applications; 35 U.S.C. 103(b) [R-2]**

*35 U.S.C. 103. Conditions for patentability; non-obvious subject matter.*

\*\*\*\*\*

(b)(1) Notwithstanding subsection (a), and upon timely election by the applicant for patent to proceed under this subsection, a

biotechnological process using or resulting in a composition of matter that is novel under section 102 and nonobvious under subsection (a) of this section shall be considered nonobvious if--

(A) claims to the process and the composition of matter are contained in either the same application for patent or in separate applications having the same effective filing date; and

(B) the composition of matter, and the process at the time it was invented, were owned by the same person or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person.

(2) A patent issued on a process under paragraph (1)--

(A) shall also contain the claims to the composition of matter used in or made by that process, or

(B) shall, if such composition of matter is claimed in another patent, be set to expire on the same date as such other patent, notwithstanding section 154

(3) For purposes of paragraph (1), the term 'biotechnological process' means--

(A) a process of genetically altering or otherwise inducing a single- or multi-celled organism to--

(i) express an exogenous nucleotide sequence,

(ii) inhibit, eliminate, augment, or alter expression of an endogenous nucleotide sequence or

(iii) express a specific physiological characteristic not naturally associated with said organism;

(B) cell fusion procedures yielding a cell line that expresses a specific protein, such as a monoclonal antibody; and

(C) a method of using a product produced by a process defined by subparagraph (A) or (B), or a combination of subparagraphs (A) and (B).

\*\*\*\*\*

35 U.S.C. 103(b) is applicable to biotechnological processes only. 35 U.S.C. 103(b) precludes a rejection of process claims which involve the use or making of certain nonobvious biotechnological compositions of matter under 35 U.S.C. 103(a).

35 U.S.C. 103(b) requires that:

1. the biotechnological process and composition of matter be contained in either the same application or in separate applications have the same effective filing date;

2. both the biotechnological process and composition of matter be owned or subject to an assignment to the same person at the time the process was invented;

3. a patent issued on the process also contain the claims to the composition of matter used in or made by the process, or, if the process and composition of matter are in different patents, the patents expire on the same date;

4. the biotechnological process falls within the definition set forth in 35 U.S.C. 103(b); and

5. a timely election be made to proceed under the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 103(b).

An election to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 103(b) shall be made by way of petition under 37 CFR 1.182. The petition must establish that all the requirements set forth in 35 U.S.C. 103(b) have been satisfied.

An election will normally be considered timely if it is made no later than the earlier of either (1) the payment of the issue fee, or (2) the filing of an appeal brief in an application which contains a composition of matter claim which has not been rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103.

In an application where at least one composition of matter claim has not been rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103, a 35 U.S.C. 103(b) election may be made by submitting the petition and an amendment requesting entry of process claims which correspond to the composition of matter claim.

For applications pending on or after November 1, 1995, in which the issue fee has been paid prior to March 26, 1996, the timeliness requirement for an election under 35 U.S.C. 103(b) will be considered satisfied if the conditions of 37 CFR 1.312(b) are met. However, if a patent is granted on an application entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 103(b) without an election having been made as a result of error without deceptive intent, patentees may file a reissue application to permit consideration of process claims which qualify for 35 U.S.C. 103(b) treatment.

See MPEP 2116.01 for a discussion of the Federal Circuit's decisions in *In re Ochiai*, 71 F.3d 1565, 37 USPQ 1127 (Fed. Cir. 1995) and *In re Brouwer*, 77 F.3d 422, 37 USPQ2d 1663 (Fed. Cir. 1996) which address the general issue of whether an otherwise conventional process could be patented if it were limited to making or using a nonobvious product. In view of the Federal Circuit's decisions in *Ochiai* and *Brouwer*, an applicant's need to rely upon 35 U.S.C. 103(b) should be rare. See also 1184 O G 86 (Comm'r Pat. 1996). See 35 U.S.C. 282 for the effect of a determination of nonobviousness under 35 U.S.C. 103(b)(1) on the presumption of validity.<

### 706.03 Rejections Not Based on Prior Art [R-2]

The primary object of the examination of an application is to determine whether or not the claims define a patentable advance over the prior art. This consider-

ation should not be relegated to a secondary position while undue emphasis is given to nonprior art or "technical" rejections. Effort in examining should be concentrated on truly essential matters, minimizing or eliminating effort on technical rejections which are not really critical. Where a major technical rejection is proper (e.g., lack of proper disclosure, undue breadth, utility, etc.) such rejection should be stated with a full development of the reasons rather than by a mere conclusion coupled with some stereotyped expression.

Rejections based on nonstatutory subject matter are explained in MPEP § 706.03(a), § 2105, § 2106 – § 2106.02, and § 2107 – § 2107.02. Rejections based on subject matter barred by the Atomic Energy Act are explained in MPEP § 706.03(b). Rejections based on duplicate claims are addressed in MPEP § 706.03(k), and double patenting rejections are addressed in MPEP § 804. See MPEP § 706.03(o) for rejections based on new matter. Foreign filing without a license is discussed in MPEP § \*706.03(s)<. Disclaimer, after interference or public use proceeding, *res judicata*, and reissue are explained in MPEP § 706.03(u) to § 706.03(x). Rejections based on 35 U.S.C. 112 are discussed in MPEP § 2161 – § 2174. IF THE LANGUAGE IN THE FORM PARAGRAPHS ARE INCORPORATED IN THE LETTER TO STATE THE REJECTION, THERE WILL BE LESS CHANCE OF A MISUNDERSTANDING AS TO THE GROUNDS OF REJECTION.

### 706.03(a) Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 101 [R-1]

> Patents are not granted for all new and useful inventions and discoveries. The subject matter of the invention or discovery must come within the boundaries set forth by 35 U.S.C. 101, which permits patents to be granted only for "any new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof."

The term "process" as defined in 35 U.S.C. 100, means process, art or method, and includes a new use of a known process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter, or material.

See MPEP § 2105 for patentability of microorganisms and MPEP § 2106 – § 2106.02 for patentability of mathematical algorithms or computer programs.

**706.03(a)(1)**

**LACK OF UTILITY**

A rejection on the ground of lack of utility includes the more specific grounds of inoperativeness, involving perpetual motion, frivolous, fraudulent, and against public policy. The statutory basis for this rejection is 35 U.S.C. 101. See MPEP § 706.03(a)(1) for guidelines governing rejections for lack of utility. See MPEP § 2107 – § 2107.02 for legal precedent governing the utility requirement.

Decisions have determined the limits of the statutory classes. Examples of subject matter not patentable under the Statute follow:

**PRINTED MATTER**

For example, a mere arrangement of printed matter, though seemingly a “manufacture,” is rejected as not being within the statutory classes. See *In re Miller*, 164 USPQ 46, 57 CCPA 809 (1969); *Ex parte Gwinn*, 112 USPQ 439 (Bd. App. 1955); and *In re Jones*, 153 USPQ 77, 54 CCPA 1218 (1967).

**NATURALLY OCCURRING ARTICLE**

Similarly, a thing occurring in nature, which is substantially unaltered, is not a “manufacture.” A shrimp with the head and digestive tract removed is an example. *Ex parte Grayson*, 51 USPQ 413 (Bd. App. 1941).

**SCIENTIFIC PRINCIPLE**

A scientific principle, divorced from any tangible structure, can be rejected as not within the statutory classes. *O'Reilly v. Morse*, 15 Howard 62.

This subject matter is further limited by the Atomic Energy Act explained in MPEP § 706.03(b). Use Form Paragraphs 7.04 through 7.05.03 to reject under 35 U.S.C. 101.

¶ 7.04 *Statement of Statutory Basis, 35 U.S.C. 101:*  
35 U.S.C. 101 reads as follows:

“Whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter or any new and useful improvement thereof, may obtain a patent therefor, subject to the conditions and requirements of this title”.

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph must precede the first use of 35 U.S.C. 101 in all first actions on the merits and final rejections.

¶ 7.05 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 101, “Heading” only (Utility, Non-Statutory, Inoperative)*

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 101 because

**Examiner Note:**

1. This form paragraph must be followed by any one of paragraphs 7.05.01 – 7.05.03 or another appropriate reason.
2. Explain the rejection following the recitation of the statute and the use of form paragraphs 7.05.01 – 7.05.03 or other reason.
3. See MPEP § 706.03(a) and § 2105 – § 2107.02 for other situations.
4. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.04 in first actions and final rejections.

¶ 7.05.01 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 101, Non-Statutory*  
the claimed invention is directed to non-statutory subject matter. [1].

**Examiner Note:**

In bracket 1, insert identification of non-statutory subject matter.

¶ 7.05.02 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 101, Utility Lacking*  
the claimed invention lacks patentable utility. [1].

**Examiner Note:**

In bracket 1, provide explanation of lack of utility, such as, for example, that which is frivolous, fraudulent, against public policy, or lacks proper chemical specificity, etc. See MPEP § 706.03(a) and § 2105 – § 2107.02.

¶ 7.05.03 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 101, Inoperative*  
the disclosed invention is inoperative and therefore lacks utility. [1].

**Examiner Note:**

In bracket 1, explain why invention is inoperative. <

**706.03(a)(1) Guidelines For Examination of Applications for Compliance With the Utility Requirement of 35 U.S.C. 101 and 35 U.S.C. 112 [R-2]**

The following guidelines establish the policies and procedures to be followed by Office personnel when examining applications for compliance with the utility requirements of 35 U.S.C. 101 and 35 U.S.C. 112. The guidelines also address issues that may arise during examination of applications claiming protection for inventions in the field of biotechnology and human therapy. See MPEP § 2107 – § 2107.02 for a discussion of the legal precedent governing utility rejections.

**GUIDELINES**

Office personnel must adhere to the following procedures when reviewing applications for compliance with the useful invention (utility) requirement of 35 U.S.C. 101 and 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph:

- (1) Determine what the applicant has \*\*>invented and is seeking to patent: <

(a) Ensure that the **>claims define<** statutory subject matter (e.g., a process, a machine, a manufacture, or a composition of matter); and

(b) **>Review the complete specification, including the detailed description of the invention, any specific embodiments that have been disclosed, the claims, and any specific utilities that have been asserted for the invention.<**

(2) Review the specification and claims to determine if the applicant has asserted any credible utility for the claimed invention.

(a) If the applicant has asserted that the claimed invention is useful for any particular purpose (i.e., a "specific utility") and that assertion would be considered credible by a person of ordinary skill in the art, do not impose a rejection based on lack of utility. Credibility is to be assessed from the perspective of one of ordinary skill in the art in view of any evidence of record (e.g., data, statements, opinions, references, etc.) that is relevant to the applicant's assertions. An applicant must provide only one credible assertion of specific utility for any claimed invention to satisfy the utility requirement.

(b) If the invention has a well-established utility, regardless of any assertion made by the applicant, do not impose a rejection based on lack of utility. An invention has a well-established utility if a person of ordinary skill in the art would immediately appreciate why the invention is useful based on the characteristics of the invention (e.g., properties of a product or obvious application of a process).

(c) If the applicant has not asserted any specific utility for the claimed invention and it does not have a well-established utility, impose a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 101, emphasizing that the applicant has not disclosed a specific utility for the invention. Also impose a separate rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, on the basis that the applicant has not shown how to use the invention due to lack of disclosure of a specific utility. The 35 U.S.C. 101 and 112 rejections should shift the burden to the applicant to:

(i) explicitly identify a specific utility for the claimed invention, and

(ii) indicate where support for the asserted utility can be found in the specification.

Review the subsequently asserted utility by the applicant using the standard outlined in paragraph (2)(a)

above, and ensure that it is fully supported by the original disclosure.

(3) If no assertion of specific utility for the claimed invention made by the applicant is credible, and the claimed invention does not have a well-established utility, reject the claim(s) under 35 U.S.C. 101 on the grounds that the invention as claimed lacks utility. Also reject the claims under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, on the basis that the disclosure fails to teach how to use the invention as claimed. The 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, rejection imposed in conjunction with a 35 U.S.C. 101 rejection should incorporate by reference the grounds of the corresponding 35 U.S.C. 101 rejection and should be set out as a rejection distinct from any other rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, not based on lack of utility for the claimed invention.

To be considered appropriate by the Office, any rejection based on lack of utility must include the following elements:

(a) A *prima facie* showing that the claimed invention has no utility. A *prima facie* showing of no utility must establish that it is more likely than not that a person skilled in the art would not consider credible any specific utility asserted by the applicant for the claimed invention. A *prima facie* showing must contain the following elements:

(i) a well-reasoned statement that clearly sets forth the reasoning used in concluding that the asserted utility is not credible;

(ii) support for factual findings relied upon in reaching this conclusion; and

(iii) support for any conclusions regarding evidence provided by the applicant in support of an asserted utility.

(b) Specific evidence that supports any fact-based assertions needed to establish the *prima facie* showing. Whenever possible, Office personnel must provide documentary evidence (e.g., scientific or technical journals, excerpts from treatises or books, or U.S. or foreign patents) as the form of support used in establishing the factual basis of a *prima facie* showing of no utility according to items (a)(ii) and (a)(iii) above. If documentary evidence is not available, Office personnel shall note this fact and specifically explain the scientific basis for the factual conclusions relied on in sections (a)(ii) and (a)(iii).

**706.03(b)**

(4) A rejection based on lack of utility should not be maintained if an asserted utility for the claimed invention would be considered credible by a person of ordinary skill in the art in view of all evidence of record.

Once a *prima facie* showing of no utility has been properly established, the applicant bears the burden of rebutting it. The applicant can do this by amending the claims, by providing reasoning or arguments, or by providing evidence in the form of a declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 or a printed publication, that rebuts the basis or logic of the *prima facie* showing. If the applicant responds to the *prima facie* rejection, Office personnel shall review the original disclosure, any evidence relied upon in establishing the *prima facie* showing, any claim amendments and any new reasoning or evidence provided by the applicant in support of an asserted utility. It is essential for Office personnel to recognize, fully consider and respond to each substantive element of any response to a rejection based on lack of utility. Only where the totality of the record continues to show that the asserted utility is not credible should a rejection based on lack of utility be maintained.

If the applicant satisfactorily rebuts a *prima facie* rejection based on lack of utility under 35 U.S.C. 101, withdraw the 35 U.S.C. 101 rejection and the corresponding rejection imposed under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, per paragraph (3) above.

Office personnel are reminded that they must treat as true a statement of fact made by an applicant in relation to an asserted utility, unless countervailing evidence can be provided that shows that one of ordinary skill in the art would have a legitimate basis to doubt the credibility of such a statement. Similarly, Office personnel must accept an opinion from a qualified expert that is based upon relevant facts whose accuracy is not being questioned; it is improper to disregard the opinion solely because of a disagreement over the significance or meaning of the facts offered.

**706.03(b) Barred by Atomic Energy Act [R-1]**

>A limitation on what can be patented is imposed by the Atomic Energy Act of 1954. Section 151(a) (42 U.S.C. 2181a) thereof reads in part as follows:

No patent shall hereafter be granted for any invention or discovery which is useful solely in the utilization

of special nuclear material or atomic energy in an atomic weapon.

The terms “atomic energy” and “special nuclear material” are defined in Section 11 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 2014).

Sections 151(c) and 151(d) (42 U.S.C. 2181c and d) set up categories of pending applications relating to atomic energy that must be brought to the attention of the Department of Energy. Under 37 CFR 1.14(c), applications for patents which disclose or which appear to disclose, or which purport to disclose, inventions or discoveries relating to atomic energy are reported to the Department of Energy and the Department will be given access to such applications, but such reporting does not constitute a determination that the subject matter of each application so reported is in fact useful or an invention or discovery or that such application in fact discloses subject matter in categories specified by the Atomic Energy Act.

All applications received in the Patent and Trademark Office are screened by Group 2200 personnel, under 37 CFR 1.14(c), in order for the Commissioner to fulfill his responsibilities under section 151(d) (42 U.S.C. 2181d) of the Atomic Energy Act. Papers subsequently added must be inspected promptly by the examiner when received to determine whether the application has been amended to relate to atomic energy and those so related must be promptly forwarded to Licensing and Review in Group 2200.

All rejections based upon sections 151(a)(42 U.S.C. 2181a), 152 (42 U.S.C. 2182), and 155 (42 U.S.C. 2185) of the Atomic Energy Act must be made only by Group 2200 personnel. <

**706.03(c) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 112, First Paragraph [R-1]**

>Rejections based on the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 are discussed in MPEP § 2161 – § 2165.04. For a discussion of the utility requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, and 35 U.S.C. 101, see MPEP § 706.03(a)(1) and § 2107 – § 2107.02. The appropriate Form Paragraphs 7.31.01 through 7.33.01 should be used in making rejections under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph.

¶ 7.31.01 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 1st Paragraph, Description Requirement, Including New Matter Situations

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, as the specification does not contain a written description of the claimed

invention, in that the disclosure does not reasonably convey to one skilled in the relevant art that the inventor(s) had possession of the claimed invention at the time the application was filed. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, identify (by suitable reference to page and line numbers and/or drawing figures) the subject matter not described in the application as filed, and provide an explanation of your position. The explanation should include any questions examiners asked which were not satisfactorily resolved and consequently raise doubt as to possession of the claimed invention at the time of filing.

## ¶ 7.31.02 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 1st Paragraph, Enablement

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, because the specification does not enable any person skilled in the art to which it pertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to [2] the invention. [3].

**Examiner Note:**

1. If the problem is one of scope, form paragraph 7.31.03 should be used.

2. In bracket 2, fill in only the appropriate portion of the statute, i.e., one of the following "make," "use," or "make and use."

3. In bracket 3, identify the claimed subject matter for which the specification is not enabling along with an explanation as to why the specification is not enabling. The explanation should include any questions posed by the examiner which were not satisfactorily resolved and consequently raise doubt as to enablement.

4. Where an essential component or step of the invention is not recited in the claims, use form paragraph 7.33.01.

## ¶ 7.31.03 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 1st Paragraph, Scope of Enablement

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, because the specification, while being enabling for [2], does not reasonably provide enablement for [3]. The specification does not enable any person skilled in the art to which it pertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to [4] the invention commensurate in scope with these claims. [5].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph is to be used when the scope of the claims is not commensurate with the scope of the enabling disclosure.

2. In bracket 2, identify the claimed subject matter for which the specification is enabling. This may be by reference to specific portions of the specification.

3. In bracket 3, identify aspect(s) of the claim(s) for which the specification is not enabling.

4. In bracket 4, fill in only the appropriate portion of the statute, i.e., one of the following: "make" "use", or "make and use".

5. In bracket 5, identify the problem along with an explanation as to why the specification is not enabling. The explanation should include any questions posed by the examiner which were not satisfactorily resolved and consequently raise doubt as to enablement.

## ¶ 7.31.04 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 1st Paragraph, Best Mode Requirement

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, because the best mode contemplated by the inventor has not been disclosed. Evidence of concealment of the best mode is based upon [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the basis for holding that the best mode has been concealed, e.g., the quality of applicant's disclosure is so poor as to effectively result in concealment.

2. Use of this form paragraph should be rare. See MPEP § 2165-§ 2165.04.

## ¶ 7.33.01 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 1st Paragraph, Essential Subject Matter Missing From Claims (Enablement)

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, as based on a disclosure which is not enabling. [2] critical or essential to the practice of the invention, but not included in the claim(s) is not enabled by the disclosure. *In re Mayhew*, 527 F.2d 1229, 188 USPQ 356 (CCPA 1976). [3].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, recite the subject matter omitted from the claims.  
2. In bracket 3, give the rationale for considering the omitted subject matter critical or essential.

3. The examiner shall cite the statement, argument, date, drawing, or other evidence which demonstrates that a particular feature was considered essential by the applicant, is not reflected in the claims which are rejected.<

**706.03(d) Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. 112, Second Paragraph [R-2]**

Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, are discussed in MPEP § 2171 - § 2174. Form paragraphs 7.34 through 7.35.01 should be used to reject under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph.

## ¶ 7.34 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 2nd Paragraph, Failure To Claim Applicant's Invention

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as failing to set forth the subject matter which applicant(s) regard as their invention. Evidence that claim [2] fail(s) to correspond in scope with that which applicant(s) regard as the invention can be found in paper no. [3] filed [4]. In that paper, applicant has stated [5], and this statement indicates that the invention is different from what is defined in the claim(s) because [6].

**Examiner Note\*:>:<**

>1.< This paragraph is to be used only where applicant has stated, somewhere other than in the application, as filed, that the invention is something different from what is defined in the claim(s).

2. In brackets 3 and 4, identify the submission by applicant (which is not the application, as filed, but may be in the remarks by applicant, in the brief, in an affidavit, etc.) by paper no. and the date the paper was filed in the PTO.

3. In bracket 5, set forth what applicant has stated in the submission to indicate a different invention.

4. In bracket 6, explain how the statement indicated an invention other than what is being claimed.

## ¶ 7.34.01 Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 2nd Paragraph, Failure To Particularly Point Out and Distinctly Claim (Indefinite)

Claim[1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite for failing to particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.

706.03(d)

**Examiner Note:**

This paragraph should be followed by one or more of the following form paragraphs 7.34.02 – 7.34.06, as applicable. If none of these form paragraphs are appropriate, a full explanation of the deficiency of the claims should be supplied. Whenever possible, identify the particular term(s) or limitation(s) which render the claim(s) indefinite and state why such term or limitation renders the claim indefinite. If the scope of the claimed subject matter can be determined by one having ordinary skill in the art, a rejection using this form paragraph would not be appropriate. See MPEP > § < § 2171 – \*2174 for guidance. See also form paragraph 17.07 for pro se applicants.

¶ 7.34.02 *Terminology Used Inconsistent With Accepted Meaning*

While applicant may be his or her own lexicographer, a term in a claim may not be given a meaning repugnant to the usual meaning of that term, *In re Hill*, 161 F.2d 367, 73 USPQ 482 (CCPA 1947). The term [1] in claim [2] is used by the claim to mean [3], while the accepted meaning is [4].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 3, point out the meaning that is assigned to the term by applicant's claims, taking into account the entire disclosure.
2. In bracket 4, point out the accepted meaning of the term. Support for the examiner's stated accepted meaning should be provided through the citation of an appropriate reference source, e.g. text book or dictionary. See MPEP § 2173.05(a).
3. This form paragraph must be preceded by form paragraph 7.34.01.

¶ 7.34.03 *Relative Term – Term of Degree Rendering Claim Indefinite*

The term [1] in claim [2] is a relative term which renders the claim indefinite. The term [1] is not defined by the claim, the specification does not provide a standard for ascertaining the requisite degree, and one of ordinary skill in the art would not be reasonably apprised of the scope of the invention. [3].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 3, explain which parameter, quantity, or other limitation in the claim has been rendered indefinite by the use of the term appearing in bracket 1.
2. This form paragraph must be preceded by form paragraph 7.34.01.

¶ 7.34.04 *Broader Range/Limitation and Narrow Range/Limitation In Same Claim*

A broad range or limitation together with a narrow range or limitation that falls within the broad range or limitation (in the same claim) is considered indefinite, since the resulting claim does not clearly set forth the metes and bounds of the patent protection desired. Note the explanation given by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in *Ex parte Wu*, 10 USPQ2d 2031, 2033 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989), as to where broad language is followed by "such as" and then narrow language. The Board stated that this can render a claim indefinite by raising a question or doubt as to whether the feature introduced by such language is (a) merely exemplary of the remainder of the claim, and therefore not required, or (b) a required feature of the claims. Note also, for example, the decisions of *Ex parte Steigewald*, 131 USPQ 74 (Bd. App. 1961); *Ex*

*parte Hall*, 83 USPQ 38 (Bd. App. 1948); and *Ex parte Hasche*, 86 USPQ 481 (Bd. App. 1949). In the present instance, claim [1] recites the broad recitation [2], and the claim also recites [3] which is the narrower statement of the range/limitation.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the broader range/limitation and where it appears in the claim; in bracket 3, insert the narrow range/limitation and where it appears. This form paragraph may be modified to fit other instances of indefiniteness in the claims.
2. This form paragraph must be preceded by form paragraph 7.34.01.

¶ 7.34.05 *Lack of Antecedent Basis In the Claims*

Claim [1] recites the limitation [2] in [3]. There is insufficient antecedent basis for this limitation in the claim.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the limitation which lacks antecedent basis, for example "said lever" or "the lever."
2. In bracket 3, identify where in the claim(s) the limitation appears, for example, "line 3", "the 3rd paragraph of the claim", "the last 2 lines of the claim", etc.
3. This form paragraph must be preceded by form paragraph 7.34.01.

¶ 7.34.06 *Use Claims*

Claim [1] provides for the use of [2], but >, < since the claim does not set forth any steps involved in the method/process, it is unclear what method/process applicant is intending to cover. A claim is indefinite where it merely recites a use without any active, positive steps delimiting how this use is actually practiced.

> Claim [3] is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 101 because the claimed recitation of a use, without setting forth any steps involved in the process, results in an improper definition of a process, i.e., results in a claim which is not a proper process claim under 35 U.S.C. 101. See for example *Ex parte Dunki*, 153 USPQ 678 (Bd. App. 1967) and *Clinical Products, Ltd v. Brenner*, 255 F. Supp. 131, 149 USPQ 475 (D.D.C. 1966). <

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert what is being used. For example, insert "the monoclonal antibodies of claim 4," where the claim recites "a method for using monoclonal antibodies of claim 4 to purify interferon."
2. \*\* See also MPEP 2173.05(q).
3. This form paragraph must be preceded by form paragraph 7.34.01.

¶ 7.35 *Rejection, 35 U.S.C. 112, 2nd Paragraph, Failure to Particularly Point Out and Distinctly Claim – Omnibus Claim*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite in that it fails to point out what is included or excluded by the claim language. This claim is an omnibus type claim.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Use this paragraph to reject an "omnibus" type claim. No further explanation is necessary.
2. See MPEP § 1302.04(b) for cancellation of such a claim by examiner's amendment upon allowance.
3. An example of an omnibus claim is: "A device substantially as shown and described."

>¶ 7.35.01 *Trademark or Trade Name as a Limitation in the Claim*

Claim [1] contains the trademark/trade name [2]. Where a trademark or trade name is used in a claim as a limitation to identify or describe a particular material or product, the claim does not comply with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph. *Ex parte Simpson*, 218 USPQ 1020 (Bd. App. 1982). The claim scope is uncertain since the trademark or trade name cannot be used properly to identify any particular material or product. A trademark or trade name is used to identify a source of goods, and not the goods themselves. Thus, a trademark or trade name does not identify or describe the goods associated with the trademark or trade name. In the present case, the trademark/trade name is used to identify/describe [3] and, accordingly, the identification/description is indefinite.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the trademark/trade name and where it is used in the claim.

2. In bracket 3, specify the material or product which is identified or described in the claim by the trademark/trade name. <

**706.03(k) Duplicate Claims [R-1]**

>Inasmuch as a patent is supposed to be limited to only one invention or, at most, several closely related indivisible inventions, limiting an application to a single claim, or a single claim to each of the related inventions might appear to be logical as well as convenient. However, court decisions have confirmed applicant's right to restate (i.e., by plural claiming) the invention in a reasonable number of ways. Indeed, a mere difference in scope between claims has been held to be enough.

Nevertheless, when two claims in an application are duplicates, or else are so close in content that they both cover the same thing, despite a slight difference in wording, it is proper after allowing one claim to reject the other as being a substantial duplicate of the allowed claim.

See MPEP Chapter 800 for double patenting rejections of inventions not patentable over each other. <

**706.03(m) Nonelected Inventions [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 821 to § 821.03 for treatment of claims held to be drawn to nonelected inventions. <

**706.03(o) New Matter [R-2]**

*35 U.S.C. 132. Notice of rejection; reexamination.*

Whenever, on examination, any claim for a patent is rejected, or any objection or requirement made, the Commissioner shall notify the applicant thereof, stating the reasons for such rejection, or objection or requirement, together with such information and references as may be useful in judging of the propriety of continuing the \* prosecution of his

application; and if after receiving such notice, the applicant persists in his claim for a patent, with or without amendment, the application shall be reexamined. No amendment shall introduce new matter into the disclosure of the invention.

In amended cases, subject matter not disclosed in the original application is sometimes added and a claim directed thereto. Such a claim is rejected on the ground that it recites elements without support in the original disclosure under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, >*Waldemar Link, GmbH & Co. v. Osteonics Corp.* 32, F.3d 556, 559, 31 USPQ2d 1855, 1857 (Fed. Cir. 1994); <*In re Rasmussen*, 650 F.2d 1212, 211 USPQ

323 (CCPA 1981). See MPEP § 2163.06 – § 2163.07(b) for a discussion of the relationship of new matter to 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph. New matter includes not only the addition of wholly unsupported subject matter, but may also include adding specific percentages or compounds after a broader original disclosure, or even the omission of a step from a method. See MPEP § 608.04 to § 608.04(c). See *In re Wertheim*, 541 F.2d 257, 191 USPQ 90 (CCPA 1976) and MPEP § 2163.05 for guidance in determining whether the addition of specific percentages or compounds after a broader original disclosure constitutes new matter.

In the examination of an application following amendment thereof, the examiner must be on the alert to detect new matter. 35 U.S.C. 132 should be employed as a basis for objection to amendments to the abstract, specification, or drawings attempting to add new disclosure to that originally disclosed on filing.

If subject matter capable of illustration is originally claimed and it is not shown in the drawing, the claim is not rejected but applicant is required to add it to the drawing. See MPEP § 608.01(I).

If new matter is added to the specification, it should be objected to by using Form Paragraph 7.28.

¶ 7.28 *Objection to New Matter Added To Specification*

The amendment filed [1] is objected to under 35 U.S.C. 132 because it introduces new matter into the disclosure. 35 U.S.C. 132 states that no amendment shall introduce new matter into the disclosure of the invention. The added material which is not supported by the original disclosure is as follows: [2].

Applicant is required to cancel the new matter in the response to this Office action.

**Examiner Note:**

This form paragraph is not to be used in reissue applications; use form paragraph 14.22.01 instead.

**706.03(s)**

1. In bracket 2, identify the new matter by page and the line numbers and/or drawing figures and provide an appropriate explanation of your position. This explanation should address any statement by applicant to support the position that the subject matter is described in the specification as filed. It should further include any unresolved questions which raise a doubt as to the possession of the claimed invention at the time of filing.

2. If new matter is added to the claims, or affects the claims, a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, using form paragraph 7.31.01 should also be made. If new matter is added only to a claim, an objection using this paragraph should not be made, but the claim should be rejected using form paragraph 7.31.01. As to any other appropriate prior art or 35 U.S.C. 112 rejection, the new matter must be considered as part of the claimed subject matter and can not be ignored.

**706.03(s) Foreign Filing Without License [R-1]**

*>35 U.S.C. 182 Abandonment of invention for unauthorized disclosure.*

The invention disclosed in an application for patent subject to an order made pursuant to section 181 of this title may be held abandoned upon its being established by the Commissioner that in violation of said order the invention has been published or disclosed or that an application for a patent therefor has been filed in a foreign country by the inventor, his successors, assigns, or legal representatives, or anyone in privity with him or them, without the consent of the Commissioner. The abandonment shall be held to have occurred as of the time of violation. The consent of the Commissioner shall not be given without the concurrence of the heads of the departments and the chief officers of the agencies who caused the order to be issued. A holding of abandonment shall constitute forfeiture by the applicant, his successors, assigns, or legal representatives, or anyone in privity with him or them, of all claims against the United States based upon such invention.

*35 U.S.C. 184 Filing of application in foreign country.*

Except when authorized by a license obtained from the Commissioner a person shall not file or cause or authorize to be filed in any foreign country prior to six months after filing in the United States an application for patent or for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model in respect of an invention made in this country. A license shall not be granted with respect to an invention subject to an order issued by the Commissioner pursuant to section 181 of this title without the concurrence of the head of the departments and the chief officers of the agencies who caused the order to be issued. The license may be granted retroactively where an application has been filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent and the application does not disclose an invention within the scope of section 181 of this title.

The term "application" when used in this chapter includes applications and any modifications, amendments, or supplements thereto, or divisions thereof.

The scope of a license shall permit subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements containing additional subject matter if the application upon which the request for the license is based is not, or was not, required to be made available for inspection under section 181 of this title and if such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require such application to be made available for inspection under such section 181. In any case in which a license is not, or was not, required in

order to file an application in any foreign country, such subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements may be made, without a license, to the application filed in the foreign country if the United States application was not required to be made available for inspection under section 181 and if such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not, or did not, change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the United States application to have been made available for inspection under such section 181.

*35 U.S.C. 185 Patent barred for filing without license.*

Notwithstanding any other provisions of law any person, and his successors, assigns, or legal representatives, shall not receive a United States patent for an invention if that person, or his successors, assigns, or legal representatives shall, without procuring the license prescribed in section 184 of this title, have made, or consented to or assisted another's making, application in a foreign country for a patent or for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model in respect of the invention. A United States patent issued to such person, his successors assigns, or legal representatives shall be invalid unless the failure to procure such license was through error and without deceptive intent, and the patent does not disclose subject matter within the scope of section 181 of this title.

If, upon examining an application, the examiner learns of the existence of a corresponding foreign application which appears to have been filed before the United States application had been on file for 6 months, and if the invention apparently was made in this country, he shall refer the application to Licensing and Review Section of Group 2200, calling attention to the foreign application. Pending investigation of the possible violation, the application may be returned to the examining group for prosecution on the merits. When it is otherwise in condition for allowance, the application will be again submitted to Licensing and Review Section of Group 2200 unless the latter has already reported that the foreign filing involves no bar to the United States application.

If it should be necessary to take action under 35 U.S.C. 185, Licensing and Review Section of Group 2200 will request transfer of the application to it. <

**706.03(u) Disclaimer [R-1]**

> Claims may be rejected on the ground that applicant has disclaimed the subject matter involved. Such disclaimer may arise, for example, from the applicant's failure:

(a) to make claims suggested for interference with another application under 37 CFR 1.605 (See MPEP § 2305.02),

(b) to copy a claim from a patent when suggested by the examiner (MPEP § 2305.02), or

(c) to respond or appeal, within the time limit fixed, to the examiner's rejection of claims copied from a patent (see MPEP § 2307.02).

The rejection on disclaimer applies to all claims not patentably distinct from the disclaimed subject matter as well as to the claims directly involved.

Rejections based on disclaimer should be made by using one of Form Paragraphs 7.48 and 7.49.

¶ 7.48 *Failure To Present Claims For Interference*

Claim [1] rejected under 35 U.S.C. [2] based upon claim [3] of patent no. [4].

Failure to present claims and/or take necessary steps for interference purposes after notification that interfering subject matter is claimed constitutes a disclaimer of the subject matter. This amounts to a concession that, as a matter of law, the patentee is the first inventor in this country, *In re Oguie*, 186 USPQ 227 (CCPA 1975).

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should be used only after applicant has been notified that interference proceedings must be instituted before the claims can be allowed and applicant has refused to copy the claims.

2. In bracket 2, insert 102(g) or 102(g)/103.

3. In bracket 4, insert the patent number, and "in view of —" if another reference is also relied upon. When the rejection is under 35 U.S.C. 103, the examiner's basis for finding obviousness should be included. Note that interferences may include obvious variants, see MPEP § 2306.

¶ 7.49 *Rejection, Disclaimer, Failure to Appeal*

Claim [1] stand finally disposed of for failure to respond or appeal from the examiner's rejection of such claims(s) presented for interference within the time limit fixed. (See 37 CFR 1.661 and 1.663.)

**706.03(v) After Interference or Public Use Proceeding [R-2]**

For rejections following an interference, see MPEP § 2363.03.

The outcome of public use proceedings may also be the basis of a rejection. (See 37 CFR 1.292) (Note: *In re Kaslow*, 217 USPQ 1089, Fed. Cir. 1983).

Upon termination of a public use proceeding including a case also involved in >an< interference, in order for a prompt resumption of the interference proceedings, a notice should be sent to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences notifying them of the disposition of the public use proceeding.

**706.03(w) Res Judicata [R-2]**

*Res Judicata* may constitute a proper ground for rejection. However, as noted below, the Court of Customs and

Patent Appeals has materially restricted the use of *res judicata* rejections. It should be applied only when the earlier decision was a decision of the Board of Appeals or any one of the reviewing courts and when there is no opportunity for further court review of the earlier decision.

The timely filing of a second application copending with an earlier application does not preclude the use of *res judicata* as a ground of rejection for the second application claims.

When making a rejection on *res judicata*, action should ordinarily be made also on the basis of prior art, especially in continuing applications. In most situations the same prior art which was relied upon in the earlier decision would again be applicable.

In the following cases a rejection of a claim on the ground of *res judicata* was sustained where it was based on a prior adjudication, against the inventor on the same claim, a patentably nondistinct claim, or a claim involving the same issue.

>*In re Freeman*, 30 F.3d 1459, 31 USPQ 2d 1444 (Fed. Cir. 1994).<

*Edgerton v. Kingland*, 75 USPQ 307 (D.C. Cir., 1947).

*In re Szwarc*, 138 USPQ 208, 50 CCPA 1571 (1963).

*In re Katz*, 167 USPQ 487, 58 CCPA 713 (1970), (prior decision by District Court).

In the following cases for various reasons, *res judicata* rejections were reversed.

*In re Fried*, 136 USPQ 429, 50 CCPA 954 (1963) (differences in claims).

*In re Szwarc*, 138 USPQ 208, 50 CCPA 1571 (1963) (differences in claim).

*In re Hellbaum*, 152 USPQ 571, 54 CCPA 1051 (1967) (differences in claims).

*In re Herr*, 153 USPQ 548, 54 CCPA 1315 (1967) (same claims, new evidence, prior decision by CCPA).

*In re Kaghan*, 156 USPQ 130, 55 CCPA 844 (1967) (prior decision by Board of Appeals, final rejection on prior art withdrawn by examiner "to simplify the issue," differences in claims; holding of waiver based on language in MPEP at the time).

*In re Craig*, 162 USPQ 157, 56 CCPA 1438 (1969) (Board of Appeals held second set of claims patentable over prior art).

*In re Fisher*, 166 USPQ 18, 57 CCPA 1099 (1970) (difference in claims).

**706.03(x)**

*In re Russell*, 169 USPQ 426, 58 CCPA 1081 (1971) (new evidence, rejection on prior art reversed by court).

*In re Ackermann*, 170 USPQ 340, 58 CCPA 1405 (1971) (prior decision by Board of Appeals, new evidence, rejection on prior art reversed by court).

*Plastic Contact Lens Co. v. Gottschalk*, 179 USPQ 262 (D.C. Cir., 1973) (follows *In re Kaghan*).

**706.03(x) Reissue [R-1]**

>The examination of reissue applications is covered in MPEP Chapter 1400.

35 U.S.C. 251 forbids the granting of a reissue "enlarging the scope of the claims of the original patent" unless the reissue is applied for within 2 years from the grant of the original patent. This is an absolute bar and cannot be excused. This prohibition has been interpreted to apply to any claim which is broader in any respect than the claims of the original patent. Such claims may be rejected as being barred by 35 U.S.C. 251. However, when the reissue is applied for within 2 years, the examiner does not go into the question of undue delay.

The same section permits the filing of a reissue application by the assignee of the entire interest only in cases where it does not "enlarge the scope of the claims of the original patent." Such claims which do enlarge the scope may also be rejected as barred by the statute. In *In re Bennett*, 226 USPQ 413 (Fed. Cir. 1985), however, the court permitted the erroneous filing by the assignee in such a case to be corrected.

A defective reissue oath affords a ground for rejecting all the claims in the reissue application. See MPEP § 1444.

Note that a reissue application is "special" and remains so even if applicant does not make a prompt response. <

**706.04 Rejection of Previously Allowed Claims [R-1]**

>A claim noted as allowable shall thereafter be rejected only after the proposed rejection has been submitted to the primary examiner for consideration of all the facts and approval of the proposed action.

Great care should be exercised in authorizing such a rejection. See *Ex parte Grier*, 1923 C.D. 27; 309 O.G. 223; *Ex parte Hay*, 1909 C.D. 18; 139 O.G. 197.

**PREVIOUS ACTION BY DIFFERENT EXAMINER**

Full faith and credit should be given to the search and action of a previous examiner unless there is a clear error in the previous action or knowledge of other prior art. In general, an examiner should not take an entirely new approach or attempt to reorient the point of view of a previous examiner, or make a new search in the mere hope of finding something.

Because it is unusual to reject a previously allowed claim, the examiner should point out in his or her letter that the claim now being rejected was previously allowed by using Form Paragraph 7.50.

¶ 7.50 *Claims Allowed, Now Rejected, New Art*

The indicated allowability of claim [1] is withdrawn in view of the newly discovered prior art to [2]. The delay in citation of this art is regretted. Rejections based on the newly discovered prior art follow.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the name(s) of the newly discovered prior art.
2. Any action including this form paragraph requires the signature of a primary examiner. MPEP § 1004. <

**706.05 Rejection After Allowance of Application [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 1308.01 for a rejection based on a reference. <

**706.06 Rejection of Claims Copied From Patent [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 2307.02. <

**706.07 Final Rejection [R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.113. Final rejection or action.*

(a) On the second or any subsequent examination or consideration the rejection or other action may be made final, whereupon applicant's or patent owner's response is limited to appeal in the case of rejection of any claim (§ 1.191) or to amendment as specified in § 1.116. Petition may be taken to the Commissioner in the case of objections or requirements not involved in the rejection of any claim (§ 1.181). Response to a final rejection or action must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each rejected claim. If any claim stands allowed, the response to a final rejection or action must comply with any \*>requirements< or objection as to form.

(b) In making such final rejection, the examiner shall repeat or state all grounds of rejection then considered applicable to the claims in the case, clearly stating the reasons therefor.

Before final rejection is in order a clear issue should be developed between the examiner and applicant. To bring the prosecution to as speedy conclusion as possible

and at the same time to deal justly by both the applicant and the public, the invention as disclosed and claimed should be thoroughly searched in the first action and the references fully applied; and in response to this action the applicant should amend with a view to avoiding all the grounds of rejection and objection. Switching from one subject matter to another in the claims presented by applicant in successive amendments, or from one set of references to another by the examiner in rejecting in successive actions claims of substantially the same subject matter, will alike tend to defeat attaining the goal of reaching a clearly defined issue for an early termination; i.e., either an allowance of the case or a final rejection.

While the rules no longer give to an applicant the right to "amend as often as the examiner presents new references or reasons for rejection," present practice does not sanction hasty and ill-considered final rejections. The applicant who is seeking to define his or her invention in claims that will give him or her the patent protection to which he or she is justly entitled should receive the cooperation of the examiner to that end, and not be prematurely cut off in the prosecution of his or her case. But the applicant who dallies in the prosecution of his or her case, resorting to technical or other obvious subterfuges in order to keep the application pending before the primary examiner, can no longer find a refuge in the rules to ward off a final rejection.

The examiner should never lose sight of the fact that in every case the applicant is entitled to a full and fair hearing, and that a clear issue between applicant and examiner should be developed, if possible, before appeal. However, it is to the interest of the applicants as a class as well as to that of the public that prosecution of a case be confined to as few actions as is consistent with a thorough consideration of its merits.

Neither the statutes nor the Rules of Practice confer any right on an applicant to an extended prosecution; *Ex parte Hoogendam*, 1939 C.D. 3, 499 O.G.3.

#### STATEMENT OF GROUNDS

In making the final rejection, all outstanding grounds of rejection of record should be carefully reviewed, and any such grounds relied on in the final rejection should be reiterated. They must also be clearly developed to such an extent that applicant may readily judge the advisability of an appeal unless a single previous Office action contains a complete statement supporting the rejection.

However, where a single previous Office action contains a complete statement of a ground of rejection, the final rejection may refer to such a statement and also should include a rebuttal of any arguments raised in the applicant's response. If appeal is taken in such a case, the examiner's answer should contain a complete statement of the examiner's position. The final rejection letter should conclude with Form Paragraph 7.39.

#### ¶ 7.39 *Action Is Final*

THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL. Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for response to this final action is set to expire THREE MONTHS from the date of this action. In the event a first response is filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the THREE-MONTH shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of this final action.

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph should not be used in reissue litigation cases (SSP-1 month) or in reexamination proceedings (SSP-1 or 2 months).
2. 37 CFR 1.136(a) should not be available in a reissue litigation case and is not available in a reexamination proceeding.

The Office action first page form PTOL-326 should be used in all Office actions up to and including final rejections.

For amendments filed after final rejection, see MPEP § 714.12 and § 714.13.

For final rejection practice in reexamination proceedings see MPEP § 2271.

#### 706.07(a) Final Rejection, When Proper on Second Action [R-2]

Due to the change in practice as affecting final rejections, older decisions on questions of prematureness of final rejection or admission of subsequent amendments do not necessarily reflect present practice.

Under present practice, second or any subsequent actions on the merits shall be final, except where the examiner introduces a new ground of rejection not necessitated by amendment of the application by applicant, whether or not the prior art is already of record. Furthermore, a second or any subsequent action on the merits in any application or patent undergoing reexamination proceedings will not be made final if it includes a rejection, on newly cited art, of any claim not amended by

**706.07(b)**

applicant or patent owner in spite of the fact that other claims may have been amended to require newly cited art.

A second or any subsequent action on the merits in any application or patent involved in reexamination proceedings should not be made final if it includes a rejection, on prior art not of record, of any claim amended to include limitations which should *\* > reasonably <* have been expected to be claimed. See MPEP § 904 *et seq.* For example, one would reasonably expect that a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112 for the reason of incompleteness would be responded to by an amendment supplying the omitted element.

See MPEP § 809.02(a) for actions which indicate generic claims not allowable.

In the consideration of claims in an amended case where no attempt is made to point out the patentable novelty, the examiner should be on guard not to allow such claims. See MPEP § 714.04. The claims may be finally rejected if, in the opinion of the examiner, they are clearly open to rejection on grounds of record.

Form Paragraph 7.40 should be used where an action is made final including new grounds of rejection necessitated by applicant's amendment.

¶ **7.40 Action Is Final, Necessitated by Amendment**

Applicant's amendment necessitated new grounds of rejection. Accordingly, **THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL**. See MPEP 706.07(a). Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for response to this final action *\* > is <* set to expire **THREE MONTHS** from the date of this action. In the event a first response is filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the **THREE-MONTH** shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event will the statutory period for response expire later than **SIX MONTHS** from the date of this final action.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should not be used in reissue litigation cases (SSP-1 month) or in reexamination proceedings (SSP-1 or 2 months).
2. 37 CFR 1.136(a) should not be available in a reissue litigation case and is not available in a reexamination proceeding.

**706.07(b) Final Rejection, When Proper  
on First Action [R-2]**

The claims of a new application may be finally rejected in the first Office action in those situations where

(1) the new application is a continuing application of, or a substitute for, an earlier application, and (2) all claims of the new application (a) are drawn to the same invention claimed in the earlier application, and (b) would have been properly finally rejected on the grounds and art of record in the next Office action if they had been entered in the earlier application.

However, it would not be proper to make final a first Office action in a continuing or substitute application where that application contains material which was presented in the earlier application after final rejection or closing of prosecution but was denied entry for one of the following reasons:

- (1) New issues were raised that required further consideration and/or search, or
- (2) The issue of new matter was raised.

Further, it would not be proper to make final a first Office action in a continuation-in-part application where any claim includes subject matter not present in the earlier application.

A request for an interview prior to first action on a continuing or substitute application should ordinarily be granted.

A First Action Final rejection should be made by using form paragraph 7.41.

¶ **7.41 Action Is Final, First Action**

This is a [1] of applicant's earlier application no. [2]. All claims are drawn to the same invention claimed in the earlier application and could have been finally rejected on the grounds and art of record in the next Office action if they had been entered in the earlier application. Accordingly, **THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL** even though it is a first action in this case. See MPEP 706.07(b). Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for response to this final action *\* > is <* set to expire **THREE MONTHS** from the date of this action. In the event a first response is filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the **THREE-MONTH** shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event will the statutory period for response expire later than **SIX MONTHS** from the date of this final action.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert either continuation or substitute, as appropriate.
2. If an amendment was refused entry in the parent case on the grounds that it raised new issues or new matter, this paragraph cannot be used. See MPEP § 706.07(b).
3. This paragraph should not be used in reissue litigation cases (SSP-1 month) or in reexamination proceedings (SSP-1 or 2 months).

4. 37 CFR 1.136(a) should not be available in a reissue litigation case and is not available in a reexamination proceeding.

### 706.07(c) Final Rejection, Premature [R-1]

>Any question as to prematurity of a final rejection should be raised, if at all, while the case is still pending before the primary examiner. This is purely a question of practice, wholly distinct from the tenability of the rejection. It may therefore not be advanced as a ground for appeal, or made the basis of complaint before the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. It is reviewable by petition under 37 CFR 1.181.<

### 706.07(d) Final Rejection, Withdrawal of, Premature [R-1]

>If, on request by applicant for reconsideration, the primary examiner finds the final rejection to have been premature, he or she should withdraw the finality of the rejection.

Form Paragraph 7.42 should be used when withdrawing a Final Rejection.

#### ¶ 7.42 *Withdrawal of Final Rejection*

Applicant's request for reconsideration of the finality of the rejection of the last Office action is persuasive and, therefore, the finality of that action is withdrawn.<

### 706.07(e) Withdrawal of Final Rejection, General [R-1]

>See MPEP § 714.12 and § 714.13, Amendments after final rejection.

Once a final rejection that is not premature has been entered in a case, it should not be withdrawn at the applicant's or patent owner's request except on a showing under 37 CFR 1.116(b). Further amendment or argument will be considered in certain instances. An amendment that will place the case either in condition for allowance or in better form for appeal may be admitted. Also, amendments complying with objections or requirements as to form are to be permitted after final action in accordance with 37 CFR 1.116(a).

The examiner may withdraw the rejection of finally rejected claims. If new facts or reasons are presented such as to convince the examiner that the previously rejected claims are in fact allowable or patentable in the case of reexamination, then the final rejection should be

withdrawn. Occasionally, the finality of a rejection may be withdrawn in order to apply a new ground of rejection.

Although it is permissible to withdraw a final rejection for the purpose of entering a new ground of rejection, this practice is to be limited to situations where a new reference either fully meets at least one claim or meets it except for differences which are shown to be completely obvious. Normally, the previous rejection should be withdrawn with respect to the claim or claims involved.

The practice should not be used for application of subsidiary references, or of cumulative references, or of references which are merely considered to be better than those of record.

When a final rejection is withdrawn, all amendments filed after the final rejection are ordinarily entered.

New grounds of rejection made in an Office action reopening prosecution after the filing of an appeal brief require the approval of the supervisory primary examiner. See MPEP § 1002.02(d).<

### 706.07(f) Time for Response to Final Rejection [R-2]

\*\*

(1) All final rejections setting a three (3) month shortened statutory period (SSP) for response should contain one of the Form Paragraphs (7.39; 7.40; 7.41) advising applicant that if the response is filed within two (2) months of the date of the final Office action, the shortened statutory period will expire at three (3) months from the date of the final rejection or on the date the advisory action is mailed, whichever is later. Thus, a variable response period will be established. In no event can the statutory period for response expire later than 6 months from the date of the final rejection.

(2) If the paragraph setting a variable response period is inadvertently not included in the final Office action, the SSP for response will end 3 months from the date of the final Office action and cannot be extended other than by making a petition and paying a fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a). However, if an advisory action (including an examiner's amendment) is mailed in such a case where the response to the final action has been filed within 2 months, the examiner should vacate the original SSP and reset the period for response to

**706.07(f)**

correspond with the Office policy set forth at 1027 OG 71. See paragraph (6) below.

(3) This procedure of setting a variable response period in the final rejection dependent on when applicant files a first response to a final office action does not apply to situations where an SSP less than 3 months is set — e.g. reissue litigation cases (1 month SSP) or any reexamination case.

*Advisory Actions*

(4) Where the final Office action sets a variable response period as set forth in paragraph 1 above, AND applicant files a complete first response to the final Office action within 2 months of the date of the final Office action, the examiner must determine if the

(a) Response puts the application in condition for allowance — then the application should be processed as an allowance and no extension fees are due.

(b) Response puts the application in condition for allowance except for matters of form which the examiner can change without authorization from applicant, MPEP § 1302.04 — then the application should be amended as required and processed as an allowance and no extension fees are due.

(c) Response does not put the application in condition for allowance — then the advisory action should inform applicant that the SSP for response expires 3 months from the date of the final rejection or as of the mailing date of the advisory action, whichever is later>,< by checking the appropriate box at the top portion of the Advisory Action form, PTOL-303>.<

If PTOL-303 is not used, then use Form Paragraph 7.67.1 on all advisory actions where a first complete response has been filed within 2 months of the date of the final Office action.

(5) Where the final Office action sets a variable response period as set forth in paragraph 1 above, and applicant does NOT file a complete first response to the final Office action within 2 months, examiners should use the content of Form Paragraph 7.67.

(6) Where the final Office action does not set a variable response period as set forth in paragraph 1 above, AND applicant does file a complete first response to the final Office action within 2 months, and if an advisory action (which may include an examiner's amendment) is necessary and cannot be mailed within 3 months of the final Office action, the examiner should vacate the original SSP and reset the response period to

expire on the mailing date of the advisory action by using form paragraph 7.67.2. In no case can the statutory period for response expire later than 6 months from the date of the final Office action. Note that Form Paragraph 7.67.2 can be used with the advisory action (preferable) or after the advisory action is mailed to correct the error of not setting a variable response period.

(7) When an advisory action properly contains either Form Paragraph 7.67.1 or 7.67.2, the time for applicant to take further action (including the calculation of extension fees under 37 CFR 1.136(a)>)< begins to run 3 months from the date of the final rejection, or from the date of the advisory action, whichever is later. Extension fees cannot be prorated for portions of a month. In no event can the statutory period for response expire later than 6 months from the date of the final rejection.

*Examiner's Amendments*

(8) Where a complete first response to a final Office action has been filed within 2 months of the final Office action, an examiner's amendment to put the application in condition for allowance may be made without the payment of extension fees if the examiner's amendment is a part of the first \* action >after said first response<, because the examiner's amendment will either set (7.67.1) or reset (7.67.2) the period for response to expire on the date the examiner's amendment is mailed if it is mailed more than 3 months from the date of the final Office action.

(9) Where a complete first response to a final Office action has not been filed within 2 months of the final Office action, applicant's authorization to make an amendment to place the application in condition for allowance must be made either within the 3 month shortened statutory period or within an extended period for response that has been petitioned and paid for by applicant pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a).

(10) An extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) requires a petition for an extension and the appropriate fee provided for in 37 CFR 1.17. Where an extension of time is necessary to place an application in condition for allowance (e.g., when an examiner's amendment is necessary after the shortened statutory period for response has expired), applicant may file the required petition and fee or give authorization to the examiner to make the petition of record and charge a specified fee to a deposit account. When authorization to make a petition for an extension of time of record is given to the

examiner, the authorization must be made of record in the application file by the examiner by way of an Inter-view \*>Summary< form dated before the extended period expires. The authorization should also be made of record in an examiner's amendment by indicating the name of the person making the authorization, the deposit account number to be charged, the length of the extension requested and the amount of the fee to be charged to the deposit account. \*\*>Form Paragraph 13.02.02 should be used.

¶ 13.02.02 *Extension of Time and Examiner's Amendment Authorized by Telephone*

An extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) is required in order to make an examiner's amendment which places this application in condition for allowance. During a telephone conversation conducted on [1], [2] requested an extension of time for [3] MONTH(S) and authorized the Commissioner to charge Deposit Account No. [4] the required fee of \$[5] for this extension and authorized the following examiner's amendment. Should the changes and/or additions be unacceptable to applicant, an amendment may be filed as provided by 37 CFR 1.312. To ensure consideration of such an amendment, it MUST be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee.

**Examiner Note:**

1. An interview summary form dated before the extended period expires is also required.
2. See MPEP 706.07(f), item 10 which explains when an extension of time is needed in order to make amendments to place the application in condition for allowance.<

*Practice After Final*

(11) Responses after final should be processed and considered promptly by all Office personnel.

(12) Responses after final should not be considered by the examiner unless they are filed within the SSP or are accompanied by a petition for an extension of time and the appropriate fee (37 CFR 1.17 and 1.136(a)). >See also MPEP § 710.02(e).< This requirement also applies to supplemental responses filed after the first response.

(13) Interviews may be conducted after the expiration of the shortened statutory period for response to a final office action but within the 6-month statutory period for response *without* the payment of an extension fee.

(14) Formal matters which are identified for the first time after a response is made to a final Office action and which require action by applicant to correct may be required in an *Ex parte Quayle* action if the application is otherwise in condition for allowance. No extension fees would be required since the response puts the application in condition for allowance except for the correction

of formal matters — the correction of which had not yet been required by the examiner.

(15) If prosecution is to be reopened after a final Office action has been responded to, the finality of the previous Office action should be withdrawn to avoid the issue of abandonment and the payment of extension fees. For example, if a new reference comes to the attention of the examiner which renders unpatentable a claim indicated to be allowable, the Office action should begin with a statement to the effect: The finality of the Office action mailed is hereby withdrawn in view of the new ground of rejection set forth below. Form Paragraph 7.42 could be used in addition to this statement.

¶ 7.67.01 *Advisory After Final, Heading, 1st Response Filed Within 2 Months*

The shortened statutory period for response expires THREE MONTHS from the date of the final rejection or as of the mailing date of this Advisory Action, whichever is later. In no event however, will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of the final rejection. Any extension of time must be obtained by filing a petition under 37 CFR 1.136(a) accompanied by the proposed response and the appropriate fee. The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for the purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee.

Any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.17 will be calculated from the date that the shortened statutory period for response expires as set forth above.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should be used in all advisory actions if:
  - a. it was the *first* response to the final rejection, and
  - b. it was filed within 2 months of the date of the final rejection
2. If a notice of appeal has been filed, also use paragraph 7.68.
3. DO NOT USE THIS FORM PARAGRAPH FOR REEXAMINATION PROCEEDINGS.
4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 IF transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable.

¶ 7.67.02 *Advisory After Final, Heading, No Variable SSP Set in Final*

Since the first response to the final Office action \*\*>was< filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of that action and the advisory action was not mailed within THREE MONTHS of that date, the THREE MONTH shortened statutory period for response set in the final Office action is hereby vacated and reset to expire as of the mailing date of the advisory action. See Notice entitled "Procedure for Handling Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.116", published in the *Official Gazette* at 1027 OG 71, February 8, 1983. In no event, however, will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of the final Office action.

Any extension fee required pursuant to 37 CFR 1.17 will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should be used in all advisory actions where:

**706.07(g)**

- a. the response is a first response to the final action;
  - b. the response was filed within two months of the mailing date of the final; *and*
  - c. the final action failed to inform applicant of a variable SSP beyond the normal three month period, as is set forth in form paragraph 7.39-7.41.
2. If the final action set a variable SSP, do not use this paragraph. Use paragraph 7.67.01 instead.
3. If a notice of appeal has been filed, also use paragraph 7.68.
- >4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 if transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable.<

Under the changed procedure, if an applicant initially responds within 2 months from the date of mailing of any final rejection setting a 3-month shortened statutory period for response and the Office does not mail an advisory action until after the end of the 3-month shortened statutory period, the period for response for purposes of determining the amount of any extension fee will be the date on which the Office mails the advisory action advising applicant of the status of the application, but in no event can the period extend beyond 6 months from the date of the final rejection. This procedure will apply only to a first response to a final rejection and has been implemented by including the following language in each final rejection mailed after February 27, 1983:

**“A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE TO THIS FINAL ACTION IS SET TO EXPIRE THREE MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS ACTION. IN THE EVENT A FIRST RESPONSE IS FILED WITHIN TWO MONTHS OF THE MAILING DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION AND THE ADVISORY ACTION IS NOT MAILED UNTIL AFTER THE END OF THE THREE-MONTH SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD, THEN THE SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD WILL EXPIRE ON THE DATE THE ADVISORY ACTION IS MAILED, AND ANY EXTENSION FEE PURSUANT TO 37 CFR 1.136(a) WILL BE CALCULATED FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THE ADVISORY ACTION. IN NO EVENT WILL THE STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE EXPIRE LATER THAN SIX MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION.”**

For example, if applicant initially responds within 2 months from the date of mailing of a final rejection and the examiner mails an advisory action before the end of 3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection, the shortened statutory period will expire at the end of 3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection. In such a case, any extension fee would then be calcu-

lated from the end of the 3-month period. If the examiner, however, does not mail an advisory action until after the end of 3 months, the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the examiner mails the advisory action and any extension fee may be calculated from that date.

**706.07(g) Transitional After-Final Practice  
[R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.*

(a) An applicant in an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in such application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits after final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the first submission and the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(r). If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits after the subsequent final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the second submission and a second fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the subsequent final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the second fee set forth in § 1.17(r). Any submission filed after a final rejection made in an application subsequent to the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated as set forth in § 1.116. A submission as used in this paragraph includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings and a new substantive argument or new evidence in support of patentability.

\*\*\*\*\*

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be applicable to any application filed after June 8, 1995.

In order to facilitate the completion of prosecution of applications pending in the PTO as of June 8, 1995 and to ease the transition between a 17-year patent term and a 20-year patent term, Public Law 103-465 provided for the further limited reexamination of an application pending for 2 years or longer as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in the application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c). The further limited reexamination permits applicants to present for consideration, as a matter of right upon payment of a fee, a submission after a final rejection has been issued on an application. An applicant will be able to take advantage of this provision on two

## EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

**706.07(g)**

separate occasions provided the submission and fee are presented prior to the filing of the Appeal Brief and prior to abandonment of the application. This will have the effect of enabling an applicant to essentially reopen prosecution of the pending application on two separate occasions by paying a fee for each occasion, and avoid the impact of refiling the application to obtain consider-

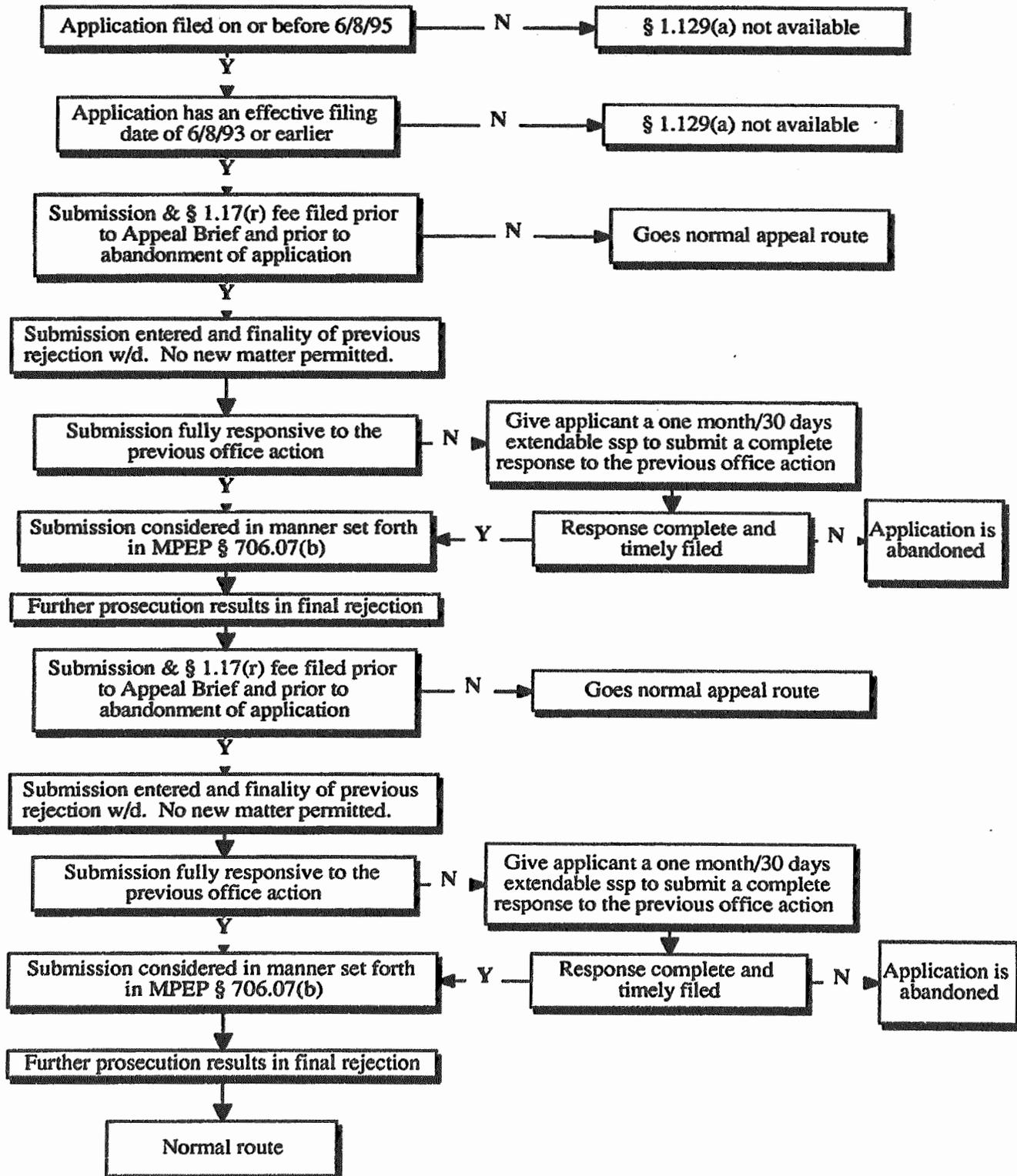
ation of additional claims and/or information relative to the claimed subject matter. The transitional after-final practice is only available to applications filed on or before June 8, 1995 and it is not available for reissue or design applications or reexamination proceedings.

The following flowchart illustrates the transitional after-final procedures set forth in 37 CFR 1.129(a).

706.07(g)

**Transitional After-Final Provision - 37 CFR 1.129(a)**

Starting June 8, 1995



Effective June 8, 1995, in any pending application having an actual or effective filing date of June 8, 1993 or earlier, applicant is entitled, under 37 CFR 1.129(a), to have a first submission after final rejection entered and considered on the merits, if the submission and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an Appeal Brief under 37 CFR 1.192 and prior to abandonment. For an application entering national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 or an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) claiming benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of a PCT application designating the U.S., the PCT international filing date will be used to determine whether the application has been pending for at least 2 years as of June 8, 1995.

>Form paragraph 7.41.01 may be used to notify applicant that the application qualifies under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

¶ 7.41.01 *Transitional After Final Practice, First Submission, (37 CFR 1.129(a))*

This application is subject to the provisions of Public Law 103-465, effective June 8, 1995. Accordingly, since this application has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference to an earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c), applicant, under 37 CFR 1.129(a), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits if, prior to abandonment, the submission and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief under 37 CFR 1.192. Upon the timely filing of a first submission and the appropriate fee of \$[1] for a [2] entity under 37 CFR 1.17(r), the finality of the previous Office action will be withdrawn. If a Notice of Appeal and the appeal fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e) were filed prior to or with the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) by applicant will be construed as a request to dismiss the appeal and to continue prosecution under 37 CFR 1.129(a). In view of 35 U.S.C. 132, no amendment considered as a result of payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) may introduce new matter into the disclosure of the application.

If applicant has filed multiple proposed amendments which, when entered, would conflict with one another, specific instructions for entry or non-entry of each such amendment should be provided upon payment of any fee under 37 CFR 1.17(r).

**Examiner Note:**

1. This form paragraph may follow any of form paragraphs 7.39-7.41, 7.67-7.67.02, 7.72-7.78 or 7.80 in any application filed prior to June 9, 1995, which has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) to a previously filed application and no previous fee has been paid under 37 CFR 1.17(r).

2. This form paragraph should NOT be used in a design or reissue application, or in a reexamination proceeding.

3. In bracket 1, insert the current fee for a large or small entity, as appropriate.

4. In bracket 2, insert ---small--- or ---large---, depending on the current status of the application.<

The submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a) may comprise, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings, a new substantive argument and/or new evidence. No amendment considered as a result of payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) may introduce new matter into the disclosure of the application. 35 U.S.C. 132. In view of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), any information disclosure statement previously refused consideration in the application because of applicant's failure to comply with 37 CFR 1.97(c) or (d) will be treated as though it has been filed within one of the time periods set forth in 37 CFR 1.97(b) and will be considered without the petition and petition fee required in 37 CFR 1.97(d), if it complies with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.98.

If the application qualifies under 37 CFR 1.129(a), that is, it was filed on or before June 8, 1995 and the application has an effective U.S. filing date of June 8, 1993 or earlier, the examiner must check to see if the submission and 37 CFR 1.17(r) fee were filed prior to the filing of the Appeal Brief and prior to abandonment of the application. If an amendment was timely filed in response to the final rejection but the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) did not accompany the amendment, examiners will continue to consider these amendments in an expedited manner as set forth in MPEP § 714.13 and issue an advisory action notifying applicant whether the amendment has been entered. If the examiner indicated in an advisory action that the amendment has not been entered, applicant may then pay the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) and any necessary fee to avoid abandonment of the application and obtain entry and consideration of the amendment as a submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a). If the submission and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) were timely filed in response to the final rejection and no advisory action has been issued prior to the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), no advisory action will be necessary. The examiner will notify applicant that the finality of the previous office action has been withdrawn pursuant to 37 CFR 1.129(a). It is noted that if the submission is accompanied by a "conditional" payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), i.e., an authorization to charge the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) to a deposit

**706.07(g)**

account in the event that the submission would not otherwise be entered, the PTO will treat the conditional payment as an unconditional payment of the 37 CFR 1.17(r) fee.

The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r). Upon the timely payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), all previously unentered submissions, submissions filed with the 37 CFR 1.17(r) fee, and any submissions filed prior to the mailing of the next Office action will be entered. Any conflicting amendments should be clarified for entry by the applicant upon payment of the 37 CFR 1.17(r) fee. Absent specific instructions for entry, all submissions filed as of the date of the withdrawal of the finality of the previous final action will be entered in the order in which they were filed. Form paragraph 7.42.01 should be used to notify applicant that the finality of the previous Office action has been withdrawn.

¶ 7.42.01 *Withdrawal of Finality of Last Office Action Transitional Application Under 37 CFR 1.129(a)*

Since this application is eligible for the transitional procedure of 37 CFR 1.129(a) and \* the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) has been timely paid, the finality of the previous Office action has been withdrawn pursuant to 37 CFR 1.129(a). Applicant's [1] submission filed on [2] has been entered.

**Examiner Note:**

Insert "first" or "second" in bracket 1.

If a Notice of Appeal and the appeal fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e) were filed prior to or with the payment of the fee set forth 37 CFR 1.17(r), the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) by applicant is construed as a request to dismiss the appeal and to continue prosecution under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

Upon the timely payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), if the examiner determines that the submission is not fully responsive to the previous Office action, e.g., if the submission only includes an information disclosure statement, applicant will be given a new shortened statutory period of 1 month or 30 days, whichever is longer, to submit a complete response. Form paragraph 7.42.02 should be used.

¶ 7.42.02 *Non>-<responsive Submission Filed Under 37 CFR 1.129(a)*

The timely submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a) filed on [1] is non-responsive to the prior Office action because [2]. Since the

submission appears to be a *bona fide* attempt to provide a complete response to the prior Office action, applicant is given a shortened statutory period of ONE MONTH or THIRTY DAYS from the date of this letter, whichever is longer, to submit a complete response. This shortened statutory period supersedes the time period set in the prior Office action. This time period may be extended pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a). If a Notice of Appeal and the appeal fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e) were filed prior to or with the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) by applicant is construed as a request to dismiss the appeal and to continue prosecution under 37 CFR 1.129(a). The appeal stands dismissed.

**Examiner Note:**

The reasons why the examiner considers the submission to be >non-responsive< must be set forth in bracket 2.

After submission and payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), the next Office action on the merits may be made final only under the conditions for making a first action in a continuing application final set forth in MPEP § 706.07(b).

Form paragraph 7.42.03 may be used if it is appropriate to make the first action final following a submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

¶ 7.42.03 *Action Is Final, First Action Following Submission Under 37 CFR 1.129(a)*

All claims are drawn to the same invention claimed in the application prior to the entry of the submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a) and could have been finally rejected on the grounds and art of record in the next Office action if they had been entered in the application prior to entry under 37 CFR 1.129(a). Accordingly, THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL even though it is a first action after the submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a). See MPEP § 706.07(b). Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for response to this final action is set to expire THREE MONTHS from the date of this action. In the event a first response is filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the THREE-MONTH shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of this final action.

**Examiner Note:**

Also use form paragraph 7.41.02 if this is a final rejection following a first submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant would be entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits under the same conditions set forth for consideration of the first submission. Form paragraph 7.41.02 should be used.

¶ 7.41.02 *Transitional After Final Practice, Second Submission*  
(37 CFR 1.129(a))

Since the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) for a first submission subsequent to a final rejection has been previously paid, applicant, under 37 CFR 1.129(a), is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits if, prior to abandonment, the second submission and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief under 37 CFR 1.192. Upon the timely filing of a second submission and the appropriate fee of \$[1] for a [2] >entity< under 37 CFR 1.17(r), the finality of the previous Office action will be withdrawn. If a Notice of Appeal and the appeal fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e) were filed prior to the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r), the payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) by applicant will be construed as a request to dismiss the appeal and to continue prosecution under 37 CFR 1.129(a). In view of 35 U.S.C. 132, no amendment considered as a result of payment of the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) may introduce new matter into the disclosure of the application.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This form paragraph is to follow any of form paragraphs 7.39 – 7.41 in any application filed prior to June 9, 1995, which has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) to a previously filed application and a first submission fee has been previously paid under 37 CFR 1.17(r).
2. This form paragraph should NOT be used in a design or reissue application or in a reexamination proceeding.
3. In bracket 1, insert the current fee for a large or small entity, as appropriate.
4. In bracket 2, insert “small” or “large,” depending on the current status of the application.
5. If the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) has been twice paid, the provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are no longer available.

Any submission filed after a final rejection made in the application subsequent to the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated in accordance with the current after-final practice set forth in 37 CFR 1.116.

## 707 Examiner's Letter or Action [R-2]

*37 CFR 1.104. Nature of examination; examiner's action*

(a) On taking up an application for examination or a patent in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner shall make a thorough study thereof and shall make a thorough investigation of the available prior art relating to the subject matter of the claimed invention. The examination shall be complete with respect both to compliance of the application or patent under reexamination with the applicable statutes and rules and to the patentability of the invention as claimed, as well as with respect to matters of form, unless otherwise indicated.

(b) The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, both the patent owner and the requester, will be notified of the examiner's action. The reasons for any adverse action or any objection or requirement will be stated and such information or references will be given as may be useful in aiding the applicant or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner, to judge the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

(c) An international-type search will be made in all national applications filed on and after June 1, 1978.

(d) Any national application may also have an international-type search report prepared thereon at the time of the national examination on the merits, upon specific written request therefor and payment of the international-type search report fee. See § 1.21 (e) for amount of fee for preparation of international-type search report.

NOTE. — The Patent and Trademark Office does not require that a formal report of an international-type search be prepared in order to obtain a search fee refund in a later filed international application.

(e) Co-pending applications will be considered by the examiner to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person if: (1) the application files refer to assignments recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with Part 3 of this chapter which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization; or (2) copies of unrecorded assignments which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization are filed in each of the applications; or (3) an affidavit or declaration by the common owner is filed which states that there is common ownership and states facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership; or (4) other evidence is submitted which establishes common ownership of the applications. In circumstances where the common owner is a corporation or other organization, an affidavit or declaration may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization.

For Office actions in reexamination proceedings, see MPEP § 2260.

Under the current first action procedure, the examiner signifies on the action form PTOL-326 certain information including the period set for response, any attachments, and a “summary of action,” the position taken on all claims.

Current procedure also allows the examiner, in the exercise of his professional judgment to indicate that a discussion with applicant's or patent owner's representative may result in agreements whereby the application or patent under reexamination may be placed in condition for allowance and that the examiner will telephone the representative within about 2 weeks. Under this practice the applicant's or patent owner's representative can be adequately prepared to conduct such a discussion. Any resulting amendment may be made either by the applicant's or patent owner's attorney or agent or by the examiner in an examiner's amendment. It should be recognized that when extensive amendments are necessary it would be preferable if they were filed by the attorney or agent of record, thereby reducing the professional and clerical workload in the Office and also providing the file wrapper with a better record, including applicant's arguments for allowability as required by 37 CFR 1.111.

The list of references cited appears on a separate form, Notice of References Cited, PTO-892 (copy in MPEP § 707.05) attached to applicant's copies of the action. Where applicable, Notice of Informal Patent Drawings, PTO-948 and Notice of Informal Patent Application, PTO-152 are attached to the first action.

The attachments have the same paper number and are to be considered as part of the Office action.

Replies to Office actions should include the 4-digit art unit number and the examiner's name to expedite handling within the Office.

In accordance with the Patent Law, "Whenever, on examination, any claim for a patent is rejected >, < or any objection . . . made", notification of the reasons for rejection and/or objection together with such information and references as may be useful in judging the propriety of continuing the prosecution (35 U.S.C. 132) should be given.

When considered necessary for adequate information, the particular figure(s) of the drawing(s), and/or page(s) or paragraph(s) of the reference(s), and/or any relevant comments briefly stated should be included. For rejections under 35 U.S.C. 103, the way in which a reference is modified or plural references are combined should be set out.

In exceptional cases, as to satisfy the more stringent requirements under 37 CFR 1.106(b), and in pro se cases where the inventor is unfamiliar with the patent law and practice, a more complete explanation may be needed.

Objections to the disclosure, explanation of references cited but not applied, indication of allowable subject matter, requirements (including requirements for restriction if applicable) and any other pertinent comments may be included. Summary sheet PTOL-326, which serves as the first page of the Office action, is to be used with all first actions and will identify any allowed claims.

¶ 7.100 *Name and Number of Examiner To Be Contacted*

An inquiry concerning this communication should be directed to [1] at telephone number (703) [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph or paragraph 7.101 should be used at the conclusion of all actions.
2. In bracket 1, insert the name of the examiner designated to be contacted first regarding inquiries about the Office action. This could be either the non-signatory examiner preparing the action or the signatory examiner.

3. In bracket 2, insert the individual phone number of the examiner.

¶ 7.101 *Telephone Inquiry Contacts — Non 5/4/9 Schedule*

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to [1] whose telephone number is (703) [2]. The examiner can normally be reached on [3] from [4] to [5].

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, [6], can be reached on (703) [7]. The fax phone number for this group is (703) [8].

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the group receptionist whose telephone number is (703) [9].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert your name.
2. In bracket 2, insert your individual phone number.
3. In bracket 3, insert the days that you work every week, e.g., "Monday-Thursday" for an examiner off every Friday.
4. In brackets 4 and 5, insert your normal duty hours. e.g., "6:30 AM - 5:00 PM." Do not insert the core hours\*\*.
5. In bracket 6, insert your SPE's name.
6. In bracket 7, insert your SPE's phone number.
7. In bracket 8, insert the group fax number.
8. In bracket 9, insert the telephone number for your group receptionist.

¶ \* > 7.102 < *Telephone Inquiry Contacts — 5/4/9 Schedule*

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to [1] whose telephone number is (703) [2]. The examiner can normally be reached on [3] from [4] to [5]. The examiner can also be reached on alternate [6].

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, [7], can be reached on (703) [8]. The fax phone number for this group is (703) [9].

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the group receptionist whose telephone number is (703) [10].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert your name.
2. In bracket 2, insert your individual phone number.
3. In bracket 3, insert the days that you work every week, e.g., "Monday-Thursday" for an examiner off on alternate Fridays.
4. In brackets 4 and 5, insert your normal duty hours. e.g., "6:30 AM - 5:00 PM." Do not insert the core hours\*\*.
5. In bracket 6, insert the day in each pay period that is your compressed day off, e.g., "Fridays" for an examiner on 5/4/9 with the first Friday off.
6. In bracket 7, insert your SPE's name.
7. In bracket 8, insert the group phone number.
8. In bracket 9, insert your group fax number.
9. In bracket 10, insert the telephone number for your group receptionist.

¶ \* > 7.103 < *Statute Cited in Prior Action*

The text of those sections of Title 35, U.S. Code not included in this action can be found in a prior Office action.

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

707



**UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**  
**Patent and Trademark Office**  
 Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS  
 Washington, DC 20231

|               |             |                       |                     |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| SERIAL NUMBER | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED APPLICANT | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. |
| 07/000,000    | 01/01/87    | John E. Doe           | DOC-2345            |

Davis & Brown  
 Suite 263  
 324 Elm Street  
 Boston, Mass. 11111

| EXAMINER |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Thesz    |              |
| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
| 233      | 2            |

DATE MAILED:

This is a communication from the examiner in charge of your application  
 COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS

- This application has been examined       Responsive to communication filed on \_\_\_\_\_       This action is made final.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire 3 month(s), \_\_\_\_\_ days from the date of this letter.  
 Failure to respond within the period for response will cause the application to become abandoned. 35 U.S.C. 133

**Part I THE FOLLOWING ATTACHMENT(S) ARE PART OF THIS ACTION:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Notice of References Cited by Examiner, PTO-892. | 2. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice re Patent Drawing, PTO-948.                  |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Art Cited by Applicant, PTO-1449                  | 4. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of informal Patent Application, Form PTO-152 |
| 5. <input type="checkbox"/> Information on How to Effect Drawing Changes, PTO-1474      | 6. <input type="checkbox"/> _____   |

**Part II SUMMARY OF ACTION**

1.  Claims 1-11 are pending in the application.  
 Of the above, claims \_\_\_\_\_ are withdrawn from consideration.
2.  Claims \_\_\_\_\_ have been cancelled.
3.  Claims \_\_\_\_\_ are allowed.
4.  Claims 1-8 are rejected
5.  Claims 9-11 are objected to.
6.  Claims \_\_\_\_\_ are subject to restriction or election requirement.
7.  This application has been filed with informal drawings which are acceptable for examination purposes until such time as allowable subject matter is indicated.
8.  Allowable subject matter having been indicated, formal drawings are required in response to this Office action.
9.  The corrected or substitute drawings have been received on \_\_\_\_\_ . These drawings are  acceptable;  not acceptable (see explanation).
10.  The  proposed drawing correction and/or the  proposed additional or substitute sheet(s) of drawings, filed on \_\_\_\_\_ has (have) been  approved by the examiner.  disapproved by the examiner (see explanation).
11.  The proposed drawing correction, filed 6-1-87, has been  approved.  disapproved (see explanation). However, the Patent and Trademark Office no longer makes drawing changes. It is now applicant's responsibility to ensure that the drawings are corrected. Corrections **MUST** be effected in accordance with instructions set forth on the attached letter "INFORMATION ON HOW TO EFFECT DRAWINGS CHANGES", PTO-1474.
12.  Acknowledgment is made of the claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119. The certified copy has  been received  not been received  been filed in parent application, serial no. \_\_\_\_\_; filed on \_\_\_\_\_.
13.  Since this application appears to be in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under Ex parte Quayle, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.
14.  Other

PTOL-326 (Rev. 7. 82)

EXAMINER'S ACTION

**707.01**

**707.01 Primary Examiner Indicates Action for New Assistant [R-1]**

>After the search has been completed, action is taken in the light of the references found. Where the assistant examiner has been in the Office but a short time, it is the duty of the primary examiner to go into the case thoroughly. The usual procedure is for the assistant examiner to explain the invention and discuss the references which he or she regards as most pertinent. The primary examiner may indicate the action to be taken, whether restriction or election of species is to be required, or whether the claims are to be considered on their merits. If action on the merits is to be given, the examiner may indicate how the references are to be applied in cases where the claim is to be rejected, or authorize allowance if it is not met in the references and no further field of search is known.<

**707.02(a) Cases Up for Third Action and 5-Year Cases [R-1]**

>The supervisory primary examiners should impress their assistants with the fact that the shortest path to the final disposition of an application is by finding the best references on the first search and carefully applying them.

The supervisory primary examiners are expected to personally check on the pendency of every application which is up for the third or subsequent official action with a view to finally concluding its prosecution.

Any case that has been pending five years should be carefully studied by the supervisory primary examiner and every effort made to terminate its prosecution. In order to accomplish this result, the case is to be considered "special" by the examiner.<

\*\*

**707.05 Citation of References [R-2]**

During the examination of an application or reexamination of a patent, the examiner should cite appropriate prior art which is nearest to the subject matter defined in the claims. When such prior art is cited, its pertinence should be explained.

Form Paragraph 7.96 may be used as an introductory sentence.

**¶ 7.96 Citation of Pertinent Prior Art**

The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure. [1]

**Examiner Note:**

When such prior art is cited, its pertinence should be explained in accordance with MPEP § 707.05.

Effective June 8, 1995, Public Law 103-465 amended 35 U.S.C. 154 to change the term of a patent to 20 years measured from the filing date of the earliest U.S. application for which benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) is claimed. The 20-year patent term applies to all utility and plant patents issued on applications filed on or after June 8, 1995. As a result of the 20-year patent term, it is expected, in certain circumstances, that applicants may cancel their claim to priority by amending the specification to delete any references to prior applications. Therefore, examiners should search all applications based on the actual U.S. filing date of the application rather than on the filing date of any parent U.S. application for which priority is claimed. Examiners should cite of interest all material prior art having an effective filing date after the filing date of the U.S. parent application but before the actual filing date of the application being examined.

Allowed applications should generally contain a citation of pertinent prior art for printing in the patent, even if no claim presented during the prosecution was considered unpatentable over such prior art. Only in those instances where a proper search has not revealed any prior art relevant to the claimed invention is it appropriate to send a case to issue with no art cited. In the case where no prior art is cited, the examiner must write "None" on a form PTO-892 and insert it in the file wrapper. Where references have been cited during the prosecution of parent applications and a continuing application, having no newly cited references, is ready for allowance, the cited references of the parent applications should be listed on a form PTO-892. The form should then be placed in the file of the continuing application. See MPEP § 1302.12. In a file wrapper continuing application under 37 CFR 1.62, it is not necessary to prepare a new form PTO-892 since the form from the parent application is in the same file wrapper and will be used by the printer.

In all continuation and continuation-in-part applications, the parent applications should be reviewed for pertinent prior art.

Applicants and/or applicants' attorney in PCT related national applications may wish to cite the material citations from the PCT International Search Report by an information disclosure statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 in order to ensure consideration by the examiner.

In those instances where no information disclosure statement has been filed by the applicant and where documents are cited in the International Search Report but neither a copy of the documents nor an English translation (or English family member) is provided, the examiner may exercise discretion in deciding whether to take necessary steps to obtain the copy and/or translation.

Copies of documents cited will be provided as set forth in MPEP § 707.05(a). That is, copies of documents cited by the examiner will be provided to applicant *except* where the documents

A. are cited by applicant in accordance with MPEP § 609, § 707.05(b), and § 708.02,

B. have been referred to in applicant's disclosure statement,

C. are cited and have been provided in a parent application, and

D. are U. S. Patents which are cited at allowance (MPEP § 1302.04).

**37 CFR 1.107. Citation of references.**

(a) If domestic patents are cited by the examiner, their numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees, and the classes of inventions must be stated. If foreign published applications or patents are cited, their nationality or country, numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated, and such other data must be furnished as may be necessary to enable the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, the patent owner, to identify the published applications or patents cited. In citing foreign published applications or patents, in case only a part of the document is involved, the particular pages and sheets containing the parts relied upon must be identified. If printed publications are cited, the author (if any), title, date, pages or plates, and place of publication, or place where a copy can be found, shall be given.

(b) When a rejection in an application is based on facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, the data shall be as specific as possible, and the reference must be supported, when called for by the applicant, by the affidavit of such employee, and such affidavit shall be subject to contradiction or explanation by the affidavits of the applicant and other persons.

**707.05(a) Copies of Cited References [R-1]**

>Copies of cited references (except as noted below) are automatically furnished without charge to applicant together with the Office action in which they are cited. Copies of the cited references are also placed in the ap-

plication file for use by the examiner during the prosecution.

Copies of references cited by applicant in accordance with MPEP § 609, § 707.05(b) and § 708.02 are *not* furnished to applicant with the Office action. Additionally, copies of references cited in continuation applications if they had been previously cited in the parent application are not furnished. The examiner should check the left hand column of form PTO-892 if a copy of the reference is not to be furnished to the applicant.

Copies of foreign patent documents and nonpatent literature (NPL) which are cited by the examiner at the time of allowance will be furnished to applicant with the Office action, and copies of the same will also be retained in the file. This will apply to all allowance actions, including first action allowances and *Ex Parte Quayle* actions.

In the rare instance where no art is cited in a continuation application, all the references cited during the prosecution of the parent application will be listed at allowance for printing in the patent.

To assist in providing copies of references, the examiner should:

(a) Write the citation of the references on form PTO-892, "Notice of References Cited".

(b) Place the form PTO-892 in the front of the file wrapper.

(c) Include in the application file wrapper all of the references cited by the examiner which are to be furnished to the applicant and which have been obtained from the classified search file.

(d) Make two copies of each reference which is to be supplied and which has been located in a place other than the classified search file (i.e. textbooks, bound magazines, personal search material, etc.). Using red ink identify one copy as the "File Copy" and the other copy as the "Applicant's Copy". Both copies should be placed in the application file wrapper.

(e) Turn the application in to the Docket Clerk for counting. Any application which is handed in without all of the required references will be returned to the examiner. The missing reference(s) should be obtained and the file returned to the Docket Clerk as quickly as possible.

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

### 707.05(a)

In the case of design applications, procedures are the same as set forth in MPEP § 707.05 (a)–(g) except that less than the entire disclosure of a cited U.S. utility patent may be supplied with the action by the Design Group. Copies of all sheets of drawings relied on and of the first page of the specification are furnished without charge.

Any other subject matter, including additional pages of specification relied on by the examiner will be provided without charge. Where an applicant desires a complete copy of a cited U.S. utility patent, it may be obtained through the Customer Services Division at the usual charge. <

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

707.05(a)

TO SEPARATE, HOLD TOP AND BOTTOM EDGES, SNAP APART AND DISCARD CARSON

|   |   |  |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|---|---|--|----|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|------------------------------|-----------|----------------|------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| FORM PTO-892 (REV. 3-78)  |   | U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  |    | SERIAL NO. 000,000          |   | GROUP ART UNIT 425 |   | ATTACHMENT TO PAPER NUMBER 3 |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
| NOTICE OF REFERENCES CITED  |   |  |    | APPLICANT(s) STRUCK, et al. |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
| U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS   |   |  |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   |   | DOCUMENT NO.   |    |                             |   |                    |   | DATE                         | NAME      | CLASS          | SUB-CLASS  | FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE |                            |          |
|   | A | 2  | 7  | 1                           | 7 | 8                  | 7 | 4                            | 9 - 1955  | VERAIN         | 21         | 102RX                      |                            |          |
| *   | B | 2  | 5  | 7                           | 2 | 1                  | 4 | 4                            | 10 - 1951 | HEALY          | 340        | 71X                        |                            |          |
|   | C | 2  | 1  | 3                           | 7 | 3                  | 7 | 6                            | 11 - 1938 | ALTORFER       | 21         | Dig. 2                     |                            |          |
|   | D | T  | 8  | 8                           | 1 | 0                  | 0 | 2                            | 12 - 1970 | JONES          | 96         | 1.6                        |                            |          |
|   | E | P  | P  | 2                           | 4 | 0                  | 0 | 0                            | 5 - 1964  | BOERNER        | Plant      | 20                         |                            |          |
|   | F | B  | 2  | 0                           | 7 | 2                  | 7 | 2                            | 1 - 1975  | DAVIDSON       | 75         | 1                          |                            |          |
|   | G | 1  | 6  | 7                           | 1 | 8                  | 4 | 3                            | 5 - 1928  | SCOTT          | 15         | 104.01R                    |                            |          |
|   | H | D  | 2  | 3                           | 8 | 4                  | 0 | 4                            | 1 - 1976  | OWENS          | D6         | 5                          | 11-13-72                   |          |
|   | I | D  | Re | 2                           | 4 | 8                  | 4 | 1                            | 6 - 1960  | ROCHE          | D8         | 189                        |                            |          |
|   | J | Re   | 1  | 8                           | 4 | 0                  | 6 | 4                            | 4 - 1932  | MARINSKY       | 24         | 205.16c                    |                            |          |
| *   | K | 3  | 0  | 3                           | 5 | 3                  | 1 | 9                            | 5 - 1962  | WOLFF          | 24         | 274wrx                     |                            |          |
| FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS  |   |  |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   |   | DOCUMENT NO.   |    |                             |   |                    |   | DATE                         | COUNTRY   | NAME           | CLASS      | SUB-CLASS                  | PERTINENT PP SHTS DWG SPEC |          |
|   | L | 1  | 3  | 6                           | 1 | 1                  | 3 | 1 - 1950                     | AUSTRALIA | Paper Products | 24         | 134QA                      |                            |          |
|   | M | A  | dd | 3                           | 4 | 6                  | 6 | 2                            | 11 - 1934 | FRANCE         | LORENZ     | 26                         | 15 R                       | 1 4-7    |
|   | N |  |    | 1                           | 9 | 4                  | 2 | 1                            | OF 1913   | UNITED KINGDOM | CROSSE     | 26                         | 51.6                       |          |
|   | O | 1  | 3  | 4                           | 5 | 8                  | 9 | 0                            | 7 - 1963  | GERMANY        | MUTHER     | 19                         | 6                          |          |
|   | P |  | 6  | 8                           | 3 | 1                  | 2 | 5                            | 3 - 1964  | CANADA         | FISHBOURNE | 100                        | 216                        | 1-5 1-19 |
| *   | Q |  |    | 1                           | 0 | 8                  | 5 | 3                            | 1 - 1986  | JAPAN          | MATSUSNITZ | H01M                       | 02/112                     |          |
| OTHER REFERENCES (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)   |   |  |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   | R | "Chemical Abstracts," Vol 75, No. 20, Nov. 15, 1971, p. 163, Abstract no. 120718k.                               |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   | S | Skutulav, A. I., "Surface Effects During Metal Fatigue," Copy in Group 120 Library.                              |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   | S | (5008400i) Winslow, C.E.A., Fresh Air and Ventilation, E. P. Dutton, N.Y., 1926, pp. 97-112. TN 7658 W5, 315-22. |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   | T | Ballistic Missile & Aerospace Technology, Vol. 3, Academic Press, N.Y., 1964, TL 78759, p. 199, & pp. 50-108.    |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
|   | U | Carbawax & Polyethylene Glycols, Carbide Chemical Corporation, 1946, p. 5, Copy in Group 120 Library.            |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
| EXAMINER Richard Stone  |   | DATE 4-10-86   |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |
| A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this office action. (See Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, section 707.06(a).) |   |  |    |                             |   |                    |   |                              |           |                |            |                            |                            |          |

**707.05(b)**

**707.05(b) Citation of Related Art by Applicants [R-1]**

>MPEP § 609 sets forth positive guidelines for applicants, their attorneys and agents who desire to submit prior art for consideration by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Submitted citations will not in any way diminish the obligation of examiners to conduct independent prior art searches, or relieve examiners of citing pertinent prior art of which they may be aware, whether or not such art is cited by the applicant.

Prior art submitted by applicant in the manner provided in MPEP § 609 will not be supplied with an Office action.<

**707.05(c) Order of Listing [R-1]**

>In citing references for the first time, the identifying data of the citation should be placed on form PTO-892 "Notice of References Cited", a copy of which will be attached to the Office action. No distinction is to be made between references on which a claim is rejected and those formerly referred to as "pertinent". With the exception of applicant submitted citations, MPEP § 609 and § 708.02, it is recommended that the pertinent features of references which are not used as a basis for rejection, be pointed out briefly.

See MPEP § 1302.12.<

**707.05(d) Reference Cited in Subsequent Actions [R-1]**

>Where an applicant in an amendatory paper refers to a reference which is subsequently relied upon by the examiner, such reference shall be cited by the examiner in the usual manner using a form PTO-892, "Notice of References Cited", unless applicant has listed the reference on a PTO-1449 which has been initialled by the examiner.<

**707.05(e) Data Used in Citing References [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.107 ( MPEP § 707.05 and § 901.05(a)) requires the examiner to give certain data when citing references. The patent number, patent date, name of the patentee, class and subclass and the filing date, if appropriate, must be given in the citation of U.S. patents. This information is listed on the "Notice of References

Cited" form PTO-892 (Copy at MPEP § 707.05). See MPEP § 901.04 for details concerning the various series of U.S. patents and how to cite them. Note that patents of the X-Series (dated prior to July 4, 1836) are *not* to be cited by number. Some U.S. patents issued in 1861 have two numbers thereon. The larger number should be cited.

If the patent date of a U.S. patent is after, and the effective filing date of the patent is before, the effective U.S. filing date of the application, the filing date of the patent must be set forth along with the citation of the patent. This calls attention to the fact that the particular patent relied on is a reference because of its filing date and not its patent date. Similarly, when the reference is a continuation-in-part of an earlier filed application which discloses the anticipatory matter and it is necessary to go back to the earlier filing date, the fact that the subject matter relied upon was originally disclosed on that date in the first application should be stated.

In the rare instance where no art is cited in a continuation application, all the references cited during the prosecution of the parent application will be listed at allowance for printing in the patent. See MPEP § 707.05(a).

**CROSS-REFERENCES**

Official cross-references should be marked "X".

**FOREIGN PATENTS AND PUBLISHED APPLICATIONS**

In citing foreign patents, the patent number, citation date, name of the country, name of the patentee, and U.S. class and subclass must be given. Foreign patents searched in those Examining Groups filing by International Patent Classification (IPC) will be cited using the appropriate IPC subclass/group/subgroup. On the file wrapper "Searched" box and PTO-892, the IPC subclass shall be cited in the space provided for "Class", and IPC group/subgroup shall be cited in the space provided for "Subclass".

In actions where references are furnished, and (1) less than the entire disclosure is relied upon, the sheet and page numbers specifically relied upon and the total number of sheets of drawing and pages of specification must be included (except applicant submitted citations); (2) the entire disclosure is relied on, the total number of sheets and pages are not included, and the appropriate columns on PTO-892 are left blank.

Publications such as German allowed applications and Belgian and Netherlands printed specifications should be similarly handled. If the total number of sheets and pages in any publication *to be furnished* (other than U.S. patents) exceeds 15, the authorizing signature of the supervisory primary examiner is required. Applicants who desire a copy of the complete foreign patent or of the portion not "relied on" must order it in the usual manner.

See MPEP § 901.05(a) for a chart in which foreign language terms indicative of foreign patent and publication dates to be cited are listed.

### PUBLICATIONS

See MPEP § 711.06(a) for citation of abstracts, abbreviations and defensive publications. See MPEP § 901.06(c) for citation of Alien Property Custodian publications. In citing a publication, sufficient information should be given to determine the identity and facilitate the location of the publication. For books the data required by 37 CFR 1.107 (MPEP § 707.05) with the specific pages relied on identified together with the SCIENTIFIC LIBRARY call number will suffice. The call number appears on the "spine" of the book if the book is thick enough and, in any event, on the back of the title page. Books on interlibrary loan will be marked with the call numbers of the other library, of course. **THIS NUMBER SHOULD NOT BE CITED.** The same convention should be followed in citing articles from periodicals. The call number should be cited for periodicals owned by the Scientific Library, but not for periodicals borrowed from other libraries. In citing periodicals, information sufficient to identify the article includes the author(s) and title of the article and the title, volume number issue number, date, and pages of the periodical. If the copy relied on is located only in the group making the action (there may be no call number), the additional information,

"Copy in Group — —" should be given.

Examples of nonpatent bibliographical citations:

#### 1. For books:

Winslow, C. E. A. *Fresh Air and Ventilation*. N.Y., E. P. Dutton, 1926. p. 97-112. TI17653.W5.

#### 2. For parts of books:

Smith, J. F. "Patent Searching." in: Singer, T.E.R., *Information and Communication Practice in Industry* (New York, Reinhold, 1958), pp. 157-165. T 175.S5.

#### 3. For encyclopedia articles:

Calvert, R. "Patents (Patent Law)." in: *Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology* (1952 ed.), vol. 9, pp. 868-890. Ref. TP9.E68.

#### 4. For sections of handbooks:

*Machinery's Handbook*, 16th ed. New York, International Press, 1959. pp. 1526-1527. TJ151.M3 1959.

#### 5. For periodical articles:

Noyes, W. A. *A Climate for Basic Chemical Research*. *Chemical & Engineering News*, Vol. 38, no. 42(Oct. 17, 1960), pp. 91-95. TP1.I418.

*Note:* DO NOT abbreviate titles of books or periodicals.

A citation to P.S.E.B.M. is meaningless. References are to be cited so that anyone reading a patent may identify and retrieve the publications cited. Give as much bibliographic information as possible, but at least enough to identify the publication. For books, minimal information includes the author, title and date. For periodicals, at least the title of the periodical, the volume number, date, and pages should be given. These minimal citations may be made **ONLY IF** the complete bibliographic details are unknown or unavailable.

If the original publication is located outside the Office, the examiner should immediately make or order a photocopy of at least the portion relied upon and indicate the class and subclass in which it will be filed. The Office action **MUST** designate this class and subclass. <

### 707.05(f) Effective Dates of Declassified Printed Matter [R-1]

>In using declassified material as references there are usually two pertinent dates to be considered, namely, the printing date and the publication date. The printing date in some instances will appear on the material and may be considered as that date when the material was prepared for limited distribution. The publication date is the date of release when the material was made available to the public. See *Ex parte Harris et al.*, 79 USPQ 439. If the date of release does not appear on the

**707.05(g)**

material, this date may be determined by reference to the Office of Technical Services, Department of Commerce.

In the use of any of the above noted material as an anticipatory publication, the date of release following declassification is the effective date of publication within the meaning of the statute.

For the purpose of anticipation predicated upon prior knowledge under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) the above noted declassified material may be taken as *prima facie* evidence of such prior knowledge as of its printing date even though such material was classified at that time. When so used the material does not constitute an absolute statutory bar and its printing date may be antedated by an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131.<

**707.05(g) Incorrect Citation of References  
[R-1]**

>Where an error in citation of a reference is brought to the attention of the Office by applicant, a letter correcting the error, together with a correct copy of the reference, is sent to applicant. See MPEP § 710.06. Where the error is discovered by the examiner, applicant is also notified and the period for response restarted. In either case, the examiner is directed to correct the error, in ink, in the paper in which the error appears, and place his or her initials on the margin of such paper, together with a notation of the paper number of the action in which the citation has been correctly given. See MPEP § 710.06.

Form PTOL-316 is used to correct an erroneous citation or an erroneously furnished reference. Clerical instructions are outlined in the Manual of Clerical Procedures, § 410.C (2) and (3).

Form Paragraphs 7.81-7.83 may be used to correct citations or copies of references cited.

¶ 7.81 *Correction Letter re Last Office Action*

In response to applicant's [1] regarding the last Office action, the following corrective action is taken.

The period for response of [2] MONTHS set in said office action is **RESTARTED** to begin with the date of this letter.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert -- telephone inquiry of \_\_\_\_\_ .  
-- or -- communication dated \_\_\_\_\_ .--
2. In bracket 2, insert the new period for response.
3. This paragraph must be followed by one or more of paragraphs 7.82, 7.82.01 or 7.83.
4. Before restarting the period, the SPE should be consulted.

¶ 7.82 *Correction of Reference Citation*

The reference [1] was not correctly cited in the last Office action. The corrected citation is shown on the attached PTO-892.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Every correction **MUST** be reflected on a corrected or new PTO-892.
2. This paragraph must follow paragraph 7.81.
3. If a copy of the PTO-892 is being provided without correction, use paragraph 7.83 instead of this paragraph.
4. Also use paragraph 7.82.01 if reference copies are being supplied.

¶ 7.82.01 *Copy of Reference(s) furnished*

Copies of the following references not previously supplied are enclosed:

**Examiner Note:**

1. The reference copies being supplied must be listed following this paragraph.
2. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.81 and may also be used with paragraph 7.82 or 7.83.

¶ 7.83 *Copy of Office action supplied*

[1] of the last Office action is enclosed.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, explain what is enclosed. For example:
  - a. "A corrected copy"
  - b. "A complete copy"
  - c. A specific page or pages, e.g., "Pages 3-5"
  - d. "A Notice of Reference Cited, Form PTO-892"
2. This paragraph should follow paragraph 7.81 and may follow paragraphs 7.82 and 7.82.01.

In any case otherwise ready for issue, in which the erroneous citation has not been formally corrected in an official paper, the examiner is directed to correct the citation on an examiner's amendment form PTOL-37.

If a FOREIGN patent is incorrectly cited: for example, the wrong country is indicated or the country omitted from the citation, the General Reference Branch of the Scientific Library may be helpful. The date and number of the patent are often sufficient to determine the correct country which granted the patent.

To correct a citation prior to mailing, see the Manual of Clerical Procedures, § 410.C(1).<

**707.06 Citation of Decisions, Orders  
Memorandums, and Notices [R-1]**

>In citing court decisions, the USPQ citation should be given and, when it is convenient to do so, the U.S., CCPA or Federal Reporter citation should also be provided.

The citation of manuscript decisions which are not available to the public should be avoided.

It is important to recognize that a Federal District Court decision that has been reversed on appeal cannot be cited as authority.

In citing a manuscript decision which is available to the public but which has not been published, the tribunal rendering the decision and complete data identifying the paper should be given. Thus, a decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences which has not been published but which is available to the public in the patented file should be cited, as "*Ex parte* — — , decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, Patent No. — — — , paper No. — — — , — — — pages."

Decisions found only in patented files should be cited only when there is no published decision on the same point.

When a Commissioner's order, notice or memorandum not yet incorporated into this manual is cited in any official action, the title and date of the order, notice or memorandum should be given. When appropriate other data, such as a specific issue of the *Journal of the Patent Office Society* or of the *Official Gazette* in which the same may be found, should also be given. <

### 707.07 Completeness and Clarity of Examiner's Action [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.105. *Completeness of examiner's action.*

The examiner's action will be complete as to all matters, except that in appropriate circumstances, such as misjoinder of invention, fundamental defects in the application, and the like, the action of the examiner may be limited to such matters before further action is made. However, matters of form need not be raised by the examiner until a claim is found allowable.

Form Paragraphs 7.37 and 7.38 may be used where applicant's arguments are not persuasive or moot.

#### ¶ 7.37 *Arguments Are Not Persuasive*

Applicant's arguments filed [1] have been fully considered but they are not persuasive. [2].

#### Examiner Note:

1. The examiner must address all arguments which have not already been responded to in the statement of the rejection.
2. In bracket 2, provide explanation as in non-persuasiveness.

#### ¶ 7.38 *Arguments Are Moot Because of New Ground of Rejection*

Applicant's arguments with respect to claim [1] have been considered but are moot in view of the new grounds of rejection.

#### Examiner Note:

The examiner must, however, address any arguments presented by the applicant which are still relevant to any references being applied. <

### 707.07(a) Complete Action on Formal Matters [R-1]

>Forms are placed in informal applications listing informalities noted by the Draftsman (Form PTO-948) and the Application Division (Form PTO-152). Each of these forms comprises an original for the file record and a copy to be mailed to applicant as a part of the examiner's first action. They are specifically referred to as attachments to the letter and are marked with its paper number. In every instance where these forms are to be used, they should be mailed with the examiner's *first* letter, and any additional formal requirements which the examiner desires to make should be included in the *first* letter.

When any formal requirement is made in an examiner's action, that action should, in all cases where it indicates allowable subject matter, call attention to 37 CFR 1.111(b) and state that a complete response must either comply with all formal requirements or specifically traverse each requirement not complied with.

#### ¶ 7.43.03 *Allowable Subject Matter, Formal Requirements Outstanding*

As allowable subject matter has been indicated, applicant's response must either comply with all formal requirements or specifically traverse each requirement not complied with. See 37 CFR 1.111(b) and MPEP § 707.07(a).

#### Examiner Note:

This paragraph would be appropriate when changes must be made prior to allowance. For example, when there is a requirement for drawing corrections that have to be submitted for approval or when corrections to the specification have to be made prior to allowance. <

### 707.07(b) Requiring New Oath [R-1]

>See MPEP § 602.02. <

### 707.07(c) Draftsman's Requirement [R-1]

>See MPEP § 707.07(a); also MPEP § 608.02(a), (e), and (s). <

### 707.07(d) Language To Be Used In Rejecting Claims [R-2]

Where a claim is refused for any reason relating to the merits thereof it should be "rejected" and the ground of rejection fully and clearly stated, and the

**707.07(e)**

word "reject" must be used. The examiner should designate the *statutory basis* for any ground of rejection by express reference to a section of 35 U.S.C. in the opening sentence of each ground of rejection. If the claim is rejected as too broad, the reason for so holding should be given; if rejected as indefinite the examiner should point out wherein the indefiniteness resides; or if rejected as incomplete, the element or elements lacking should be specified, or the applicant be otherwise advised as to what the claim requires to render it complete.

See MPEP § 706.02 >(i), (j), and (m)< for language to be used.

Everything of a personal nature must be avoided. Whatever may be the examiners view as to the utter lack of patentable merit in the disclosure of the application examined, he or she should not express in the record the opinion that the application is, or appears to be, devoid of patentable subject matter. Nor should he or she express doubts as to the allowability of allowed claims or state that every doubt has been resolved in favor of the applicant in granting him the claims allowed.

Although, not every ground of rejection may be categorically related to a specific section of the statute, 35 U.S.C. 112 is considered as the more apt section for old combination rejections than 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103; *Ex parte Des Granges*, 864 O.G. 7122.

The examiner should, as a part of the first Office action on the merits, identify any claims which he or she judges, as presently recited, to be allowable and/or should suggest any way in which he or she considers that rejected claims may be amended to make them allowable. If the examiner does not do this, then by implication it will be understood by the applicant or his or her attorney or agent that in the examiner's opinion, as presently advised, there appears to be no allowable claim nor anything patentable in the subject matter to which the claims are directed.

**IMPROPERLY EXPRESSED REJECTIONS**

An omnibus rejection of the claim "on the references and for the reasons of record" is stereotyped and usually not informative and should therefore be avoided. This is especially true where certain claims have been rejected on one ground and other claims on another ground.

A plurality of claims should never be grouped together in a common rejection, unless that rejection is equally applicable to all claims in the group.

**707.07(e) Note All Outstanding Requirements [R-1]**

>In taking up an amended case for action the examiner should note in every letter all the requirements outstanding against the case. Every point in the prior action of an examiner which is still applicable must be repeated or referred to, to prevent the implied waiver of the *requirement*.

As soon as allowable subject matter is found, correction of all informalities then present should be *required*.<

**707.07(f) Answer All Material Traversed [R-2]**

Where the requirements are traversed, or suspension thereof requested, the examiner should make proper reference thereto in his action on the amendment.

Where the applicant traverses any rejection, the examiner should, if he or she repeats the rejection, take note of the applicant's argument and answer the substance of it.

If a rejection of record is to be applied to a new or amended claim, specific identification of that ground of rejection, as by citation of the paragraph in the former Office letter in which the rejection was originally stated, should be given.

**ANSWERING ASSERTED ADVANTAGES**

After an Office action, the response (in addition to making amendments, etc.) may frequently include arguments and affidavits to the effect that the prior art cited by the examiner does not teach how to obtain or does not inherently yield one or more advantages (new or improved results, functions or effects), which advantages are urged to warrant issue of a patent on the allegedly novel subject matter claimed.

If it is the examiner's considered opinion that the asserted advantages are without significance in determining patentability of the rejected claims, he or she should state the reasons for his or her position in the record, preferably in the action following the assertion or argument relative to such advantages. By so doing the

applicant will know that the asserted advantages have actually been considered by the examiner and, if appeal is taken, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will also be advised.

The importance of answering such arguments is illustrated by *In re Herrmann* \*\*>261 F.2d 598, 120 USPQ 182 (CCPA 1958)< where the applicant urged that the subject matter claimed produced new and useful results. The court noted that since applicant's statement of advantages was not questioned by the examiner or the Board of Appeals, it was constrained to accept the statement at face value and therefore found certain claims to be allowable.

>See also *In re Soni*, 54 F.3d 746, 751, 34 USPQ2d 1684, 1688 (Fed Cir. 1995) (Office failed to rebut applicant's argument).<

### 707.07(g) Piecemeal Examination [R-2]

Piecemeal examination should be avoided as much as possible. The examiner ordinarily should reject each claim on all valid grounds available, avoiding, however, undue multiplication of references. (See MPEP § 904.02.) Major technical rejections on grounds such as lack of proper disclosure, undue breadth, serious indefiniteness and *res judicata* should be applied where appropriate even though there may be a seemingly sufficient rejection on the basis of prior art. Where a major technical rejection is proper, it should be stated with a full development of reasons rather than by a mere conclusion coupled with some stereotyped expression.

In cases where there exists a sound rejection on the basis of prior art which discloses the "heart" of the invention (as distinguished from prior art which merely meets the terms of the claims), secondary rejections on minor technical grounds should ordinarily not be made. Certain technical rejections (e.g. negative limitations, indefiniteness) should not be made where the examiner, recognizing the limitations of the English language, is not aware of an improved mode of definition.

Some situations exist where examination of an application appears best accomplished by limiting action on the claim thereof to a particular issue. These situations include the following:

(1) Where an application is too informal for a complete action on the merits; see MPEP § 702.01;

(2) Where there is an undue multiplicity of claims, and there has been no successful telephone request for

election of a limited number of claims for full examination; see MPEP § \*>2173.05(n)<;

(3) Where there is a misjoinder of inventions and there has been no successful telephone request for election; see MPEP § 803, § 806.02, § 812.01;

(4) Where disclosure is directed to perpetual motion; note *Ex parte Payne*, 1904 C.D. 42; 108 O.G. 1049. However, in such cases, the best prior art readily available should be cited and its pertinency pointed out without specifically applying it to the claims.

On the other hand, a rejection on the grounds of *res judicata*, no *prima facie* showing for reissue, new matter, or inoperativeness (not involving perpetual motion) should be accompanied by rejection on all other available grounds.

### 707.07(h) Notify of Inaccuracies in Amendment [R-1]

>See MPEP § 714.23.<

### 707.07(i) Each Claim To Be Mentioned in Each Letter [R-1]

>In every letter each claim should be mentioned by number, and its treatment or status given. Since a claim retains its original numeral throughout the prosecution of the case, its history through successive actions is thus easily traceable. Each action should conclude with a summary of all claims presented for examination.

Claims retained under 37 CFR 1.142 and claims retained under 37 CFR 1.146 should be treated as set out in MPEP § 821 to § 821.03 and § 809.02(c).

See MPEP § 2363.03 for treatment of claims in the application of losing party in interference.

The Index of Claims should be kept up to date as set forth in MPEP § 717.04.<

### 707.07(j) State When Claims Are Allowable [R-1]

#### >INVENTOR FILED APPLICATIONS

When, during the examination of a *pro se* case, it becomes apparent to the examiner that there is patentable subject matter disclosed in the application, the examiner shall draft one or more claims for the applicant and indicate in his or her action that such claims would be allowed if incorporated in the application by amendment.

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

### 707.07(k)

This practice will expedite prosecution and offer a service to individual inventors not represented by a registered patent attorney or agent. Although this practice may be desirable and is permissible in any case where deemed appropriate by the examiner, it will be expected to be applied in all cases where it is apparent that the applicant is unfamiliar with the proper preparation and prosecution of patent applications.

#### ALLOWABLE EXCEPT AS TO FORM

When an application discloses patentable subject matter and it is apparent from the claims and the applicant's arguments that the claims are intended to be directed to such patentable subject matter, but the claims in their present form cannot be allowed because of defects in form or omission of a limitation, the examiner should not stop with a bare objection or rejection of the claims. The examiner's action should be constructive in nature and when possible should offer a definite suggestion for correction. Further, an examiner's suggestion of allowable subject matter may justify indicating the possible desirability of an interview to accelerate early agreement on allowable claims.

If the examiner is satisfied after the search has been completed that patentable subject matter has been disclosed and the record indicates that the applicant intends to claim such subject matter, the examiner may note in the Office action that certain aspects or features of the patentable invention have not been claimed and that if properly claimed such claims may be given favorable consideration.

If a claim is otherwise allowable but is dependent on a cancelled claim or on a rejected claim, the Office action should state that the claim would be allowable if rewritten in independent form.

#### EARLY ALLOWANCE OF CLAIMS

Where the examiner is satisfied that the prior art has been fully developed and some of the claims are clearly allowable, the allowance of such claims should not be delayed.

##### ¶ 7.43 *Objection to Claims, Allowable Subject Matter*

Claim [1] objected to as being dependent upon a rejected base claim, but would be allowable if rewritten in independent form including all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims.

##### ¶ 7.43.01 *Allowable Subject Matter, Claims Rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, Independent Claim*

Claim [1] would be allowable if rewritten or amended to overcome the rejection(s) under 35 U.S.C. 112 set forth in this Office action.

##### ¶ 7.43.02 *Allowable Subject Matter, Claims Rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, Dependent Claim*

Claim [1] would be allowable if rewritten to overcome the rejection(s) under 35 U.S.C. 112 set forth in this Office action and to include all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims.

Form Paragraph 7.97 may be used to indicate allowance of claims.

##### ¶ 7.97 *Claims Allowed*

Claim [1] allowed.<

### 707.07(k) Numbering Paragraphs [R-1]

>It is good practice to number the paragraphs of the letter consecutively. This facilitates their identification in the future prosecution of the case.<

### 707.07(i) Comment on Examples [R-1]

>The results of the tests and examples should not normally be questioned by the examiner unless there is reasonable basis for questioning the results. If the examiner questions the results, the appropriate claims should be rejected as being based on an insufficient disclosure under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, *In re Borkowski et al*, 164 USPQ 642 (CCPA 1970). The applicant must respond to the rejection or it will be repeated, for example, by providing the results of an actual test or example which has been conducted, or by providing relevant arguments that there is strong reason to believe that the result would be as predicted. Care should be taken that new matter is not entered into the application.

If questions are present as to operability or utility, consideration should be given to the applicability of a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 101.<

### 707.08 Reviewing and Initialing by Assistant Examiner [R-2]

The full surname of the examiner who prepares the Office action will, in all cases, be typed \*>at the end of< the action. The telephone number below this should be called if the case is to be discussed or an interview arranged. Form paragraph 7.101 or \*>7.102< should be used.

## ¶ 7.101 Telephone Inquiry Contacts— Non 5/4/9 Schedule

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to [1] whose telephone number is (703) [2]. The examiner can normally be reached on [3] from [4] to [5].

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, [6], can be reached on (703) [7]. The fax phone number for this group is (703) [8].

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the group receptionist whose telephone number is (703) [9].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert your name.
2. In bracket 2, insert your individual phone number.
3. In bracket 3, insert the days that you work every week, e.g. "Monday–Thursday" for an examiner off every Friday.
4. In brackets 4 and 5, insert your normal duty hours, e.g. "6:30 AM – 5:00 PM." \*\*>Do< not insert the core hours.
5. In bracket 6, insert your SPE's name.
6. In bracket 7, insert you SPE's phone number.
7. In bracket 8, insert the group fax number.
- 8>.< In bracket 9, insert the telephone number for your group receptionist.

## ¶ \*&gt;7.102&lt; Telephone Inquiry Contacts— 5/4/9 Schedule

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to [1] whose telephone number is (703) [2]. The examiner can normally be reached on [3] from [4] to [5]. The examiner can also be reached on alternate [6].

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, [7], can be reached on (703) [8]. The fax phone number for this group is (703) [9].

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the group receptionist whose telephone number is (703) [10].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert your name.
2. In bracket 2, insert your individual phone number.
3. In bracket 3, insert the days that you work every week, e.g., "Monday–Thursday" for an examiner off on alternate Fridays.
4. In bracket 4 and 5, insert your normal duty hours, e.g. "6:30 AM – 4:00 PM." \*\*>Do< not insert the core hours.
5. In bracket 6, insert the day in each pay–period that is your compressed day off, e.g. "Fridays" for an examiner on 5/4/9 with the first Friday off.
6. In bracket 7, insert your SPE's name.
7. In bracket 8, insert your SPE's phone number.
8. In bracket 9, insert the group fax number.
9. In bracket 10, insert the telephone number for your group receptionist.

After the action is typed, the examiner who prepared the action reviews it for correctness. >The surname or initials of the examiner who prepared the action and the date on which action was typed should appear below the

action.< If this examiner does not have the authority to sign the action, he or she should initial above the typed name >or initials<, and forward the action to the authorized signatory examiner for signing.

**707.09 Signing by Primary or Other Authorized Examiner [R–1]**

>Although only the original is signed, the word "Examiner" and the name of the signer should appear on the original and copies.

All letters and issues should be signed promptly.<

**707.10 Entry [R–1]**

>The original, signed by the authorized examiner, is the copy which is placed in the file wrapper. The character of the action, its paper number and the date of mailing are entered in black ink on the outside of the file wrapper under "Contents".<

**707.11 Date [R–1]**

>The date should not be typed when the letter is written, but should be stamped or printed on all copies of the letter after it has been signed by the authorized signatory examiner and the copies are about to be mailed.<

**707.12 Mailing [R–1]**

>Copies of the examiner's action are mailed by the group after the original, initialed by the assistant examiner and signed by the authorized signatory examiner, has been placed in the file. After the copies are mailed the original is returned for placement in the file.<

**707.13 Returned Office Action [R–1]**

>Letters are sometimes returned to the Office because the Post Office has not been able to deliver them. The examiner should use every reasonable means to ascertain the correct address and forward the letter again, after stamping it "remailed" with the date thereof and redirecting it if there be any reason to believe that the letter would reach applicant at such new address. If the Office letter was addressed to an attorney, a letter may be written to the inventor or assignee informing him or her of the returned letter. The period running against the application begins with the date of remailing. (*Ex parte Gourtoff*, 1924 C.D. 153, 329 O.G. 536.)

If the Office is not finally successful in delivering the letter, it is placed, with the envelope, in the file wrapper. If the period dating from the remailing elapses with no communication from applicant, the case is forwarded to the Abandoned Files Repository. <

## 708 Order of Examination [R-2]

### 37 CFR 1.101. Order of examination.

(a) \*>Nonprovisional applications< filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and accepted as complete applications are assigned for examination to the respective examining groups having the classes of inventions to which the applications relate. \*>Nonprovisional applications< shall be taken up for examination by the examiner to whom they have been assigned in the order in which they have been filed except for those applications in which examination has been advanced pursuant to § 1.102. See § 1.496 for order of examination of international applications in the national stage.

(b) Applications which have been acted upon by the examiner, and which have been placed by the applicant in condition for further action by the examiner (amended applications) shall be taken up for action in such order as shall be determined by the Commissioner.

Each examiner will give priority to that applicant in his or her docket, whether amended or new, which has the *oldest effective U.S. filing date*. Except as rare circumstances may justify group directors in granting individual exceptions, this basic policy applies to all applications.

The actual filing date of a continuation-in-part application is used for docketing purposes. However, the examiner may act on a continuation-in-part application by using the effective filing date, if desired.

If at any time an examiner determines that the "effective filing date" status of any application differs from what the records show, the clerk should be informed, who should promptly amend the records to show the correct status, with the date of correction.

The order of examination for each examiner is to give priority to reissue applications, with top priority to those in which litigation has been stayed (MPEP § 1442.03), then to those special cases having a fixed 30-day due date, such as examiner's answers and decisions on motions. Most other cases in the "special" category (for example, interference cases, cases made special by petition, cases ready for final conclusion, etc.) will continue in this category, with the first effective U.S. filing date among them normally controlling priority.

All amendments before final rejection should be responded to within two months of receipt.

## 708.01 List of Special Cases [R-1]

### >37 CFR 1.102. Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced out of turn for examination or for further action except as provided by this part, or upon order of the Commissioner to expedite the business of the Office, or upon filing of a request under paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraphs (c) or (d) of this section with a verified showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

(c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant's age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

(d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

Certain procedures by the examiners take precedence over actions even on special cases.

For example, all papers typed and ready for signature should be completed and mailed.

All issue cases returned with a "Printer Waiting" slip must be processed and returned within the period indicated.

Reissue applications, particularly those involved in stayed litigation, should be given priority.

Cases in which practice requires that the examiner act within a set period such as two months after appellants brief to furnish the examiner's answers (MPEP § 1208), necessarily take priority over special cases without specific time limits.

If an examiner has a case in which he or she is satisfied that it is in condition for allowance, or in which he or she is satisfied will have to be finally rejected, he or she should give such action forthwith instead of making the case await its turn.

The following is a list of special cases (those which are advanced out of turn for examination):

(a) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and when for that reason the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action and the Commissioner so orders (37 CFR 1.102).

(b) Cases made special as a result of a petition. (See MPEP § 708.02.)

Subject alone to diligent prosecution by the applicant, an application for patent that has once been made special and advanced out of turn for examination by reason of a ruling made in that particular case (by the Commissioner or an Assistant Commissioner) will continue to be special throughout its entire course of prosecution in the Patent and Trademark Office, including appeal, if any, to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences; and any interference in which such an application becomes involved shall, in like measure be considered special by all Office officials concerned.

(c) Applications for reissues, particularly those involved in stayed litigation (37 CFR 1.176).

(d) Applications remanded by an appellate tribunal for further action.

(e) An application, once taken up for action by an examiner according to its effective filing date, should be treated as special by an examiner, art unit or group to which it may subsequently be transferred; exemplary situations include new cases transferred as the result of a telephone election and cases transferred as the result of a timely response to any official action.

(f) Applications which appear to interfere with other applications previously considered and found to be allowable, or which will be placed in interference with an unexpired patent or patents (37 CFR 1.201).

(g) Applications ready for allowance, or ready for allowance except as to formal matters.

(h) Applications which are in condition for final rejection.

(i) Applications pending more than 5 years, including those which, by relation to a prior United States application, have an effective pendency of more than 5 years. See MPEP § 707.02(a).

(j) Reexamination Proceedings, MPEP § 2261.

See also MPEP § 714.13, § 1207 and § 1309.<

## 708.02 Petition To Make Special [R-2]

### 37 CFR 1.102 Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced out of turn for examination or for further action except as provided by this part, or upon order of the Commissioner to expedite the business of the Office, or upon filing of a request under paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraphs (c) or (d) of this section with a verified showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

(c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant's age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

(d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

New applications ordinarily are taken up for examination in the order of their effective United States filing dates. Certain exceptions are made by way of petitions to make special, which may be granted under the conditions set forth below.

## I. MANUFACTURE

An application may be made special on the ground of prospective manufacture upon the filing of a petition accompanied by the fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i) >and a verified statement< by the applicant or assignee >or a statement by an attorney/agent registered to practice before the PTO< alleging\*\*:

(1) The possession by the prospective manufacturer of sufficient presently available capital (stating approximately the amount) and facilities (stating briefly the nature thereof) to manufacture the invention in quantity or that sufficient capital and facilities will be made available if a patent is granted;

If the prospective manufacturer is an individual, there must be a corroborating affidavit from some responsible party, as for example, an officer of a bank, showing that said individual has the required available capital to manufacture;

(2) That the prospective manufacturer will not manufacture, or will not increase present manufacture, unless certain that the patent will be granted;

(3) That \*>the prospective manufacturer< obligates himself \*>,< herself or \*\*>itself<, to manufacture the invention, in the United States or its possessions, in quantity immediately upon the allowance of claims or issuance of a patent which will protect the investment of capital and facilities\*>; and<

\*\*

(\*>4<) That the applicant or assignee has made or caused to be made a careful and thorough search of the prior art, or has a good knowledge of the pertinent prior art\*\*.

708.02

## II. INFRINGEMENT

Subject to a requirement for a further showing as may be necessitated by the facts of a particular case, an application may be made special because of actual infringement (but not for prospective infringement) upon payment of the fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i) and the filing of a petition >accompanied by a verified statement by the applicant or assignee or a statement by an attorney/agent registered to practice before the PTO< alleging \*\*>;(1) That< there is an infringing device or product actually on the market or method in use \*\*>; (2) That< a rigid comparison of the alleged infringing device, product, or method with the claims of the application has been made, \*>and< that, in his or her opinion, some of the claims are unquestionably infringed \*\*>; and (3) That< he or she has made or caused to be made a careful and thorough search of the prior art or has a good knowledge of the pertinent prior art\*\*.

>Applicant must provide one copy of each of the reference deemed most closely related to the subject matter encompassed by the claims if said references are not already of record.<

Models or specimens of the infringing product or that of the application should not be submitted unless requested.

## III. APPLICANT'S HEALTH

An application may be made special upon a petition by applicant accompanied by \*\*>any evidence showing< that the state of health of the applicant is such that he might not be available to assist in the prosecution of the application if it were to run its normal course>, such as a doctor's certificate or other medical certificate<. No fee is required for such a petition, 37 CFR 1.102(c).

## IV. APPLICANT'S AGE

An application may be made special upon filing a petition including \*\*>any evidence showing< that the applicant is 65 years of age, or more >, such as a birth certificate or applicant's verified statement<. No fee is required with such a petition, 37 CFR 1.102(c).

## V. ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY

The Patent and Trademark Office will accord "special" status to all patent applications for inventions which materially enhance the quality of the environment of mankind by contributing to the restoration or maintenance

of the basic life-sustaining natural elements — air, water, and soil.

All applicants desiring to participate in this program should petition that their applications be accorded "special" status. Such petitions \*\* should be accompanied by \*\*>verified statements< under 37 CFR 1.102 by the applicant >or assignee< or \*\*>statements by an attorney/agent registered to practice before the PTO< his attorney or agent explaining how the inventions contribute to the restoration or maintenance of one of these life-sustaining elements. No fee is required for such a petition, 37 CFR 1.102(c).

## VI. ENERGY

The Patent and Trademark Office will, on petition>,< accord "special" status to all patent applications for inventions which materially contribute to (1) the discovery or development of energy resources, or (2) the more efficient utilization and conservation of energy resources. Examples of inventions in category (1) would be developments in fossil fuels (natural gas, coal, and petroleum), nuclear energy, solar energy, etc. Category (2) would include inventions relating to the reduction of energy consumption in combustion systems, industrial equipment, household appliances, etc.

All applicants desiring to participate in this program should petition that their applications be accorded "special" status. Such petitions \*\* should be accompanied by \*\*>verified statements< under 37 CFR 1.102 by the applicant >or assignee< or \*\*>statements by an attorney/agent registered to practice before the PTO< explaining how the invention materially contributes to category (1) or (2) set forth above. No fee is required for such a petition, 37 CFR 1.102(c).

## VII. INVENTIONS RELATING TO RECOMBINANT DNA

In recent years revolutionary genetic research has been conducted involving recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid ("recombinant DNA"). Recombinant DNA research appears to have extraordinary potential benefit for mankind. It has been suggested, for example, that research in this field might lead to ways of controlling or treating cancer and hereditary defects. The technology also has possible applications in agriculture

and industry. It has been likened in importance to the discovery of nuclear fission and fusion. At the same time, concern has been expressed over the safety of this type of research. The National Institutes of Health (NIH) has released guidelines for the conduct of research concerning recombinant DNA. These "Guidelines for Research Involving Recombination DNA Molecules," were published in the *Federal Register* of July 7, 1976, 41 FR 27902-27943. NIH is sponsoring experimental work to identify possible hazards and safety practices and procedures.

In view of the exceptional importance of recombinant DNA and the desirability of prompt disclosure of developments in the field, the Patent and Trademark Office will accord "special" status to patent applications relating to safety of research in the field of recombinant DNA. Upon appropriate petition and payment of the fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i), the Office will make special patent applications for inventions relating to safety of research in the field of recombinant DNA. Petitions for special status should be \*\* accompanied by \*\* >verified statements< under 37 CFR 1.102 by the applicant \*\*> or assignee or statements by an attorney/agent registered to practice before the PTO< explaining the relationship of the invention to safety of research in the field of recombinant DNA research. \*\* The fee set forth under 37 CFR 1.17(i) must also be paid.

#### VIII. SPECIAL EXAMINING PROCEDURE FOR CERTAIN NEW APPLICATIONS — ACCELERATED EXAMINATION

A new application (one which has not received any examination by the examiner) may be granted special status provided that applicant (and this term includes applicant's attorney or agent) complies with each of the following items:

- (a) Submits a \* petition to make special accompanied by the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(i);
- (b) Presents all claims directed to a single invention, or if the Office determines that all the claims presented are not obviously directed to a single invention, will make an election without traverse as a prerequisite to the grant of special status.

The election may be made by applicant at the time of filing the petition for special status. Should applicant fail to include an election with the original papers or petition and the Office determines that a requirement should be

made, the established telephone restriction practice will be followed.

If otherwise proper, examination on the merits will proceed on claims drawn to the elected invention.

If applicant refuses to make an election without traverse, the application will not be further examined at that time. The petition will be denied on the ground that the claims are not directed to a single invention, and the application will await action in its regular turn.

Divisional applications directed to the nonelected inventions will not automatically be given special status based on papers filed with the petition in the parent case. Each such application must meet on its own all requirements for the new special status;

(c) Submits a \* >statement(s)< that a pre-examination search was made, \*\* and listing the field of search by class and subclass, publication, Chemical Abstracts, foreign patents, etc. A search made by a foreign patent office satisfies this requirement;

(d) Submits one copy each of the references deemed most closely related to the subject matter encompassed by the claims> if said references are not already of record<; and

(e) Submits a detailed discussion of the references, which discussion points out, with the particularity required by 37 CFR 1.111 (b) and (c), how the claimed subject matter is \* >patentable< over the references. \*\*

In those instances where the request for this special status does not meet all the prerequisites set forth above, applicant will be notified and the defects in the request will be stated. The application will remain in the status of a new application awaiting action in its regular turn. In those instances where a request is defective in one or more respects, applicant will be given *one* opportunity to perfect the request > in a renewed petition to make special<. If perfected, the request will then be granted. > If not perfected in the first renewed petition, any additional renewed petitions to make special may or may not be considered at the discretion of the Group Director.<

Once a request has been granted, prosecution will proceed according to the procedure set forth below; there is no provision for "withdrawal" from this special status.

The special examining procedure of VIII (accelerated examination) involves the following procedures:

- (1) The new application, having been granted special status as a result of compliance with the requirements set out above will be taken up by the examiner

**708.02**

before all other categories of applications except those clearly in condition for allowance and those with set time limits, such as examiner's answers, etc., and will be given a complete first action which will include *all* essential matters of merit as to all claims. The examiner's search will be restricted to the *subject matter encompassed by the claims*. A first action rejection will set a 3-month shortened period for response.

(2) During the 3-month period for response, applicant is encouraged to arrange for an interview with the examiner in order to resolve, with finality, as many issues as possible. In order to afford the examiner time for reflective consideration before the interview, applicant or his or her representative should cause to be placed in the hands of the examiner at least one working day prior to the interview, a copy (clearly denoted as such) of the \*\* amendment that he proposes to file in response to the examiner's action. Such a paper will not become a part of the file, but will form a basis for discussion at the interview.

(3) Subsequent to the interview, or responsive to the examiner's first action if no interview was had, applicant will file the "record" response. The response at this stage, to be proper, must be restricted to the rejections, objections, and requirements made. Any amendment which would require broadening the search field will be treated as an improper response.

(4) The examiner will, within 1 month from the date of receipt of applicant's formal response, take up the application for final disposition. This disposition will constitute either a final action which terminates with the setting of a 3-month period for response, or a notice of allowance. The examiner's response to any amendment submitted after final rejection should be prompt and by way of form PTO-303 or PTO-327, by passing the case to issue, or by an examiner's answer should applicant choose to file an appeal brief at this time. The use of these forms is not intended to open the door to further prosecution. Of course, where relatively minor issues or deficiencies might be easily resolved, the examiner may use the telephone to inform the applicant of such.

(5) A personal interview after final Office action will not be permitted unless requested by the examiner. However, telephonic interviews will be permitted where appropriate for the purpose of correcting any minor matters which remain outstanding.

After allowance, these applications are given top priority for printing. See MPEP § 1309.

**IX. SPECIAL STATUS FOR PATENT APPLICATIONS RELATING TO SUPERCONDUCTIVITY**

In accordance with the President's proposal directing the Patent and Trademark Office to accelerate the processing of patent applications and adjudication of disputes involving superconductivity technologies when requested by the applicant to do so, the Patent and Trademark Office will, on request, accord "special" status to all patent applications for inventions involving superconductivity materials. Examples of such inventions would include those directed to the superconductive materials themselves as well as to their manufacture and application. In order that the Patent and Trademark Office may implement this procedure, we invite all applicants desiring to participate in this program to request that their applications be accorded "special" status. Such requests should be \*\* accompanied by a statement under 37 CFR 1.102 that the invention involves superconductive materials. No fee is required. The statement must be verified if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. \*\*

**X. INVENTIONS RELATING TO HIV/AIDS AND CANCER**

In view of the importance of developing treatments and cures for HIV/AIDS and cancer and the desirability of prompt disclosure of advances made in these fields, the Patent and Trademark Office will accord "special" status to patent applications relating to HIV/AIDS and cancer. \*\*

Applicants who desire that an application relating to HIV/AIDS or cancer be made special should file a petition and the fee under 37 CFR 1.17 (i) requesting the Patent and Trademark Office to make the application special. The petition for special status should be \*\* accompanied by a statement explaining how the invention contributes to the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of HIV/AIDS or cancer. Such statement must be \*\* >verified< unless it is signed by a registered practitioner. \*\*

**>FORMAL REQUIREMENTS OF PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL**

Any petition to make special should:

- (1) be in writing; and
- (2) identify the application by application number and filing date. <

#### HANDLING OF PETITIONS TO MAKE SPECIAL

>Applications which have been made special will be advanced out of turn for examination and will continue to be treated as special throughout the entire prosecution in the PTO. <

Each petition to make special, regardless of the ground upon which the petition is based and the nature of the decision, is made of record in the application file, together with the decision thereon. The Office that rules on a petition is responsible for properly entering that petition and the resulting decision in the file record. The petition, with any attached papers and supporting affidavits, will be given a single paper number and so entered in the "Contents" of the file. The decision will be accorded a separate paper number and similarly entered. To ensure entries in the "Contents" in proper order, the clerk in the examining group will make certain that all papers prior to a petition have been entered and/or listed in the application file before forwarding it for consideration of the petition. Note MPEP § 1002.02 (b), (c), and (j).

>Petitions to make special, except those based on the ground of prospective manufacture or infringement, are decided by the Director of the patent examining group to which the application is assigned. Petitions to make special based on the ground of prospective manufacture or infringement are decided by the Office of Petitions. <

#### 708.03 Examiner Tenders Resignation [R-1]

>Whenever an examiner tenders his or her resignation, the supervisory primary examiner should see that the remaining time as far as possible is used in winding up the old complicated cases or those with involved records and getting as many of his amended cases as possible ready for final disposition.

If the examiner has considerable experience in his or her particular art, it is also advantageous to the Office if he or she indicates (in pencil) in the file wrappers of cases in his or her docket, the field of search or other pertinent data that he considers appropriate. <

#### 709 Suspension of Action [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.103. *Suspension of action.*

(a) Suspension of action by the Office will be granted for good and sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified upon petition by the applicant and, if such cause is not the fault of the Office, the payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). Action will not be suspended when a response by the applicant to an Office action is required.

(b) If action by the Office on an application is suspended when not requested by the applicant, the applicant shall be notified of the reasons therefor.

(c) Action by the examiner may be suspended by order of the Commissioner in the case of applications owned by the United States whenever publication of the invention by the granting of a patent thereon might be detrimental to the public safety or defense, at the request of the appropriate department or agency.

(d) Action on applications in which the Office has accepted a request to publish a defensive publication will be suspended for the entire pendency of these applications except for purposes relating to patent interference proceedings under Subpart E.

Suspension of action (37 CFR 1.103) should not be confused with extension of time for reply (37 CFR 1.136). It is to be noted that a suspension of action applies to an impending Office action by the examiner whereas an extension of time for reply applies to action by the applicant. In other words, the action cannot be suspended in an application which contains an outstanding Office action or requirement awaiting response by the applicant. It is only the action by the examiner which can be suspended under 37 CFR 1.103.

A request that action in an application be delayed will be granted only under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.103, which provides for "Suspension of Action." A petition for suspension of action must be presented as a separate paper accompanied by the petition fee, must request a specific and reasonable period of suspension not greater than six months, and must present good and sufficient reasons why the suspension is necessary. If the requirements of 37 CFR 1.103 are not met, applicants should expect that their applications, whether new or amended, will be taken up for action by the examiner in the order provided in 37 CFR 1.101, Order of Examination.

A petition for suspension of action to allow applicant time to submit an information disclosure statement will be denied as failing to present good and sufficient reasons, since 37 CFR 1.97 provides adequate recourse for the timely submission of prior art for consideration by the examiner.

In new applications, the mere inclusion in the transmittal form letter of a request that action be delayed cannot be relied upon to avoid immediate action in the ap-

**709.01**

plication. Many Group Art Units and examiners have short pendency to first action, and new applications may be taken up for action before preliminary amendments are filed in those applications. Where a preliminary amendment and petition to suspend action have been filed, it would be helpful to telephone the examiner in that regard to avoid having the amendment and the first office action cross in the mail.

Paragraph (b) of the rule provides for a suspension of Office action by the examiner on his or her own initiative, as in MPEP § 709.01 and § 2315.01. The primary examiner may grant an initial suspension of action for a maximum period of six months. This time limitation applies to both suspensions granted at the request of the applicant and suspensions imposed *sua sponte* by the examiner. Any second or subsequent suspension of action in patent applications under 37 CFR 1.103 are decided by the group director. See MPEP § 1002.02(c), item 11.

Suspension of action under 37 CFR 1.103(c) is decided by the Director of Group 2200.

Suspension of action under 37 CFR 1.103(c) is decided by the Director of Group 2200.

Form Paragraphs 7.52–7.56 should be used in actions relating to suspension of action.

¶ 7.52 *Suspension of Action, Awaiting New Reference*

A reference relevant to the examination of this application may soon become available. *Ex parte* prosecution is **SUSPENDED FOR A PERIOD OF [1] MONTHS** from the date of this letter. Upon expiration of the period of suspension, applicant should make an inquiry as to the status of the application.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Maximum period for suspension is six months.
2. The group director should approve all second or subsequent suspensions. See MPEP § 1003, paragraph 10.

¶ 7.53 *Suspension of Action, Possible Interference*

All claims are allowable. However, due to a potential interference, *ex parte* prosecution is **SUSPENDED FOR A PERIOD OF [1] MONTHS** from the date of this letter. Upon expiration of the period of suspension, applicant should make an inquiry as to the status of the application.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Maximum period for suspension is six months.
2. The group director should approve all second or subsequent suspensions. See MPEP § 1003, paragraph 10.
3. Director's approval must appear on the letter granting any second or subsequent suspension.

¶ 7.54 *Suspension of Action, Applicant's Request*

Pursuant to applicant's request filed on [1], action by the Office is suspended on this application under 37 CFR 1.103(a) for a period of [2]

months. At the end of this period, applicant is required to notify the examiner and request continuance of prosecution or a further suspension. See MPEP § 709.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Maximum period of suspension is six months.
2. Only the group director can grant second or subsequent suspensions, see MPEP § 1003, paragraph 10. Such approval must appear on the Office letter.

¶ 7.56 *Petition for Suspension, Denied, Outstanding Office Action*

Applicant's request for suspension of action in this application under 37 CFR 1.103(a) is denied as being improper. Action cannot be suspended in an application awaiting a response by the applicant. See MPEP § 709.<

**709.01 Overlapping Applications by Same Applicant or Owned by Same Assignee [R–1]**

>Examiners should not consider *ex parte*, when raised by an applicant, questions which are pending before the Office in *inter partes* proceedings involving the same applicant. (See *Ex parte Jones*, 1924 C.D. 59; 327 O.G. 681.)

Because of this where one of several applications of the same inventor which contain overlapping claims gets into an interference it was formerly the practice to suspend action by the Office on the applications not in the interference in accordance with *Ex parte McCormick*, 1904 C.D. 575; 113 O.G. 2508.

However, the better practice would appear to be to reject claims in an application related to another application in interference over the counts of the interference and in the event said claims are not cancelled in the outside application, prosecution of said application should be suspended pending the final determination of priority in the interference.

If, on the other hand applicant wishes to prosecute the outside application, and presents good reasons in support, prosecution should be continued. *Ex parte Bullier*, 1899 C.D. 155, 88 O.G. 1161; *In re Seebach*, 1937 C.D. 495, 484 O.G. 503; *In re Hammell*, 1964 C.D. 733, 808 O.G. 25. See MPEP § 804.03.<

**710 Period for Response [R–1]**

>35 U.S.C. 133. *Time for prosecuting application.*

Upon failure of the applicant to prosecute the application within six months after any action therein, of which notice has been given or mailed to the applicant, or within such shorter time, not less than thirty days, as fixed by the Commissioner in such action, the

application shall be regarded as abandoned by the parties thereto, unless it be shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that such delay was unavoidable.

35 U.S.C. 267. *Time for taking action in Government applications.*

Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 133 and 151 of this title, the Commissioner may extend the time for taking any action to three years, when an application has become the property of the United States and the head of the appropriate department or agency of the Government has certified to the Commissioner that the invention disclosed therein is important to the armament or defense of the United States.

See MPEP Chapter 1200 for period for response when appeal is taken or court review sought.

Extension of time under 35 U.S.C. 267 is decided by the Director of Group 2200. <

### 710.01 Statutory Period [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.135. *Abandonment for failure to respond within time limit.*

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to respond within the time period provided under §§ 1.134 and 1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper action as the condition of the case may require. The admission of an amendment not responsive to the last Office action, or refusal to admit the same, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When action by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the case to final action, and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

The maximum statutory period for response to an Office action is 6 months, 35 U.S.C. 133. Shortened periods are currently used in practically all cases, see MPEP § 710.02(b).

37 CFR 1.135 provides that if no response is filed within the time set in the Office action under 37 CFR 1.134 or as it may be extended under 37 CFR 1.136, the application will be abandoned unless an Office action indicates that another consequence, such as disclaimer, will take place.

Paragraph (c) has been amended to add that applicant's reply must be a bona fide attempt to respond as well as to advance the case to final action in order for applicant to be given an opportunity to supply any omission. <

### 710.01(a) Statutory Period, How Computed [R-1]

>The actual time taken for response is computed from the date stamped or printed on the Office action to the date of receipt by the Office of applicant's response. No cognizance is taken of fractions of a day and applicant's response is due on the corresponding day of the month 6 months or any lesser number of months specified after the Office action.

Response to an Office action with a 3-month shortened statutory period, dated November 30 is due on the following February 28 (or 29 if it is a leap year), while a response to an Office action dated February 28 is due on May 28 and not on the last day of May. *Ex parte Messick*, 7 USPQ 57; 1930 C.D. 6; 400 O.G. 3 (Comm'r Pat. 1930).

A 1-month extension of time extends the time for response to the date corresponding to the Office action date in the following month. For example, a response to an Office action mailed on January 31 with a 3-month shortened statutory period would be due on April 30. If a 1-month extension of time were given, the response would be due by May 31. The fact that April 30 may have been a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday has no effect on the extension of time. Where the period for response is extended by some time period other than "1-month" or an even multiple thereof, the person granting the extension should indicate the *date* upon which the extended period for response will expire.

When a timely response is ultimately not filed, the application is regarded as abandoned after midnight of the date the period for response expired. In the above example where May 31 is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday and no further extensions of time are obtained prior to the end of the 6-month statutory period, the application would be abandoned as of June 1. The fact that June 1 may be a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday does not change the abandonment date since the response was due on May 31, a business day. See MPEP § 711.04(a) regarding the pulling and forwarding of abandoned applications.

A 30-day period for response in the Office means 30 calendar days including Saturdays, Sundays, and federal holidays. However, if the period ends on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, the response is timely if it is filed on the next succeeding business day. If the period

**710.02**

for response is extended, the time extended is added to the last calendar day of the original period, as opposed to being added to the day it would have been due when said last day is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday.

The date of receipt of a response to an Office action is given by the "Office date" stamp which appears on the responding paper.

In some cases the examiner's letter does not determine the beginning of a statutory response period. In all cases where the statutory response period runs from the date of a previous action, a statement to that effect should be included.

Since extensions of time are available pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a), it is incumbent upon applicants to recognize the date for response so that the proper fee for any extension will be submitted. Thus, the date upon which any response is due will normally be indicated only in those instances where the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) are not available. See MPEP Chapter 2200 for reexamination proceedings.<

**710.02 Shortened Statutory Period and Time Limit Actions Computed [R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.136. Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.*

(a) If an applicant is required to respond within a non-statutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may respond up to four months after the time period set if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in § 1.17 are filed prior to or with the response, unless (1) applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action or (2) the application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to § 1.611. The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. In no case may an applicant respond later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See §1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings, and § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.

(b) When a response with petition and fee for extension of time cannot be filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the time for response will be extended only for sufficient cause, and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the applicant is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. In no case can any extension carry the date on which response to an Office action is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute or be granted when the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are available. See § 1.645 for extension of time interference proceedings and § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.

37 CFR 1.136 implements 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(8) which directs the Commissioner to charge fees for extensions of time to take action in patent applications.

Under 37 CFR 1.136 (35 U.S.C. 133) an applicant may be required to respond in a shorter period than 6 months, not less than 30 days. Some situations in which shortened periods for response are used are listed in MPEP § 710.02(b).

In other situations, for example, the rejection of a copied patent claim, the examiner may require applicant to respond on or before a specified date. These are known as time limit actions and are established under authority of 35 U.S.C. 6. Some situations in which time limits are set are noted in MPEP § 710.02(c). The time limit requirement should be typed in capital letters where required.

An indication of a shortened time for reply should appear prominently on the first page of all copies of actions in which a shortened time for reply has been set so that a person merely scanning the action can easily see it.

Shortened statutory periods \*\* are subject to the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) unless applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action. See MPEP § 710.02(e) for a discussion of extensions of time. See Chapter 2200 for reexamination proceedings.

**710.02(b) Shortened Statutory Period: Situations In Which Used [R-2]**

Under the authority given him by 35 U.S.C. 133, the Commissioner has directed the examiner to set a shortened period for response to every action. The length of the shortened statutory period to be used depends on the type of response required. Some specific cases of shortened statutory period for response to be given are:

**THIRTY DAYS**

Requirement for restriction or election of species — no claim rejected .....MPEP § 809.02(a) and § 817.

**TWO MONTHS**

Winning party in terminated interference to reply to unanswered Office action .....MPEP § 2363.02.

Where, after the termination of an interference proceeding, the application of the winning party contains an unanswered Office action, final rejection or any other

action, the primary examiner notifies the applicant of this fact. In this case response to the Office action is required within a shortened statutory period running from the date of such notice. See *Ex parte Peterson*, 49 USPQ 119; 1941 C.D. 8; 525 O.G. 3 (Comm'r Pat. 1941).

*Ex parte Quayle*, 25 USPQ 74; 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213 (Comm'r Pat. 1935) ..... MPEP § 714.14.

When an application is in condition for allowance, except as to matters of form, such as correction of specification, a new oath, etc., the case will be considered special and prompt action taken to require correction of formal matters. Such action should include an indication on the first page of form letter PTOL-326 that prosecution on the merits is closed in accordance with the decision in *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213. A 2-month shortened statutory period for response should be set.

Multiplicity rejection — no other rejection.....MPEP § \* >2173.05(n) <

A new ground of rejection in an examiner's answer on appeal .....MPEP § 1208.01

### THREE MONTHS

To respond to any Office action on the merits.

#### PERIOD FOR RESPONSE RESTARTED

Incorrect citation by examiner — regardless of time remaining in original period .... MPEP § 710.06.

The above periods may be changed under special, rarely occurring circumstances.

A shortened statutory period may not be less than 30 days (35 U.S.C. 133).

### 710.02(c) Time-Limit Actions: Situation In Which Used [R-1]

>As stated in MPEP § 710.02, 35 U.S.C. 6 provides authority for the Commissioner to establish rules and regulations for the conduct of proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office. Among the rules are certain situations in which the examiner sets a time limit within which some specified action should be taken by applicant. Some situations in which a time limit is set are as follows:

(a) A portion of 37 CFR 1.605(a) provides that in suggesting claims for interference:

The applicant to whom the claim is suggested shall amend the application by presenting the suggested claim within a time specified by the examiner, not less than one month. Failure or refusal of an applicant

to timely present the suggested claim shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by the applicant of the invention defined by the suggested claim.

See MPEP § 2305.02.

(b) When applicant has made a bona fide attempt to respond but has made an inadvertent omission, applicant should be given a time limit of 1 month, which cannot be extended under 37 CFR 1.136(a) or (b), to complete the response by submitting the omission in accordance with 37 CFR 1.135(c).

37 CFR 1.135(c). When action by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the case to final action and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

Under 37 CFR 1.135(c), the missing matter or lack of compliance must be considered by the examiner as being "inadvertently omitted." Once an inadvertent omission is brought to the attention of the applicant, the question of inadvertence no longer exists. Therefore, any further time to complete the response would not be appropriate under 37 CFR 1.135(c). Accordingly, no extension of time will be granted in these situations and 37 CFR 1.136(a) is not applicable. See MPEP § 710.02(e) and § 714.03.

(c) If an amendment is filed which amends the claims and/or presents additional claims so as to require additional fees pursuant to 37 CFR 1.16(b), (c), or (d), applicant should be given a time limit of 1 month or the remainder of the period for response, whichever is longer, within which to remit the additional fees due or to submit an amendment which amends or cancels the claims so that no additional fee is due. The 1-month time limit is not extendable under 37 CFR 1.136(a) or (b). However, the period for response set in the previous Office action may be extended pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) provided the extension does not go beyond the 6-month period from the date of the previous Office action. See MPEP § 607 and § 714.03.

(d) To correct an unsigned or improperly signed amendment, applicant should be given a time limit of 1 month or the remainder of the period for response, whichever is longer, to supply a duplicate paper or ratification, properly signed. The 1-month time limit is not extendable under 37 CFR 1.136(a) or (b). However, the period for response set in the previous Office action may be extended pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) provided the

**710.02(d)**

extension does not go beyond the 6-month period from the date of the previous office action. See MPEP § 714.01(a).

(e) Where an application is otherwise allowable but contains a traverse of a requirement to restrict, 1 month is given to cancel claims to the nonelected invention or species or take other appropriate action. See 37 CFR 1.141 and 1.144, and MPEP § 809.02(c) and § 821.01.<

**710.02(d) Difference Between Shortened  
Statutory and Time-Limit  
Periods [R-1]**

>The distinction between a limited time for reply and a shortened statutory period under 37 CFR 1.136 should not be lost sight of. The penalty attaching to failure to reply within the time limit (e.g., from the suggestion of claims) is loss of the subject matter involved on the doctrine of disclaimer. A rejection on the ground of disclaimer is appealable. On the other hand, a complete failure to respond within the set statutory period results in abandonment of the entire application. This is not appealable, but a petition to revive may be granted if the delay was unavoidable (37 CFR 1.137(a)) or unintentional (37 CFR 1.137(b)). Further, where applicant responds a day or two after the time limit, this may be excused by the examiner if satisfactorily explained. The examiner may use his or her discretion to request an explanation for the delay if the reason for the delay is not apparent from the response. A response 1 day late in a case carrying a shortened statutory period under 35 U.S.C. 133, no matter what the excuse, results in abandonment; however, an extension of the period may be obtained under 37 CFR 1.136 provided the extension does not go beyond the 6-months statutory period from the date of the Office action.

The situation sometimes occurs where a nonfinal Office action with a 3-month shortened statutory period is sent to applicant. Just before or on the last day of the maximum permitted statutory period of 6 months, applicant files a petition for an extension of time of 3 months and the required fee, and a response, which is a bona fide attempt but through apparent oversight or inadvertence omits some necessary point. A letter is sent out with a 1-month time limit, seemingly giving applicant more than 6 months to respond.

However, by determining that the response is a bona fide attempt, 37 CFR 1.135(c), the examiner has determined that applicant has prosecuted the application within 6 months as required by 35 U.S.C. 133, and the period for response has been tolled. The time limit of 1 month given to applicant is not and should not be construed as an extension of time to the statutory period. Rather, it is a time limit in order to give applicant an opportunity to supply the inadvertent omission.

If, however, applicant fails to supply or correct the inadvertent omission within the 1-month time limit, that failure constitutes evidence that the holding that the response was a bona fide attempt was in error. In that event, the response would not be considered to meet the requirements of 37 CFR 1.111 and the application would, therefore, be abandoned as of the end of the shortened statutory period (per 37 CFR 1.135(a) and (b)), as extended by any timely filed petition for extension of time, per 37 CFR 1.136(a).

In the above situation, therefore, the application would not have become abandoned upon expiration of the 1-month time limit. Rather, it would be abandoned as of midnight of the last day of the 6-month statutory period.

In another example, if an Office action is mailed on April 22, 1991 setting a 3-month shortened statutory period for response, the response would be due on July 22, 1991. If applicant files an amendment that is deemed to be a bona fide response on July 15, 1991 but through apparent oversight or inadvertence omits some necessary point, a letter holding the amendment nonresponsive would be mailed giving the applicant a 1-month time limit or the remainder of the period for response, whichever is longer, in order to complete the response. Assuming the letter holding the amendment nonresponsive is mailed on August 12, 1991, applicant would have until September 12 to complete his response. Further assuming that applicant failed to respond to the August 12, 1991 letter at all, then the application would have become abandoned as of midnight on July 22, 1991 with the date of abandonment being July 23, 1991.

Time periods such as time periods for responding to a requirement for information or filing a brief on appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences are normally subject to 37 CFR 1.136(a), but, in exceptional circumstances, additional time may be granted under 37 CFR 1.136(b) where no further time is available

under 37 CFR 1.136(a). This is possible since these periods are not statutory periods subject to the requirement of 35 U.S.C. 133. See MPEP § 710.02(e).<

### 710.02(e) Extension of Time [R-2]

*37 CFR 1.136 Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.*

(a)(1) If an applicant is required to respond within a nonstatutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may respond up to four months after the time period set if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in § 1.17 are filed prior to or with the response, unless:

- (i) Applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action,
- (ii) The response is a reply brief submitted pursuant to § 1.193(b),
- (iii) The response is a request for an oral hearing submitted pursuant to § 1.194(b),
- (iv) The response is to a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.196, § 1.197 or § 1.304, or
- (v) The application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to § 1.611,

(a)(2) The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. In no case may an applicant respond later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time relating to proceedings pursuant to §§ 1.193(b), 1.194, 1.196 or 1.197. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action. See § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings and § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings.

(b) When a response with petition and fee for \*>extension< of time cannot be filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the time for response will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the applicant is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. In no case can any extension carry the date on which response to an Office action is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute or be granted when the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are available. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action, § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings, and § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.

37 CFR 1.136 provides for two distinct procedures to extend the period for action or response in particular situations. The procedure which is available for use in a particular situation will depend upon the circumstances. 37 CFR 1.136(a) permits an applicant to file a petition for extension of time and a fee as in 37 CFR 1.17 (a), (b), (c), or (d) up to 4 months after the end of the time period set to take action except (1) where prohibited by statute, (2) where prohibited by one of the items listed in the

rule, or (3) where applicant has been notified otherwise in an Office action. The petition and fee must be filed within the extended time period for response requested in the petition and can be filed prior to or with the response. The filing of the petition and fee will extend the time period to take action up to 4 months dependent on the amount of the fee paid except in those circumstances noted above. 37 CFR 1.136(a) will effectively reduce the amount of paperwork required by applicants and the Office since the extension will be effective upon filing of the petition and payment of the appropriate fee and without acknowledgment or action by the Office and since the petition and fee can be filed with the response. Paragraph (b) provides for requests for extensions of time upon a showing of sufficient cause when the procedure of paragraph (a) is not available. Although the petition and fee procedure of 37 CFR 1.136(a) will normally be available within 4 months after a set period for response has expired, an extension request for cause under 37 CFR 1.136(b) must be filed during the set period for response. Extensions of time in interference proceedings are governed by 37 CFR 1.645.

It should be very carefully noted that neither the primary examiner nor the Commissioner has authority to extend the shortened statutory period unless a petition for the extension is filed. While the shortened period may be extended within the limits of the statutory 6 months period, no extension can operate to extend the time beyond the 6 months.

Compare, however, 37 CFR 1.135(c) and MPEP § 714.03.

Any request under 37 CFR 1.136(b) for extension of time for reply must state a reason in support thereof. Such extensions will only be granted for sufficient cause and must be filed prior to the end of the set period for response.

Extensions of time with the payment of a fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136 are possible in response to most Office actions of the examiner. Exceptions include (1) all extensions in a reexamination proceeding (see 37 CFR 1.550(c) and MPEP § 2265) (2) all extensions during an interference proceeding (but not preparatory to an interference such as where a claim is suggested for interference), (3) those specific situations where an Office action states that the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) are not applicable; e.g., in reissue applications associated with

## MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

### 710.02(e)

litigation, or where an application in allowable condition has non-elected claims and time is set to cancel such claims, and (4) those limited instances where applicant is given a 1-month time limit to complete an incomplete response pursuant to 37 CFR 1.135(c).

The fees for extensions of time are set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(a)–(d) and are subject to a 50% reduction for persons or concerns qualifying as small entities. The fees itemized at 37 CFR 1.17(a)–(d) are cumulative. Thus, if an applicant has paid an extension fee in the amount set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(a) for a 1-month extension of time and thereafter decides that an additional 1 month is needed, the proper fee would be the amount set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(b) less the amount set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(a) which was previously paid.

The statute at 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(8) requires the filing of (1) a petition to extend the time and (2) the appropriate fee. Such a petition need not be in any required format, but the petition should explicitly request, in writing, an extension of time for the specific number of months needed.

Although a preferred 37 CFR 1.136(a) petition includes the above noted request for a specific number of months, an acceptable petition will be considered to comprise (1) a response accompanied by (2) a writing which specifically refers to the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) and thereby manifests a clear intent by applicant to obtain an extension of time.

A general authorization under 37 CFR 1.25(b) to charge any necessary fees under 37 CFR 1.16 or 1.17 to a deposit account will NOT be interpreted as a petition for an extension of time.

A petition for an extension of time must be filed in response to each Office action or requirement for which the extension is requested. A general request for an extension of time filed prior to examination would NOT be effective since it is not provided for, and it would not be a petition in response to an Office action or requirement as intended by the statute and rules. A proper petition may be a mere sentence such as

'The applicant herewith petitions the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to extend the time for response to the Office action dated \_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_ month(s) from \_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_ Submitted herewith is a check for \_\_\_\_ to cover the cost of the extension [Please Charge my deposit account number \_\_\_\_, in the amount of \_\_\_\_ to cover the cost of the extension. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to the above numbered deposit account.]'

Where applicant desires to file a continuing application rather than a response to a given action by the examiner, it is appropriate to merely file a petition to extend the time along with the proper fee in the pending application and file the continuing application during the extension period. It is not necessary to file a response in the pending application. The petition plus fee provides the time for applicant to take whatever action is appropriate. Desirably, applicant should expressly abandon the prior application after the filing of the continuing application. An extension of time will not be effected in the prior application by filing a petition for extension of time in a continuing application. This is because the petition for extension of time must be directed toward and filed in the application to which it pertains in accordance with 37 CFR 1.4 and 1.5.

Where a response is filed after the set period for response has expired and no petition or fee accompanies it, the response will not be accepted as timely until the petition and the appropriate fee are submitted. The response, when filed late, must include both the petition and the fee. If either is missing, the response is not acceptable until such time as the missing petition or fee is submitted. For example, if an Office action sets a 3-month period for response and applicant responds in the fourth month and includes only the fee for a 1-month extension of time, the response is not acceptable until the petition is filed. If the petition is not filed until the fifth month, an additional fee for the second month extension would also be required in order to render the response timely.

>An extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136 is not necessary when submitting a supplemental response to an Office action if a complete first response was timely filed in response to the Office action.<

When the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) are not applicable, extensions of time for cause pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(b) are possible. Any such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the applicant is due. The mere filing of such a request will not effect any extension. All such requests are to be decided by the Group Director. No extension can operate to extend the time beyond the 6-month statutory period.

If a request for extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(b) is filed in duplicate and accompanied by a stamped return-addressed envelope, the Office will

indicate the action taken on the duplicate and return it promptly in the envelope. Utilization of this procedure is optional on the part of applicant. In this procedure, the action taken on the request should be noted on the original and on the copy which is to be returned. The notation on the original, which becomes a part of the file record, should be signed by the person granting or denying the extension, and the name and title of that person should also appear in the notation on the copy which is returned to the person requesting the extension.

When the request is granted, no further action by the Office is necessary. When the request is granted in part, the extent of the extension granted will be clearly indicated on both the original and on the copy which is to be returned. When the request is denied, the reason for the denial will be indicated on both the original and on the copy which is to be returned or a formal decision letter giving the reason for the denial will be forwarded promptly after the mailing of the duplicate.

If the request for extension of time is granted, the due date is computed from the date stamped or printed on the action, as opposed to the original due date. See MPEP § 710.01(a). For example, a response to an action with a 3-month shortened statutory period, dated November 30, is due on the following February 28 (or 29, if it is a leap year). If the period for response is extended an additional month, the response becomes due on March 30, not on March 28.

For purposes of convenience, a request for an extension of time may be personally delivered and left with the appropriate area to become an official paper in the file without routing through the mail room. The person who accepts the request for an extension of time will have it date stamped.

If duplicate copies of a request for an extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(b) are hand delivered to an examining group, both copies are dated, either stamped approved or indicated as being approved in part or denied, and signed. The duplicate copy is returned to the delivering person regardless of whether the request was signed by a registered attorney or agent, either of record or acting in a representative capacity, the applicant or the assignee of record of the entire interest.

If the request for extension under 37 CFR 1.136(b) is not presented in duplicate, the applicant should be advised promptly by way of form letter PTOL-327 regard-

ing action taken on the request so that the file record will be complete.

Form Paragraph 7.98 may be used where a response is filed late but an extension of time is possible.

¶ 7.98 *Response is Late, Extension of Time Suggested*

Applicant's response was received in the Office on [1], which is after the expiration of the period for response set in the last Office action mailed on [2]. This application will become abandoned unless applicant obtains an extension of time to reply to the last Office action under 37 CFR 1.136(a).

**Examiner Note:**

Since the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) do not apply to reexamination proceedings or to litigation related reissue applications, do not use this paragraph in these applications.

**FINAL REJECTION — TIME FOR RESPONSE**

**\*\*>If<** an applicant initially responds within 2 months from the date of mailing of any final rejection setting a 3-month shortened statutory period for response and the Office does not mail an advisory action until after the end of the 3-month shortened statutory period, the period for response for purposes of determining the amount of any extension fee will be the date on which the Office mails the advisory action advising applicant of the status of the application, but in no event can the period extend beyond 6 months from the date of the final rejection. This procedure **\*\*>applies<** only to a first response to a final rejection. **\*\*>The<** following language **>**must be included by the Examiner **<** in each final rejection **\*\***.

**A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE TO THIS FINAL ACTION IS SET TO EXPIRE THREE MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS ACTION. IN THE EVENT A FIRST RESPONSE IS FILED WITHIN TWO MONTHS OF THE MAILING DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION AND THE ADVISORY ACTION IS NOT MAILED UNTIL AFTER THE END OF THE THREE-MONTH SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD, THEN THE SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD WILL EXPIRE ON THE DATE THE ADVISORY ACTION IS MAILED, AND ANY EXTENSION FEE PURSUANT TO 37 CFR 1.136(a) WILL BE CALCULATED FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THE ADVISORY ACTION. IN NO EVENT WILL THE STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE EXPIRE LATER THAN SIX MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION.**

For example, if applicant initially responds within 2 months from the date of mailing of a final rejection and the examiner mails an advisory action before the end of

**710.04**

3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection, the shortened statutory period will expire at the end of 3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection. In such a case, any extension fee would then be calculated from the end of the 3-month period. If the examiner, however, does not mail an advisory action until after the end of 3 months, the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the examiner mails the advisory action and any extension fee may be calculated from that date.

See also MPEP § 706.07(f).

**EXTENSIONS OF TIME TO SUBMIT  
AFFIDAVITS AFTER FINAL REJECTION**

Frequently, applicants request an extension of time, stating as a reason therefor that more time is needed in which to submit an affidavit. When such a request is filed after final rejection, the granting of the request for extension of time is without prejudice to the right of the examiner to question why the affidavit is now necessary and why it was not earlier presented. If applicant's showing is insufficient, the examiner may deny entry of the affidavit, notwithstanding the previous grant of an extension of time to submit it. The grant of an extension of time in these circumstances serves merely to keep the case from becoming abandoned while allowing the applicant the opportunity to present the affidavit or to take other appropriate action. Moreover, prosecution of the application to save it from abandonment must include such timely, complete and proper action as required by 37 CFR 1.113. The admission of the affidavit for purposes other than allowance of the application, or the refusal to admit the affidavit, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to save the application from abandonment.

Implicit in the above practice is the fact that affidavits submitted after final rejection are subject to the same treatment as amendments submitted after final rejection; *In re Affidavit Filed After Final Rejection*, 152 USPQ 292, 1966 C.D. 53.

Failure to file a response during the shortened statutory period results in abandonment of the application.

**REQUIREMENT FOR A RESPONSE UNDER  
37 CFR 1.136 AND 1.137 WHERE CONTINUING  
APPLICATION IS BEING FILED**

In those instances where an extension of time or a revival of an abandoned application is sought solely for the purpose of filing a continuing application under

35 U.S.C. 120 and where the prior application is to be abandoned in favor of the continuing application, the filing of a response as required by 37 CFR 1.111, 1.113, 1.192 or other regulation is considered to be an unnecessary expenditure of resources by the applicant. Accordingly, in these situations, the Patent and Trademark Office will accept the filing of a continuing application as a response under 37 CFR 1.136 or 1.137. However, the filing of a continuing application is not a proper response where (1) the response needed is payment of the issue fee, or (2) there is a need to respond under 37 CFR 1.135(c) to complete an inadvertently incomplete response.

To facilitate processing by the Office, any such petition for extension of time or petition to revive should specifically refer to the filing of a continuing application and also include an express abandonment of the prior application conditioned upon the granting of the petition and the granting of a filing date to the continuing application.

Extensions of time to appeal to the courts under 37 CFR 1.304 is covered in MPEP § 1216.

**EXTENSION OF TIME AFTER PAYMENT  
OF ISSUE FEE**

The statutory (nonextendable) time period for payment of the issue fee is 3 months from the date of the Notice of Allowance (35 U.S.C. 151). In situations where informalities such as drawing corrections or submission of supplemental or corrected declarations are outstanding at the time of allowance, applicants will be notified on the PTOL-37 (Notice of Allowability) of such informalities. While extensions of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) are available to correct such informalities, the issue fee must be paid within the 3-month period.

**710.04 Two Periods Running [R-1]**

>There sometimes arises a situation where two different periods for response are running against an application, the one limited by the regular statutory period, the other by the limited period set in a subsequent Office action. The running of the first period is not suspended nor affected by an *Ex parte* limited time action or even by an appeal therefrom. For an exception, involving suggested claims, see MPEP § 2305.03. <

**710.04(a) Copying Patent Claims [R-1]**

>Where, in an application in which there is an unanswered rejection of record, claims are copied from a patent and all of these claims are rejected there results a situation where two different periods for response are running against the application. One period, the first, is the regular statutory period of the unanswered rejection of record, the other period is the limited period set for response to the rejection (either first or final). The date of the last unanswered Office action on the claims other than the copied patent claims is the controlling date of the statutory period. (*Ex parte Milton*, 164 Ms. D. 1, 63 USPQ 132 and *Ex parte Nelson*, 164 Ms. D. 361, 26 J.P.O.S. 564.) See also MPEP § 2305.02.<

**710.05 Period Ending on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal Holiday [R-1]**

>35 U.S.C. 21 *Filing date and day for taking action.*

\*\*\*\*\*

(b) When the day, or the last day, for taking any action or paying any fee in the United States Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding secular or business day.

37 CFR 1.7. *Times for taking action; Expiration on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday.*

Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by or under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday. See § 1.304 for time for appeal or for commencing civil action.

The Federal holidays are New Year's Day, January 1; Martin Luther King's birthday, the third Monday in January; Washington's Birthday, the third Monday in February; Memorial Day, the last Monday in May; Independence Day, July 4; Labor Day, the first Monday in September; Columbus Day, the second Monday in October; Veteran's Day, November 11; Thanksgiving Day, the fourth Thursday in November; Christmas Day, December 25; Inauguration day (January 20, every 4 years). Whenever a Federal holiday falls on a Sunday, the following day (Monday) is also a Federal holiday, *Ex. Order* 10,358; 17 FR. 5269; 5 U.S.C. 6103.

When a Federal holiday falls on a Saturday, the preceding day, Friday, is considered to be a Federal holiday and the Patent and Trademark Office will be closed for

business on that day (5 U.S.C. 6103). Accordingly, any action or fee due on such a Federal holiday Friday or Saturday is to be considered timely if the action is taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

When an amendment is filed a day or two later than the expiration of the period fixed by statute, care should be taken to ascertain whether the last day of that period was Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday and if so, whether the amendment was filed or the fee paid on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

An amendment received on such succeeding day which was due on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday is endorsed on the file wrapper with the date of receipt. The Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday is also indicated.<

**710.06 Situations When Response Period Is Reset or Restarted [R-1]**

>Where the citation of a reference is incorrect or an Office action contains some other defect and this error is called to the attention of the Office within 1 month of the mail date of the action, the Office will restart the previously set period for response to run from the date the error is corrected, if requested to do so by applicant. If the error is brought to the attention of the Office within the period for response set in the Office action but more than 1 month after the date of the Office action, the Office will set a new period for response, if requested to do so by the applicant, to substantially equal the time remaining in the response period. For example, if the error is brought to the attention of the Office 5 weeks after mailing the action, then the Office would set a new 2-month period for response. The new period for response must be at least 1 month and would run from the date the error is corrected. See MPEP § 707.05(g) for the manner of correcting the record where there has been an erroneous citation.

Where for any reason it becomes necessary to re-mail any action (MPEP § 707.13), the action should be correspondingly redated, as it is the remailing date that establishes the beginning of the period for response; *Ex parte Gourtoff*, 1924 C.D. 153, 329 O.G. 536.

**710.06**

A supplementary action after a rejection explaining the references more explicitly or giving the reasons more fully, even though no further references are cited, establishes a new date from which the statutory period runs.

If the error in citation or other defective Office action is called to the attention of the Office after the expiration of the period for response, the period will not be restarted and any appropriate extension fee will be required to render a response timely. The Office letter correcting the error will note that the time period for response remains as set forth in the previous Office action.

See MPEP § 505, § 512, and § 513 for Patent and Trademark Office practice on date stamping documents.

In the event that correspondence from the Office is received late due to (1) delays in the U.S. Postal Service, or (2) because the mail was delayed in leaving the PTO (the postmark date is later than the mail date printed on the correspondence), applicants may petition to reset the period for response, which petitions shall be evaluated according to the guidelines which follow. Where the PTO action involved in the petition was mailed by an examining group, the authority to decide such petitions has been delegated to the Group Director. See 1160 O.G. 14.

**PETITIONS TO RESET A PERIOD FOR  
RESPONSE DUE TO LATE RECEIPT  
OF A PTO ACTION**

The PTO will grant a petition to restart the previously set period for response to a PTO action to run from the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address when the following criteria are met:

- (1) the petition is filed within 2 weeks of the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address;
- (2) a substantial portion of the set response period had elapsed on the date of receipt (e.g., at least 1 month of a 2- or 3-month response period had elapsed); and
- (3) the petition includes (a) evidence showing the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address (e.g., a copy of the PTO action having the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address stamped thereon, a copy of the envelope (which contained the PTO action) having the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address stamped thereon, etc.), and (b) a statement (verified if made by other than a registered practitioner) setting forth the

date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address and explaining how the evidence being presented establishes the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address.

There is no statutory requirement that a shortened statutory period of longer than 30 days to respond to a PTO action be reset due to delay in the mail or in the PTO. However, when a substantial portion of the set response period had elapsed on the date of receipt at the correspondence address (e.g., at least 1 month of a 2- or 3-month period had elapsed), the procedures set forth above for late receipt of a PTO action are available. Where a PTO action was received with less than 2 months remaining in a shortened statutory period of 3 months, the period may be restarted from the date of receipt. Where the period remaining is between 2 and 3 months, the period will be reset only in extraordinary situations; e.g., complex PTO action suggesting submission of comparative data.

**PETITIONS TO RESET A PERIOD FOR  
RESPONSE DUE TO A POSTMARK DATE  
LATER THAN THE MAIL DATE PRINTED  
ON A PTO ACTION**

The PTO will grant a petition to restart the previously set period for response to a PTO action to run from the postmark date shown on the PTO mailing envelope which contained the PTO action when the following criteria are met:

- (1) the petition is filed within 2 weeks of the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address;
- (2) the response period was for payment of the issue fee; or the response period set was 1 month or 30 days; and
- (3) the petition includes (a) evidence showing address (e.g., copy of the PTO action having the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address stamped thereon, etc.), (b) a copy of the envelope which contained the PTO action showing the postmark date, and (c) a statement (verified if made by other than registered practitioner) setting forth the date of receipt of the PTO action at the correspondence address and stating that the PTO action was received in the postmarked envelope.

The provisions of 37 CFR 1.8 and 1.10 apply to the filing of the above-noted petitions with regard to the re-

quirement that the petition be filed within 2 weeks of the date of receipt of the PTO action.

The showings outlined above may not be sufficient if there are circumstances that point to a conclusion that the PTO action may have been delayed after receipt rather than a conclusion that the PTO action was delayed in the mail or in the PTO. <

## 711 Abandonment [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.135. *Abandonment for failure to respond within time limit.*

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to respond within the time period provided under §§ 1.134 and 1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper action as the condition of the case may require. The admission of an amendment not responsive to the last Office action, or refusal to admit the same, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When action by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the case to final action, and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

37 CFR 1.138. *Express abandonment.*

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written declaration of abandonment signed by the applicant and the assignee of record, if any, and identifying the application. An application may also be expressly abandoned by filing a written declaration of abandonment signed by the attorney or agent of record. A registered attorney or agent acting under the provision of § 1.34(a), or of record, may also expressly abandon a prior application as of the filing date granted to a continuing application when filing such a continuing application. Express abandonment of the application may not be recognized by the Office unless it is actually received by appropriate officials in time to act thereon before the date of issue.

Abandonment may be either of the invention or of an application. This discussion is concerned with abandonment of the application for patent.

An abandoned application, in accordance with 37 CFR 1.135 and 1.138, is one which is removed from the Office docket of pending cases through:

### (1) formal abandonment

(a) by the applicant (acquiesced in by the assignee if there be one), or

(b) by the attorney or agent of record including an associate attorney or agent appointed by the principal attorney or agent and whose power is of record but not including a registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity under 37 CFR 1.34(a) except where a continuing application is filed; or

(2) failure of applicant to take appropriate action within a specified time at some stage in the prosecution of the case.

Where an applicant, himself or herself, formally abandons an application and there is a corporate assignee, the acquiescence must be made through an officer whose official position is indicated.

See MPEP § 712 for abandonment for failure to pay issue fee. <

## 711.01 Express or Formal Abandonment [R-1]

>The applicant (acquiesced in by an assignee of record), or the attorney/agent of record, if any, can sign an express abandonment. It is imperative that the attorney or agent of record exercise every precaution in ascertaining that the abandonment of the application is in accordance with the desires and best interests of the applicant prior to signing a letter of express abandonment of a patent application. Moreover, special care should be taken to ensure that the appropriate application is correctly identified in the letter of abandonment.

A letter of abandonment properly signed becomes effective when an appropriate official of the Office takes action thereon. When so recognized, the date of abandonment may be the date of recognition or a different date if so specified in the letter itself. For example, where a continuing application is filed with a request to abandon the prior application as of the filing date accorded the continuing application, the date of the abandonment of the prior application will be in accordance with the request once it is recognized.

Action in recognition of an express abandonment may take the form of an acknowledgment by the examiner or the Publishing Division of the receipt of the express abandonment, indicating that it is in compliance with 37 CFR 1.138. Alternatively, recognition may be no more than the transfer of drawings to a new application pursuant to instructions which include a request to abandon the application containing the drawings to be transferred (see 37 CFR 1.60 and MPEP § 608.02(i)).

It is suggested that divisional applications being submitted under 37 CFR 1.60 be reviewed before filing to ascertain whether the prior application should be abandoned. Care should be exercised in situations such as these as the Office looks on express abandonments as acts of deliberation, intentionally performed.

**711.01**

Applications may be expressly abandoned as provided for in 37 CFR 1.138. When a letter expressly abandoning an application (not in issue) is received, the examiner should acknowledge receipt thereof, and indicate whether it does or does not comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.138.

The filing of a request for a file wrapper continuing application (FWC) under 37 CFR 1.62(g) is considered to be a request to expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date granted the continuing application.

Form Paragraph 7.88 may be used to acknowledge proper express abandonments.

¶ 7.88 *Acknowledge Express Abandonment*

This application is abandoned in view of the letter of express abandonment complying with 37 CFR 1.138 filed on [1].

**Examiner Note:**

1. With the exception of express abandonments resulting from the filing of a file wrapper continuation application or filed with a continuing application, all express abandonments must be signed by all the inventors, the owners of the entire interest, or an attorney of record.

2. The provisions of 37 CFR 1.34 do not apply to express abandonments unless filed with a continuing application.

If the letter expressly abandoning the application does comply with 37 CFR 1.138, the examiner should respond by using form PTOL-1432 and by checking the appropriate boxes which indicate that the letter is in compliance with 37 CFR 1.138 and that the application is being forwarded to the Files Repository. The examiner's signature may appear at the bottom of the form. If such a letter does not comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.138, a fully explanatory letter should be sent.

Form Paragraph 7.89 may be used to acknowledge improper express abandonments.

¶ 7.89 *Letter of Express Abandonment, Improper*

The letter filed on [1] does not comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.138, and therefore is not a proper letter of express abandonment.

**Examiner Note:**

The reasons why the letter fails to comply with 37 CFR 1.138 must be fully explained, e.g., the individual signing the express abandonment is not of record. See the Examiner Notes of form paragraph 7.88.

A letter of express abandonment which is not timely filed (because it was not filed within the period for response), is not acceptable to expressly abandon the application. The letter of express abandonment should be endorsed on the file wrapper and placed in the application file but not formally entered.

The application should be pulled for abandonment after expiration of the minimum permitted period for re-

sponse (see MPEP § 711.04(a)) and applicant notified of the abandonment for failure to respond within the statutory period. See MPEP § 711.02 and § 711.04(c).

In view of the doctrine set forth in *Ex parte Lasscell*, 1884 C.D. 66, 29 O.G. 861 (Comm'r Pat. 1884), an amendment canceling all of the claims, even though said amendment is signed by the applicant himself and the assignee, is not an express abandonment. Such an amendment is regarded as nonresponsive and should not be entered, and applicant should be notified as explained in MPEP § 714.03 to § 714.05. But see MPEP § 608.02(i) for situation where an application is abandoned along with transfer of drawings to a new application.

An attorney or agent not of record in an application may file a withdrawal of an appeal under 37 CFR 1.34(a) except in those instances where such withdrawal would result in abandonment of the application. In such instances the withdrawal of appeal is in fact an express abandonment.

**AFTER NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE**

Letters of abandonment of allowed applications are acknowledged by the Publishing Division.

37 CFR 1.313 provides that an allowed application will not be withdrawn from issue except by approval of the Commissioner, and that after the issue fee has been paid, it will not be withdrawn for any reason except

- (1) mistake on the part of the Office,
- (2) a violation of 37 CFR 1.56 or illegality in the application,
- (3) unpatentability of one or more claims,
- (4) for interference, or
- (5) for abandonment to permit consideration of an

information disclosure statement under 37 CFR 1.97 in a continuing application. See MPEP § 711.05 and § 1308.

In cases where 37 CFR 1.313 precludes giving effect to an express abandonment, the appropriate remedy is a petition, with fee, under 37 CFR 1.183, showing an extraordinary situation where justice requires suspension of 37 CFR 1.313.

**APPLICATION IN INTERFERENCE**

A written declaration of abandonment of the application signed only by an attorney or agent of record, when the application sought to be expressly or formally abandoned is the subject of an interference proceeding under

35 U.S.C. 135, is not effective to terminate the interference, and will not be considered until after *ex parte* prosecution is resumed. In order to be effective to terminate an interference proceeding, an abandonment of the application must be signed by the inventor in person with the written consent of the assignee where there has been an assignment. <

### 711.02 Failure To Take Required Action During Statutory Period [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.135(a) specifies that an application becomes abandoned if applicant "fails to prosecute" his or her application within the fixed statutory period. This failure may result either from (1) failure to respond within the statutory period, or (2) insufficiency of response, i.e., failure to take "complete and proper action, as the condition of the case may require" within the statutory period (37 CFR 1.135(b)).

When an amendment is filed after the expiration of the statutory period, the case is abandoned and the remedy is to petition to revive it. The examiner should notify the applicant or attorney at once that the application has been abandoned by using form letter PTOL-1432. The proper boxes on the form should be checked and the blanks for the dates of the proposed amendment and the Office action completed. The late amendment is endorsed on the file wrapper but not formally entered. (See MPEP § 714.17.)

Form Paragraph 7.90 may also be used.

#### ¶ 7.90 Abandonment, Failure To Respond

This application is abandoned in view of applicant's failure to submit a response to the Office action mailed on [1] within the required period for response.

#### Examiner Note:

1. A letter of abandonment should not be mailed until after the period for requesting an extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) has expired.

2. In *pro se* cases see form paragraph 17.10.

To pass on questions of abandonment, it is essential that the examiner know the dates that mark the beginning and end of the statutory period under varying situations. Applicant's response must reach the Office within the set shortened statutory period for reply dating from the date stamped or printed on the Office letter or within the extended time period obtained under 37 CFR 1.136. (See MPEP § 710 to § 710.06.)

### PETITION TO WITHDRAW HOLDING OF ABANDONMENT BASED ON FAILURE TO RECEIVE OFFICE ACTION

An allegation that an Office action was not received may be considered as a petition for the withdrawal of the holding of abandonment. If the allegation is adequately supported, the petition may be granted and a new Office action mailed. The petition should include sufficient data describing the procedures and controls utilized by the addressee when correspondence is received from the Patent and Trademark Office. If possible the addressee should also point out how these procedures and controls were followed in the situation at hand. The statements of fact setting forth the above must be verified by affidavit under oath before a Notary Public or, in the alternative, by declaration in accordance with 37 CFR 1.68 if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. Prior to 1971, the only relief available to an applicant alleging the nonreceipt of an Office communication, wherein the period for response had expired, was by way of a petition to revive. The Office was not receptive to treating such contentions as petitions for the withdrawal of the holding of abandonment regardless of the evidence presented in support of the contention that the Office action was not received. However, in 1971, the District Court, District of Columbia, in *Delgar Inc. v. Schuyler*, 172 USPQ 513, decided that the Commissioner should mail a new Notice of Allowance in view of the evidence presented in support of the contention that plaintiff's attorney never received the first Notice. <

### 711.02(a) Insufficiency of Response [R-1]

>Abandonment may result from a situation where applicant's reply is within the period for response but is not fully responsive to the Office action. But see MPEP § 710.02(c), par. (c). See also MPEP § 714.02 to § 714.04.

#### ¶ 7.91 Reply is Not Fully Responsive, Extension of Time Suggested

Applicant's reply received [1] is not deemed to be fully responsive to the prior Office action because [2]. Since the period for response set in the prior Office action has expired, this application will become abandoned unless applicant corrects the deficiency and obtains an extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a).

The date on which the corrected response, the petition under 37 CFR 1.136(a), and the petition fee are filed will be the date of the response and also the date for determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. In no case may an applicant respond later than the six month statutory period or obtain an extension

**711.02(b)**

for more than four months beyond the date of response set in an Office action.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, set forth why the examiner considers there to be a failure to take "complete and proper action" within the statutory period.
2. If the response appears to be a bona fide attempt to respond with an inadvertent omission, do not use this paragraph; instead use form paragraph 7.95.<

**711.02(b) Special Situations Involving Abandonment [R-1]**

>The following situations involving questions of abandonment often arise, and should be specially noted:

(1) Copying claims from a patent when not suggested by the Patent and Trademark Office does not constitute a response to the last Office action and will not save the case from abandonment, unless the last Office action relied solely on the patent for the rejection of all the claims rejected in that action.

(2) A case may become abandoned through withdrawal of, or failure to prosecute, an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. See MPEP § 1215.01 to § 1215.04.

(3) Likewise it may become abandoned through dismissal of appeal to C.A.F.C. or civil action, where there was not filed prior to such dismissal an amendment putting the case in condition for issue or fully responsive to the Board's decision. Abandonment results from failure to perfect an appeal as required by C.A.F.C. See MPEP § 1215.05 and § 1216.01.

(4) Where claims are suggested for interference near the end of the period for response running against the case, see MPEP § 2305.

(5) When an FWC application under 37 CFR 1.62 is filed. See MPEP § 201.06(b) and § 711.01.<

**711.02(c) Termination of Proceedings [R-1]**

>"Termination of proceedings" is an expression found in 35 U.S.C. 120. As there stated, a second application is considered to be copending with an earlier case if it is filed before (a) the patenting, (b) the abandonment of, or (c) other termination of proceedings in the earlier case. Before "has consistently been interpreted, in this context, to mean "not later than."

In each of the following situations, proceedings are terminated:

(1)When the issue fee is not paid and the application is abandoned for failure to pay the issue fee, proceedings are

terminated as of the date the issue fee was due and the application is the same as if it were abandoned after midnight on that date (but if the issue fee is later accepted, on petition, the application is revived). See MPEP § 712.

(2) If an application is in interference involving all the claims present in the application as counts and the application loses the interference as to all the claims, then proceedings on that application are terminated as of the date appeal or review by civil action was due if no appeal or civil action was filed.

(3) Proceedings are terminated in an application after decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as explained in MPEP § 1214.06.

(4) Proceedings are terminated after a decision by the court as explained in MPEP § 1216.01.<

**711.03 Reconsideration of Holding of Abandonment; Revival [R-1]**

>When advised of the abandonment of his or her application, applicant may either ask for reconsideration of such holding, if he or she disagrees with it on the basis that there is no abandonment in fact; or petition for revival under 37 CFR 1.137.<

**711.03(a) Holding Based on Insufficiency of Response [R-1]**

>Applicant may deny that the response was incomplete.

While the primary examiner has no authority to act upon an application in which no action by applicant was taken during the period for response, he or she may reverse his or her holding as to whether or not an amendment received during such period was responsive and act on a case of such character which he or she has previously held abandoned. This is not a revival of an abandoned application but merely a holding that the case was never abandoned. See also MPEP § 714.03.<

**711.03(b) Holding Based on Failure To Respond Within Period [R-1]**

>When an amendment reaches the Patent and Trademark Office after the expiration of the period for response and there is no dispute as to the dates involved, no question of reconsideration of a holding of abandonment can be presented.

However, the examiner and the applicant may disagree as to the date on which the period for response commenced to run or ends. In this situation, as in the situation involving sufficiency of response, the applicant may take issue with the examiner and point out to him or her that his or her holding was erroneous. <

### 711.03(c) Petitions Relating to Abandonment [R-2]

#### *37 CFR 1.137. Revival of abandoned application.*

(a) An application abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. A petition to revive an abandoned application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) a proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;
- (2) the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(l); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An application unintentionally abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if the delay was unintentional. A petition to revive an unintentionally abandoned application must be:

- (1) accompanied by a proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or the filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;
- (2) accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) filed either:

- (i) within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or
- (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(c) Any petition pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(d) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive an application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.

(e) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (d) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

Public Law 97-247 provided at 35 U.S.C. 41(a)7, a fee for the revival of an unintentionally abandoned application for a patent or for the unintentionally delayed payment of the fee for issuing each patent unless the petition is filed under 35 U.S.C. 133 or 151 (revival based upon unavoidable delay), in which case a different fee is applicable. These fees are expressly set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(l) and 1.17(m) and provide for a 50% reduction for small entities.

The standard which is applied in situations where the delay resulting in abandonment is unavoidable is the same standard which has previously been applied prior to Public Law 97-247.

37 CFR 1.17(m) provides for a fee for filing each petition for revival, or for acceptance of the delayed payment of an issue fee, where the abandonment or the failure to pay the issue fee is unintentional. The standard which is applied is substantially less rigorous than the standard applied for unavoidable delay petitions. Generally, a statement that the delay was unintentional, plus the proper petition fee, and the proposed response is all that is required. The statement that the delay was unintentional should be made by a person involved with the application during the entire period of delay. A description of the circumstances surrounding the delay should not be submitted unless there is a question whether the delay was unintentional. Where a question arises whether the delay was unintentional, additional information may be required. For example, a letter of express abandonment in the abandoned application would prompt a requirement for further information where the record does not make clear that such a delay was unintentional.

An applicant is not precluded from filing a petition based upon unintentional delay where a petition plus fee based upon unavoidable delay is unsuccessful. In such an instance, a petition to revive on the ground of unintentional abandonment accompanied by the proper fee and the appropriate response could be filed. For this purpose, a mere statement that the delay was unintentional is all that is required.

In the instances where an application is abandoned and revival is based upon unintentional delay or unavoidable delay is desired solely for the purpose of continuity in order to effect the filing of a continuing application, it is not necessary to file the appropriate response.

**711.03(c)**

The filing of the continuing application will be accepted as the appropriate response in such situations. If revival is desired for other than the filing of a continuing application, a complete petition must include the proposed response which resulted in the holding of abandonment. To facilitate action, the petition to revive should include reference to the filing of the continuing application and a letter of express abandonment conditional upon the granting of the petition and of a filing date to the continuing application.

An application which is abandoned for failure to respond within a set period, with no extension fees having been paid, would not require the payment of extension fees as a condition of revival.

**PETITIONS TO WITHDRAW THE HOLDING OF ABANDONMENT**

Prior to 1971, the only relief available to an applicant alleging the nonreceipt of an Office communication, wherein the period for response had expired, was by way of a petition to revive. The Office was not receptive to treating such contentions as petitions for the withdrawal of the holding of abandonment regardless of the evidence presented in support of the contention that the Office action was not received. However, in 1971, the District Court, District of Columbia, in *Delgar Inc. v. Schuyler*, 172 USPQ 513 (D.D.C. 1971), decided that the Commissioner should mail a new Notice of Allowance in view of the evidence presented in support of the contention that plaintiff's attorney never received the first Notice.

While the decision may have been based on the fact that a petition to revive was not available in a case abandoned for failure to pay the issue fee, the reasoning of the court can appropriately be applied to cases abandoned for failure to prosecute. Accordingly, the form of relief provided in *Delgar* is extended to cover the abandonment of an application for failure to respond to an Office action which was not received by the applicant or his or her representative. Henceforth, an allegation that an Office action was not received may be considered as a petition for the withdrawal of the holding of abandonment. If the allegation is adequately supported, the petition may be granted and a new Office action mailed.

In order to minimize costs and burdens to the practitioner and the Office when an application has become abandoned due to a failure to receive an Office action, the Office has modified (1156 O.G. 53, November 16,

1993) the showing required to make a petition to withdraw the holding of abandonment grantable. The showing required to establish the failure to receive an Office action must consist of a statement from the practitioner stating that the Office action was not received by the practitioner and attesting to the fact that a search of the file jacket and docket records indicates that the Office action was not received. A copy of the docket record where the nonreceived Office action would have been entered had it been received and docketed must be attached to and referenced in practitioner's statement.

The showing outlined above may not be sufficient if there are circumstances that point to a conclusion that the Office action may have been lost after receipt rather than a conclusion that the Office action was lost in the mail, e.g., if the practitioner has a history of not receiving Office actions. Two additional procedures are available for reviving an application that has become abandoned due to a failure to respond to an Office Action: (1) a petition based on unintentional abandonment or delay; and (2) a petition based on unavoidable delay.

A petition to revive an abandoned application should not be confused with a petition from an examiner's holding of abandonment. Where the holding of abandonment is predicated on the insufficiency of the response, or disagreement as to controlling dates, the petition from such holding comes under 37 CFR 1.181 and does not require a fee.

**UNAVOIDABLE DELAY PETITIONS**

A decision on a petition to revive an abandoned application under 37 CFR 1.137(a) is based solely on whether a satisfactory showing has been made that the delay was unavoidable (35 U.S.C. 133). A petition to revive is not normally considered unless the petition fee has been paid and will not be granted unless a proposed response to the last Office action has been received (37 CFR 1.137). While a response to a nonfinal action may be either an argument or an amendment under 37 CFR 1.111, a response to a final action "must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each claim so rejected" under 37 CFR 1.113. Accordingly, in any case where a final rejection had been made, the proposed response required for consideration of a petition to revive must be either an appeal or an amendment that cancels all the rejected claims or otherwise *prima facie* places the application in condition for allowance or the

## EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

**711.03(c)**

filing of a continuing application. When a notice of appeal is the appropriate response accompanying a petition to revive, the brief required by 37 CFR 1.192 will be due within the time set by the Commissioner in the decision granting the petition. In those situations where abandonment occurred because of the failure to

file an appeal brief, the proposed response, required for consideration of a petition to revive, must include a proper brief accompanied by the proper fee.

A copy of an appropriate form for use in filing a petition to revive an unavoidably abandoned application is reproduced below.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

711.03(c)

PTO/SB/61 \*\*>6-95<

Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031

Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| <b>PETITION FOR REVIVAL OF AN APPLICATION FOR PATENT ABANDONED UNAVOIDABLY UNDER 37 CFR 1.137(a), 37 CFR 1.155(b) OR 37 CFR 1.316(b)</b>  | Docket Number (Optional) |
| First named inventor: _____   | Group Art Unit: _____    |
| Application Number: _____   | Examiner: _____          |
| Filed: _____  |                          |
| Title: _____  |                          |
| Attention: Office of Petitions<br>Assistant Commissioner for Patents<br>Box DAC<br>Washington, D.C. 20231   |                          |
| <p><b>NOTE:</b> If information or assistance is needed in completing this form, please contact Petitions Information at (703)305-9282.</p> <p>The above-identified application became abandoned for failure to file a timely and proper response to the Office action mailed on _____, which set a _____ month/day period for response. The abandonment date of this application is _____ (i.e., the day after the expiration date of the period set for response plus any extensions of time obtained therefore).</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>APPLICANT HEREBY PETITIONS FOR REVIVAL OF THIS APPLICATION</b></p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> A grantable petition requires the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Petition fee;</li> <li>(2) Proposed response and/or issue fee;</li> <li>(3) Terminal disclaimer with disclaimer fee (if petition is filed more than 6 months after abandonment date) - required for all applications filed before June 8, 1995 and all design applications filed on or after June 8, 1995; and</li> <li>(4) Adequate showing of the cause of unavoidable delay</li> </ul> <p>1. Petition fee</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> small entity - fee \$ _____ (37 CFR 1.17(l)).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> small entity statement enclosed herewith.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> small entity statement previously filed.</li> </ul> </li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> other than small entity - fee \$ _____ (37 CFR 1.17(l)).</li> </ul> <p>2. Proposed response and/or fee</p> <p>A. The proposed response to the above-noted Office action in the form</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> of _____ (identify the type of response):<br/>                             was previously filed on _____.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> is enclosed herewith.</li> </ul> <p>B. The issue fee of \$ _____</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> was previously paid on _____.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> is enclosed herewith.</li> </ul> |                          |
| <p><small>Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 1 hour to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the **&gt; Chief Information Office&lt;, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231**. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.</small></p>   |                          |
| [Page 1 of 3]   |                          |

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

711.03(c)

PTO/SB/61 \*\*>6-95<  
Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

**PETITION FOR REVIVAL OF AN APPLICATION FOR PATENT ABANDONED  
UNAVOIDABLY UNDER 37 CFR 1.137(a), 37 CFR 1.155(b) or 37 CFR 1.316(b)**

**3. Terminal disclaimer with disclaimer fee**

- Since this utility/plant application was filed on or after June 8, 1995, no terminal disclaimer is required.
- Since this petition is filed within 6 months of the abandonment date no terminal disclaimer is required.
- A terminal disclaimer (and disclaimer fee (37 CFR 1.20(d)) of \$\_\_\_\_\_ for a small entity or \$\_\_\_\_\_ for other than a small entity) equivalent to the number of months from abandonment to the filing of this petition is enclosed herewith.

**4. Adequate showing of the cause of unavoidable delay is enclosed.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Telephone  
Number: (\_\_\_\_) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed or printed name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

- Enclosures:
- Declarations establishing unavoidable delay
  - Fee Payment
  - Response
  - Terminal Disclaimer Form
  - Small Entity Status Form
  - \_\_\_\_\_

By completing the Certificate of Mailing, below, the date mailed will be considered the date this correspondence is filed.

**CERTIFICATE OF MAILING [37 CFR 1.8(a)]**

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service on the date shown below with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to the: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box DAC, Washington, D.C. 20231.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed or printed name of person signing Certificate

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

711.03(c)

PTO/SB/61 \*\*>6-95<  
Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

**PETITION FOR REVIVAL OF AN APPLICATION FOR PATENT ABANDONED  
UNAVOIDABLY UNDER 37 CFR 1.137(a), 37 CFR 1.155\*>(b)< OR 37 CFR 1.316(b)**

**NOTE:** The following showing of the cause of unavoidable delay must be in the form of a declaration and must be signed by all applicants and by any other party who is presenting statements concerning the cause of delay.

The undersigned declares that the following statements made of his/her own knowledge are true, and that these statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further, that these statements are made with the knowledge that willful false statements, and the like so made, are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001, Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed or printed name

(In the space provided below, please explain in detail the reasons for the delay in filing a proper response)

*(Please attach additional sheets if additional space is necessary)*

[Page 3 of 3]

## EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

### 711.03(c)

In all applications filed before June 8, 1995 and in all design applications filed on or after June 8, 1995, which application has been abandoned for at least 6 months before the filing of a granted petition to revive, an appropriate terminal disclaimer is required 37 CFR 1.137(c).

When a terminal disclaimer is a necessary component of the petition, the period to be disclaimed must equal the number of months between the date of

abandonment and the date a grantable petition is filed. The date of abandonment is the date the period for response has expired (see MPEP § 711.04(a)). This is normally the end of the 3-month shortened statutory period. The requirement for a terminal disclaimer should not be viewed as a substitute for the promptness requirement of 37 CFR 1.137(a). Moreover, the terminal disclaimer should employ the format shown below.

MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE

711.03(c)

\*\*>PTO/SB/63 (6-95)<

Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

**TERMINAL DISCLAIMER TO ACCOMPANY PETITION**  
(Period of disclaimer to be completed by Petitions Examiner)

Docket Number (Optional)

In re Application of:

Name:

Application Number:

Filed:

For:

The owner>\*< \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ percent interest in the above-identified application hereby disclaims a terminal part of the term of the patent equivalent to the period of abandonment of the above-identified application. This terminal disclaimer applies to any patent granted on the above-identified application or on any application which is entitled to the benefit of the filing date of this application under 35 U.S.C. 120. This disclaimer is binding upon the grantee, its successors or assigns.

Check either box 1 or 2 below, if appropriate.

- 1.  For submissions on behalf of an organization (e.g. corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.), the undersigned is empowered to act on behalf of the organization.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further, that these statements are made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001, Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

- 2.  The undersigned is an attorney of record.

\_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature

\_\_\_\_\_ Typed or printed name

- Terminal disclaimer fee under 37 CFR 1.20(d) included.

> \*Certification under 37 CFR 3.73(b) is required if terminal disclaimer is signed by the assignee.<

**THE STATEMENT BELOW IS FOR OFFICE USE ONLY**

In accordance with the decision granting the petition filed on \_\_\_\_\_, this terminal disclaimer is accepted. The period of abandonment specified above has been accepted as equivalent to \_\_\_\_\_ months.

\_\_\_\_\_ Petitions Examiner

**Burden Hour Statement:** This form is estimated to take 1 hour to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the \*\*>Chief Information Office<, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231\*\*. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Applicants may petition under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.183 for a waiver of the requirement that a period equivalent to the period of abandonment be disclaimed if it can be shown that an extraordinary situation exists in which justice requires waiver of this requirement.

In situations where petitions to revive are not grantable because of insufficient evidence submitted or petitioner's failure to comply with certain requirements, the Office may dismiss those petitions with an indication as to the missing items and warn petitioners that if reconsideration is desired a renewed petition supplying the omissions has to be filed within 2 months from the date of the decision or such time as may be set in the dismissal as being the appropriate deadline for requesting reconsideration. In those situations where petitioners require more time to gather additional evidence or items needed for reconsideration, an extension of time of up to 4 months may be obtained under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). The filing of a renewed petition within the period specified in the decision or within the extended period permitted under 37 CFR 1.136(a) will satisfy the promptness requirement of petitions under the unavoidable standard.

Upon failure to timely file a renewed petition under the unavoidable standard, the Office will require a showing of unavoidable delay for the entire period of abandonment. To be entitled to relief under the unavoidable standard, petitioner must be able to show unavoidable delay from a time prior to abandonment to the filing of a grantable petition. *In re Application of Takeo*, 17 USPQ2d 1155 (Comm'r Pat. 1990).

It should also be recognized that a petition to revive an abandoned application under 37 CFR 1.137 alleging nonreceipt of the Office action may be treated as a request to withdraw the holding of abandonment. However, any petition fee, filed with a 37 CFR 1.137 petition so treated, may be returned or credited to petitioner's account by indicating in the decision that a request should be made to the Office of Finance.

The granting of a petition to revive does not necessarily mean that the proposed response is complete. The Office of Petitions will normally route the application for determining if the response to a final Office action places the application in condition for allowance before granting a petition to revive. The patent examiner is instructed that if the response places the application in

condition for allowance, the patent examiner should write in the margin of the response "OK to enter upon revival." If, on the other hand, the response would not place the application in condition for allowance, the patent examiner is instructed to complete form PTOL-303 and return the unmailed form to the Office of Petitions with the application. If the petition is otherwise grantable and the patent examiner indicates that the response places the application in condition for allowance, the petition will be granted. If such an amendment does not place the application into condition for allowance, the petition will not be granted. A copy of the form PTOL-303 is not mailed with the decision on the petition but merely serves as an advisory to the Office of Petitions regarding the decision of the patent examiner on the amendment after final rejection.

Where the proposed response is to a nonfinal Office action, the petition may be granted if the response appears to be bona fide. After revival of the application, the patent examiner may, upon more detailed review, determine that the response is bona fide but lacking in some respect. In this limited situation, the patent examiner should send out a letter giving a 1-month (or 30 days in the event that a 1-month period for response would be less than 30 days) shortened statutory period in order to correct the error or omission. Extensions of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) are permitted. If applicant does not complete the response within the shortened statutory period including any extension, the application is again abandoned.

See MPEP § 712 for a petition for late payment of the issue fee.

#### UNINTENTIONAL ABANDONMENT

A decision on a petition to revive an unintentionally abandoned application under 37 CFR 1.137(b) is based substantially on whether the statement that the delay was unintentional is present along with the required fee and the proposed response. Generally, nothing else is required unless there is reason to believe that the abandonment was intentional such as a letter of express abandonment being of record in the abandoned application. In such an instance, the Office might inquire as to the circumstances surrounding the abandonment in order to clarify that the abandonment was, in fact, unintentional.

A petition to revive based upon unintentional delay does not require the submission of a terminal disclaimer. 37 CFR 1.137(c) specifically states that such disclaimers

**711.03(c)**

are only required when a grantable petition based on unavoidable delay is not filed within 6 months of the date of abandonment in all applications filed before June 8, 1995 and in all design applications filed on or after June 8, 1995.

If a petition to revive based upon unavoidable delay is unsuccessful, an applicant is not estopped from filing a petition based upon unintentional delay so long as such petition is filed within 1 year of the date of abandonment of the application or within 3 months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive based upon avoidable delay, which was filed within 1 year of the date of abandonment of the application. The petition must include a statement that the delay was unintentional, a proposed response if not filed previously, and the required petition fee. The statement that the delay was unintentional must be verified if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office. The 3-month period referred to above which is measured from the date of the first decision on a petition to revive based upon unavoidable delay is extendable for a period of up to 4 months under 37 CFR 1.136(a), but no further extensions under 37 CFR 1.136(b) will be granted.

The manner of determining the end of the 1-year period set forth in 37 CFR 1.137(b) is the same as that for determining the date of abandonment. If the 1-year anniversary falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, the 1-year anniversary date is deemed to be the next succeeding business day. The 1-year period would be over after midnight of the 1-year anniversary date.

A copy of an appropriate form for use in filing a petition to revive an unintentionally abandoned application is reproduced below.

37 CFR 1.137(b) is permissive in the sense that it does not require a showing of unavoidable delay and does not require a terminal disclaimer, but it is not meant to encourage delay. Applicants who have received a Notice of Abandonment in their applications sometimes calculate the time when the 1-year period for filing a petition for unintentional abandonment ends with a view toward delaying the filing of a petition until the end of the period. Applicants are not permitted to do this. The Office has amended 37 CFR 1.137(b) (effective \*\*>Sept. 20<, 1993) to require applicant to state that the delay was unintentional, rather than the abandonment was unintentional. A person seeking revival should not make a statement that the delay was unintentional unless the

entire delay, including the delay from the date it was discovered that the application was abandoned up until the petition to revive was actually filed, was unintentional. For example, a statement that the delay was unintentional would not be proper when an applicant becomes aware of an abandonment and then intentionally delays filing a petition to revive the application under 37 CFR 1.137.

Applicants are cautioned against intentionally delaying the filing of a petition to revive an abandoned application because it may preclude any revival from an abandoned status. Applicants have delayed filing a petition under the unintentional standard until after expiration of the 1-year period because of a miscalculation of the 1-year period. This miscalculation resulted in the applicant being unable to show that the delay was unavoidable. *In re Application of S*, 8 USPQ2d 1630 (Comm'r Pat. 1988). Note that 37 CFR 1.137(a) requires that petitions under that section of the Rule be promptly filed after the application is notified, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment.

Upon failure to timely file a renewed petition under the unintentional standard (see 37 CFR 1.137(d), 1.155(e), 1.316(e), and 1.317(e)), petitioner may be subject to a loss of the right to proceed under the unintentional standard if more than 1 year lapsed between the date of abandonment and the date the renewed petition is filed.

The unintentional provisions specified in 37 CFR 1.137(b) apply to applications abandoned under 37 CFR 1.53(d). Prior to \*\*>Sept. 20<, 1993, 37 CFR 1.137(b) specified that unintentional revival was not permitted if the application had been abandoned under 37 CFR 1.53(d). However, on November 5, 1990, the Commissioner waived, under 37 CFR 1.183, that exception as to applicability of petitions under the unintentional standards to applications abandoned under 37 CFR 1.53(d). See "Petitions to Revive Patent Applications Waiver of Provisions of 37 CFR 1.137(b)," 1121 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office 6 (December 4, 1990).

**PETITIONS UNDER 37 CFR 1.183 TO WAIVE  
THE 1-YEAR TIME PERIOD REQUIREMENT  
IN 37 CFR 1.137(b), 1.155(c), AND 1.316(c)**

Petitions to revive an unintentionally abandoned application (37 CFR 1.137(b)) or to accept an unintentionally late paid issue fee (37 CFR 1.155(c) or 1.136(c)) must be filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

711.03(c)

\*\*>PTO/SB/64 (6-95)<  
 Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031  
 Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

**PETITION FOR REVIVAL OF AN APPLICATION FOR PATENT ABANDONED  
 UNINTENTIONALLY UNDER 37 CFR 1.137(b), 37 CFR 1.155(c) OR 37 CFR 1.316(c)**

Docket Number (Optional)

First named inventor:

\*>Application< No.:

Group Art Unit:

Filed:

Examiner:

Title:

Attention: Office of Petitions  
 Assistant Commissioner for Patents  
 Box DAC  
 Washington, D.C. 20231

NOTE: If information or assistance is needed in completing this form, please contact Petitions Information at (703)305-9282.

The above-identified application became abandoned for failure to file a timely and proper response to the Office action mailed on \_\_\_\_\_, which set a \_\_\_\_\_ month/day period for response. The abandonment date of this application is \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e., the day after the expiration date of the period set for response plus any extensions of time obtained therefore).

**APPLICANT HEREBY PETITIONS FOR REVIVAL OF THIS APPLICATION**

NOTE: A grantable petition requires the following items:

- (1) Petition fee
- (2) Proposed response and/or issue fee
- (3) Verified statement that the abandonment was unintentional

1. Petition fee

- Small entity - fee \$\_\_\_\_\_ (37 CFR 1.17(m))
  - Small entity statement enclosed herewith.
  - Small entity statement previously filed.
- Other than small entity - fee \$\_\_\_\_\_ (37 CFR 1.17(m))

2. Proposed response and/or fee

A. The proposed response and/or fee to the above-noted Office action in the form of \_\_\_\_\_ (identify type of response):

- has been filed previously on \_\_\_\_\_.
- is enclosed herewith.

B. The issue fee of \$ \_\_\_\_\_

- has been paid previously on \_\_\_\_\_.
- is enclosed herewith.

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 1 hour to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the \*\*>Chief Information Office<, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231\*\*. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

711.03(c)

\*\*>PTO/SB/64 (6-95)<

Approved for use through 07/31/96. OMB 0651-0031  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

3. Verified statement

The delay caused by the abandonment of the application was unintentional.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application, any patent issuing thereon, or any patent to which this verified statement is directed.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Telephone  
Number: (\_\_\_\_) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed or printed name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

- Enclosures:
- Response
  - Fee Payment
  - Small Entity Status Form
  - \_\_\_\_\_

By completing the Certificate of Mailing, below, the date mailed will be considered the date this correspondence is filed.

**CERTIFICATE OF MAILING [37 CFR 1.8(a)]**

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service on the date shown below with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to the: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box DAC, Washington, DC 20231.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed or printed name of person signing Certificate

The prohibition against requests for waiver previously found in 37 CFR 1.137(b), 1.155(c), 1.316(c), and 1.317(c) have been deleted, effective \*\*>Sept. 20<, 1993. However, applicants are cautioned that waiver of the 1-year deadline under the unintentional standard will continue to be subject to strictly limited conditions. The Office has determined that under certain very limited conditions, the interests of the patent system would be better served by waiving the 1-year time period.

These very limited conditions arise when an application becomes abandoned due to an action or inaction by applicant and the Patent and Trademark Office performs a documented and Official act (e.g., by issuing an Official document) which could lead a reasonable individual to conclude that the action or inaction was appropriate. If this conclusion is a contributing factor in the applicant's failure to realize the "true" abandoned status of his application in time to file a petition under one of the above-noted subsections, then conditions exist under which a 37 CFR 1.183 petition will be considered.

For example, if an applicant files papers for a continuing application under 37 CFR 1.60 or 1.62 on a date when the parent application is abandoned (e.g., the applicant neglected to obtain an extension of time in the parent application), the requirements of these regulations are not satisfied and the papers should not be processed into an application. However, if in spite of this error the Office issues a filing receipt for the continuing application, a reasonable individual could conclude that the continuing application had been properly filed on a date when the parent application was pending. Further, if the lack of copendency between the parent and the continuing applications is not discovered until after 1 year from the date on which the parent application became abandoned, the opportunity to obtain copendency by reviving the parent application under 37 CFR 1.137(b) is lost. As an additional example, if an applicant submits a check for payment of the issue fee and the payment is improper (e.g., the check is not timely submitted or is returned to the Office unpaid due to insufficient funds), the application should be held abandoned. However, if in spite of the improper issue fee payment the Office issues the application as a patent, a reasonable individual could conclude that the issue fee payment had been proper. Further, if the improper issue fee payment is not discovered until after one year from the date on which the application became abandoned, the opportu-

nity to request acceptance of a late paid issue fee under 37 CFR 1.155(c) or 1.316(c) is lost.

The abandonment problems described in the above noted examples are clearly attributed to an error on the part of the applicant. Nevertheless, such a problem could be aggravated when the Office performs a documented and Official act which, in the circumstances recounted above, may be a contributing factor in the loss of an opportunity to rectify this problem by filing a petition under one of the above-noted subsections. In light of these factors, the Commissioner will exercise his authority under 37 CFR 1.183 to waive the 1-year period requirement for filing a petition pursuant to 37 CFR 1.137(b), 1.155(c) or 1.316(c) providing the following strictly limited conditions are present:

(1) The applicant's action or inaction which caused the application to become abandoned was clearly an unintentional oversight which resulted from a bona fide attempt, as evidenced by Patent and Trademark Office records, to comply with patent statutes, rules, and procedures in order to keep the application pending as desired;

(2) The Office performed a documented and Official act which could lead a reasonable individual to conclude that the action or inaction was proper and this conclusion was contributing factor in the applicant's failure to realize the true abandoned status of his application in time to file a petition under one of the above-noted subsections;

(3) A petition under 37 CFR 1.183 and one of the above-noted subsections is filed promptly after the applicant is notified by the Office or otherwise becomes aware of the "true" abandoned status of the application; and

(4) If the period of delay is over 6 months, the petition must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under 37 CFR 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part, equivalent to the period of abandonment, of the term of any patent granted on the application or on any application entitled to the benefit of the filing date of the application under 35 U.S.C. 120.

Applicants should note that this is intended to be a very limited extension of the Commissioner's discretion in exercising his authority to waive the 1-year period required under the above-mentioned subsections.

**711.03(c)**

**NOTIFICATION OF CHANGE OF ADDRESS**

Applications have become abandoned as a consequence of a change of correspondence address therein, where an Office action is mailed to the old, uncorrected address and fails to reach the addressee sufficiently early to permit filing of a timely response. One factor for consideration in deciding petitions under 37 CFR 1.137 to revive such applications is the degree of care that has been exercised in adhering to the requirement (see MPEP § 601.03) for prompt notification in each concerned application of the change of address. In such instances, the showing of the cause of unavoidable delay must include an adequate showing that a timely notification of the change of address was filed in the application concerned, and in a manner reasonably calculated to call attention to the fact that it was a notification of a change of address. The mere inclusion, in a paper filed in an application for another purpose, of an address differing from the previously provided correspondence address, without mention of the fact that an address change was being made, ordinarily will not be considered sufficient notification of a change of address. If no such notification was filed, or was filed belatedly, the showing must include an adequate explanation of that failure or delay. A showing that notification was made on a paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office listing plural applications as being affected will not be considered to constitute a proper notification. The showing should include an indication of whether the Postal Service was notified of the change of address and, if so, the date of that notification.

**OFFICE ACTION — TIMELY RESPONSE**

The Patent and Trademark Office has in the past received an excessively large volume of petitions to revive based primarily on the late filing of amendments and other responses to official actions. Many of these petitions indicate that the late filing was due to unusual mail delays; however, the records generally show that the filing was only 2 or 3 days late.

In order to alleviate, for applicants and the Office, the problems and expenditures of time and effort occasioned by abandonments and petitions to revive, it is suggested that unless the certificate of mailing provisions of 37 CFR 1.8 or 37 CFR 1.10 are used that responses to Office actions be mailed to the Patent and Trademark Office at least 1, and preferably 2, week(s) prior to the

expiration of the period within which a response is required. This suggestion is made in the interest of improving efficiency, thereby providing better service to the public.

**CONDITIONAL PETITION TO REVIVE FOR APPLICANTS RESIDING IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES AND MAILING BY AIR CARRIER SERVICE**

Since applications that became abandoned unintentionally present burdens to both the Patent and Trademark Office and the applicant, a simplified procedure has been devised to alleviate these burdens when the abandonment results from a delay in the mails from foreign countries. This procedure provides for an automatic petition to revive or petition to accept the delayed payment of issue fee when mailing by using an air carrier service.

The Certificate of Mailing procedures under 37 CFR 1.8 and 37 CFR 1.10 can only be used in the United States of America. Therefore, it is suggested that when a communication, complying with the circumstances enumerated below, is mailed from a foreign country to the Patent and Trademark Office, a conditional petition be attached to the communication.

However, foreign applicants are expected to avail themselves of the fee extension of time provisions under 37 CFR 1.136(a) before they rely upon a conditional petition to revive. Therefore, the Conditional Petition to Revive is only appropriate when the period for response cannot be extended under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

If the communication is received in the Patent and Trademark Office after the due date and the application becomes abandoned, the conditional petition will become effective, subject to the following requirements. The petition must include (1) payment of the appropriate fee or an authorization to charge a deposit account for any required fees, including the petition fee, and (2) an oath or declaration signed by the person mailing the communication and also signed by the applicant or his or her registered attorney or agent. The wording of the petition is dependent on the type of air carrier service used to forward the communication.

The oath and declaration must identify the type of air carrier service used and set forth the number of days expected for delivery by that air carrier service from the

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

711.03(d)

point of origin to the United States Patent and Trademark Office and must be deposited with that air carrier service at least the specified number of days prior to the due date. Any mail delay beyond the time stated will be considered to constitute unavoidable delay and sufficient cause to grant a petition to revive (35 U.S.C. 133) or a petition to accept delayed payment of an issue fee (35 U.S.C. 151). For example, if a response was due in the Patent and Trademark Office on June 17, 1987, and mail is expected to take two days by the air carrier service designated, the communication and conditional petition must be posted no later than June 15, 1987 in order for the conditional petition to be effective.

The circumstances under which this procedure may be used are those where the communication, if timely filed, (1) would be a proper and complete response to an action or request by the Patent and Trademark Office, and (2) would stop a period for response from continuing to run. Accordingly, this procedure would be appropriate for:

- (1) A response to a nonfinal Office action.
- (2) A response to a final Office action in the form of an amendment that cancels all rejected claims or otherwise *prima facie* places the application in condition for allowance.
- (3) A notice of appeal and requisite fee.
- (4) An appeal brief, in triplicate, and requisite fee.
- (5) An issue fee.

Examples for which this procedure would not be appropriate and will not apply include the following types of communications when they are forwarded to the Patent and Trademark Office.

- (1) Application papers.
- (2) A response to a final Office action other than that indicated in categories 2 and 3, above.
- (3) Extensions of time.
- (4) Amendments under 37 CFR 1.312.
- (5) Priority documents.

Normal petition practices are not affected in those situations where this procedure is either not elected or appropriate.

A suggested format for the conditional petition is shown below:

CONDITIONAL PETITION TO REVIVE

Applicant(s)  
Application No.  
Filing Date:  
For:

I hereby certify that the attached communication is being deposited in the mail outside the United States as air mail (here specifically designate the type of air carrier service and the time stated by that carrier service required to deliver mail from the point of origin to the United States Patent and Trademark Office) in an envelope addressed to : Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington D.C. 20231, on (date) from (location) by (name of individual mailing the communication).

In the event that such communication is not timely filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, it is requested that this paper be treated as a petition and that the delay be held unavoidable. The petition fee of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ is enclosed.

The undersigned declares further that all statements made herein are true, based upon the best available information; and further, that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 or Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereof.

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| _____  | _____  |
| (date) | (Signature of applicant or signature and registration number of a Registered Representative) |
| _____  | _____  |
| (date) | (Signature of person mailing, if other than the above)                                       |

The procedure for handling applications becoming abandoned due to late filing of a communication having a conditional petition attached thereto is as follows:

- (1) Forward the papers and the application file wrapper to the Office of Petitions.
- (2) Do not mail a form PTOL-1432 or forward the file wrapper to the Abandoned File Unit.
- (3) In the event that the application is revived, the file wrapper will be returned to the forwarding group for further action. In view of the availability of 37 CFR 1.136(a), the Certificate of Mailing practice, and the Express Mail practice, the Conditional petition to revive practice is not expected to be used frequently.

**711.03(d) Examiner's Statement on Petition To Set Aside Examiner's Holding [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.181 states that the examiner "may be directed by the Commissioner to furnish a written

**711.03(e)**

statement within a specific time setting forth the reasons for his or her decision upon the matters averred in the petition, supplying a copy thereof to the petitioner." Unless requested, however, such a statement should not be prepared. See MPEP § 1002.01. <

**711.03(e) Petitions Relating to Revival of Abandoned Provisional Applications [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.139 *Revival of provisional application.*

(a) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) the required response unless it has been previously filed;
- (2) the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(l); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if the delay was unintentional. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be:

- (1) accompanied by the required response unless it has been previously filed;
- (2) accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
  - (i) within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned; or
  - (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned.

(c) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive a provisional application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.

(d) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section and the time period set forth in paragraph (c) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

37 CFR 1.139(a) sets forth the procedure for reviving an abandoned provisional application where the delay was unavoidable. 37 CFR 1.139(b) sets forth the procedure for reviving an abandoned provisional application where the delay was unintentional. The requirements for reviving an abandoned provisional application set forth in 37 CFR 1.139 parallel the existing requirements set forth in 37 CFR 1.137. See MPEP § 711.03(c).

A provisional application is abandoned, by operation of law, 12 months from its filing date, 35 U.S.C. 111(b)(5). A provisional application may be abandoned prior to 12 months from its filing date for failure to respond to an Office requirement, e.g., failure to submit the filing fee and/or cover sheet. Applicant may petition to have an abandoned provisional application revived as a pending provisional application for a period of no longer than 12 months from the filing date of the provisional application where the delay was unavoidable or unintentional. It would be permissible to file a petition for revival later than 12 months from the filing date of the provisional application but only to revive the application for the 12-month period following the filing of the provisional application. Thus, even if the petition were granted to establish the pendency up to the end of the 12-month period, the provisional application would not be considered pending after 12 months from its filing date. <

**711.04 Disposition of Abandoned Applications [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.14(b) states that "complete applications (§ 1.51(a)) which are abandoned may be destroyed after 20 years from their filing date, except those to which particular attention has been called and which have been marked for preservation. Abandoned applications will not be returned."

As explained in MPEP § 1302.07, a retention label is used to indicate applications not to be destroyed. <

**711.04(a) Pulling and Forwarding Abandoned Applications [R-1]**

>The files of abandoned applications are pulled and forwarded to the Files Repository on a biweekly basis

1 month after the full 6-month statutory period has expired. However, the date of abandonment is after midnight of the date on which the set shortened statutory period, including any extensions under 37 CFR 1.136, expired.

They should be carefully scrutinized by the appropriate examiner to verify that they are actually abandoned. A check should be made of files containing a decision of the Board of Appeals for the presence of allowed claims to avoid their being erroneously sent to the Files Repository.

Although the abandoned files are not pulled until the maximum permissible period for which an extension of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) plus 1 month has expired, the date of the abandonment is after midnight of the date the period for response actually expired. This is normally the end of the 3 month shortened statutory period.<

#### **711.04(b) Ordering of Patented and Abandoned Files [R-1]**

>In examination of an application it is sometimes necessary to inspect the application papers of a previously patented or abandoned application. It is always necessary to do so in the examination of a reissue application.

Recently patented and abandoned files are stored at the Files Repository located near the other PTO buildings in Crystal City. Older files are housed in a warehouse located in Suitland, Maryland.

Patented and abandoned files are ordered by means of a PALM video display transaction. To place such an order, the examiner is required to input his/her PALM location code, employee number, and patent number(s) and/or serial number(s) of the file(s) that are needed. After transmission of the request transaction by the examiner, a "response" screen appears on the video display terminal which informs him/her of the status of the request for each file. The examiner is informed that the request (1) is accepted; (2) is accepted, but for which the file is located at the Suitland warehouse (in which case delivery time is increased); or that the request is not accepted since (3) the file is not located at the repository or warehouse; (4) a previous request for the file has not yet been filled; or (5) the patent or serial number inputted is not valid.

Periodically each day, personnel at the Files Repository perform a PALM print transaction which produces a

list of all accepted requests in patent number order and, for requests for abandoned files, in serial number order. The printed record of each request is detached from the list when its associated file is found. It is then stapled to it. Throughout the day, periodic deliveries of files are made directly to the offices of their requestors by Files Repository personnel. Upon delivery of files at the various locations, files that are ready to be returned to the repository are picked up.

With the exception of certain older files, the drawings of patented and abandoned files, if any, are now stored within their respective application file jackets. Since it is desired not to separate one from the other, both the file and its drawings are delivered when a file is ordered.<

#### **711.04(c) Notifying Applicants of Abandonment [R-1]**

>The Patent Examining Corps currently mails to the correspondence address of record, a Notice of Abandonment Form PTOL-1432 in all applications which become abandoned in the Corps for failure to prosecute. However, in no case will mere failure to receive a notice of abandonment affect the status of an abandoned application.

This procedure should enable applicants to take appropriate and diligent action to reinstate an application inadvertently abandoned for failure to timely respond to an official communication. In most cases, a petition to revive under 37 CFR 1.137 will be the appropriate remedy. It may be that a response to the Office action was mailed to the Office with a certificate of mailing declaration as a part thereof (MPEP § 512) but was not received in the Office. In this instance, adequate relief may be available by means of a petition to withdraw the holding of abandonment.

In any instance, if action is not taken promptly after receiving the notice of abandonment, appropriate relief may not be granted. If a lack of diligent action is predicated on the contention that neither the Office action nor the notice of abandonment was received, one may presume that there is a problem with the correspondence address of record. Accordingly, attention is directed to MPEP § 402 and § 601.03 dealing with changes of address. In essence, it is imperative that a paper notifying the Office of a change of address be filed promptly in each application in which the correspondence address is to be changed.

**711.05**

If an application is abandoned for more than 6 months, a terminal disclaimer may be required (37 CFR 1.137(c)).<

**711.05 Letter of Abandonment Received After Application is Allowed [R-1]**

>Receipt of a letter of abandonment while an application is allowed is acknowledged by the Publishing Division.

An express abandonment arriving after the issue fee has been paid will not be accepted without a showing of one of the reasons indicated in 37 CFR 1.313(b), or else a showing under 37 CFR 1.183 justifying suspension of 37 CFR 1.313.<

**711.06 Abstracts, Abbreviations, and Defensive Publications [R-1]**

>Abstracts were prepared and published in accordance with the Notice of January 25, 1949, 619 O.G. 258. Each abstract includes a summary of the disclosure of the abandoned application, and in applications having drawings, a figure of the drawing. The publication of such abstracts was discontinued in 1953.

**ABBREVIATURES**

Abbreviations were prepared and published in accordance with the procedure indicated in the Notice of October 13, 1964, 808 O.G. 1. Each abbreviation contains a specific portion of the disclosure of the abandoned application, preferably a detailed representative claim, and, in applications having drawings, a figure of the drawing. The publication of such abbreviations was discontinued in 1965.

**DEFENSIVE PUBLICATIONS**

The Defensive Publication Program, set forth in 37 CFR 1.139, which provided for the publication of the abstract of the technical disclosure of a pending application if the applicant waived his or her rights to an enforceable patent, was removed from the rules effective May 8, 1985, in view of the applicant's ability to obtain a Statutory Invention Registration.

An application is laid open for public inspection laid open under the Defensive Publication Program and the applicant provisionally abandons the application, retaining rights to an interference for a limited period of 5 years from the earliest effective U.S. filing date.

The defensive publication of an application precluded a continuing application (divisional, continuation-in-part, or continuation) filed under 35 U.S.C. 120 from being entitled to the benefit of the filing date of the defensively published application unless a continuing application is filed within 30 months after the earliest effective U.S. Filing date. Where a similar application is not filed until after expiration of the 30-month period, the application was examined, but it may not claim the benefit of the earlier filing date of the defensive publication application. The examiner should require the cancellation of any claim or statement intended to obtain the benefit of the earlier filing date in such cases, objecting to its inclusion on the ground of estoppel.

If a first continuing application was filed within 30 months from the earliest U.S. effective filing date of the application published under the Defensive Publication Program, later copending continuing applications (such as divisions if restriction is required during the prosecution of the first continuing application) were not barred and could be filed during the pendency of the first continuing application, even though beyond the 30 month period, without loss of the right to claim the benefit of the filing date of the Defensive Publication application.

The Defensive Publication Abstract and a selected figure of the drawing, if any, were published in the *Official Gazette*. Defensive Publication Search Copies, containing the defensive publication abstract and suitable drawings, if any, were provided for the application file, the Public Search Room and the examiner's search files.

The defensive publication application files are maintained in the Record Room.

*Defensive Publication Application Interferences*

During the 5-year period from its earliest U.S. effective filing date, interferences may be declared between defensive publication applications and other applications and/or patents in accordance with existing interference rules and procedures.

Examiners search the Defensive Publication Search Copies in the regular patent search files, when making patentability searches. Where the claims of a defensive publication application recite substantially the same subject matter as the allowed claims, the allowed claims



payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment and must be accompanied by:

- (1) The issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) The fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(l)); and
- (3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

- (1) Accompanied by the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) Accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));
- (3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(d) In all applications filed before June 8, 1995, any petition pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.<

35 U.S.C. 41(a)7 establishes two different fees for filing petitions with different standards to accept the delayed payment of the fee for issuing a patent. The fees set forth in this section are due on filing the petition. Since the section provides for two alternative fees with different standards, the section permits the applicant seeking acceptance of a delayed payment of the fee for issuing a patent to choose one or the other of the fees and standards.

Under 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(7) the Commissioner has established time limits within which petitions under each of the different fees and standards can be filed. 37 CFR 1.17(m) establishes the fee for filing each petition for acceptance of the delayed payment of an issue fee where the abandonment or the failure to pay the issue fee is unintentional. In order to prevent abuse and injury to the public the Commissioner can require a terminal disclaimer in all applications filed before June 8, 1995 equivalent to the period of abandonment and require applicants to act promptly after becoming aware of the abandonment. 37 CFR 1.17(l) establishes the fee for filing a petition under 35 U.S.C. 151 in accordance with standards requiring that the delay in payment of the issue fee be unavoidable. Under this section, a petition accompanied by either the fee under 37 CFR 1.17(m) or the fee under 37 CFR 1.17(l) would not be granted where the failure to pay the fee for issuing the patent was intentional as opposed to being unintentional or unavoidable.

37 CFR 1.316 implements the statutory provisions of 35 U.S.C. 41(a) with regard to petition fees for revival of applications abandoned for failure to pay the issue fee. Paragraph (b) provides for petitions for revival with the fee in 37 CFR 1.17(1) where the delay in payment was unavoidable, indicates that the petition must be promptly filed, and states when showings that the delay was unavoidable must be verified. Paragraph (c) provides for petitions for revival with the fee in 37 CFR 1.17(m) where the delay was unintentional. Paragraph (c) also indicates when such petitions can be filed. Paragraph (d) requires a terminal disclaimer in all applications filed before June 8, 1995 if a grantable petition under 37 CFR 1.316(b) is not filed within 6 months of the date of abandonment. The period to be disclaimed must equal the number of months between the date of abandonment and the date a grantable petition is filed. The terminal disclaimer should employ the format referred to in MPEP § 711.03(c). See MPEP § 711.03(c) for a general discussion of petitions relating to abandonment.

## 713 Interviews [R-1]

>The personal appearance of an applicant, attorney, or agent before the examiner or a telephone conversation between such parties presenting matters for the examiner's consideration is considered an interview.<

**713.01 General Policy, How Conducted [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.133. *Interviews.*

(a) Interviews with examiners concerning applications and other matters pending before the Office must be had in the examiners' rooms at such times, within office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of pending applications will not be had before the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance.

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135.

Interviews are permissible on any working day except during periods of overtime work.

An interview should normally be arranged for in advance, as by letter, telegram or telephone call, in order to insure that the primary examiner and/or the examiner in charge of the application will be present and available in the Office. When a second art unit is involved (Patentability Report), the availability of the second examiner should also be checked. (See MPEP § 705.01(f).) An appointment for interview once arranged should be kept. Many applicants and attorneys plan trips to Washington in reliance upon such appointments. When, after an appointment has been made, circumstances compel the absence of the examiner or examiners necessary to an effective interview, the other party should be notified immediately so that substitute arrangements may be made.

When a telephone call is made to an examiner and it becomes evident that a lengthy discussion will ensue or that the examiner needs time to restudy the situation, the call should be terminated with an agreement that the examiner will call back at a specified time. Such a call and all other calls originated by the examiner should be made through the FTS (Federal Telecommunications System) even though a collect call had been authorized. It is helpful if amendments and other papers, such as the letter of transmittal, include the complete telephone number with area code and extension, preferably near the signature of the writer.

The unexpected appearance of an attorney or applicant requesting an interview without any previous notice to the examiner may well justify his refusal of the interview at that time, particularly in an involved case.

An examiner's suggestion of allowable subject matter may justify indicating the possibility of an interview to accelerate early agreement on allowable claims.

An interview should be had only when the nature of the case is such that the interview could serve to develop and clarify specific issues and lead to a mutual understanding between the examiner and the applicant, and thereby advance the prosecution of the application. Thus the attorney when presenting himself or herself for an interview should be fully prepared to discuss the issues raised in the Office action. When it is obvious that the attorney is not so prepared, an interview should not be permitted. It is desirable that the attorney or applicant indicate in advance what issues he or she desires to discuss at the interview by submitting, in writing, a proposed amendment. This would permit the examiner to prepare in advance for the interview and to focus on the matters set forth in the proposed amendment.

Examiners should avoid unnecessary interruptions during interviews with attorneys or inventors. In this regard, examiners should notify their receptionist, immediately prior to an interview, to not complete incoming telephone calls unless such are of an emergency nature. As appropriate, examiners should familiarize themselves with the status and existing issues in an application or reexamination proceeding before an interview.

The examiner should not hesitate to state, if such be the case, that claims presented for consideration at the interview require further search and study. Nor should the examiner hesitate to conclude an interview when it appears that no common ground can be reached nor when it becomes apparent that the application requires further amendment or an additional action by the examiner. However, the examiner should attempt to identify issues and resolve differences during the interview as much as possible.

It is the responsibility of both parties to the interview to see that it is not extended beyond a reasonable period, usually not longer than 30 minutes. It is the duty of the primary examiner to see that an interview is not extended beyond a reasonable period even when he does not personally participate in the interview.

During an interview with an applicant who is prosecuting his or her own case and is not familiar with Office procedure the examiner may make suggestions that will advance the prosecution of this case; this lies wholly

**713.02**

within his or her discretion. Too much time, however, should not be allowed for such interviews.

Examiners may grant one interview after final rejection. See MPEP § 713.09.

Where the response to a first complete action includes a request for an interview or a telephone consultation to be initiated by the examiner, or where an out-of-town attorney under similar circumstances requests that the examiner defer taking any further action on the case until the attorney's next visit to Washington (provided such visit is not beyond the date when the Office action would normally be given), the examiner, as soon as he or she has considered the effect of the response, should grant such request if it appears that the interview or consultation would result in expediting the case to a final action.

Where agreement is reached as a result of an interview, applicant's representative should be advised that an amendment pursuant to the agreement should be promptly submitted. If the amendment prepares the case for final action, the examiner should take the case up as special. If not, the case should await its turn.

Consideration of a filed amendment may be had by hand delivery of a duplicate copy of said amendment.

Early communication of the results of the consideration should be made to applicant; if requested, indicate on attorney's copy any agreement; initial and date both copies.

Although entry of amendatory matter usually requires actual presence of the original paper, examiner and clerical processing should proceed as far as practicable based on the duplicate copy. The extent of processing will depend on each amendment.

The substance of any interview, whether in person or by telephone must be made of record in the application. See MPEP § 713.04.

**VIEWING OF VIDEO TAPES DURING INTERVIEWS**

The Patent and Trademark Office has video tape equipment available in the facilities of the Patent Academy for viewing video tapes from applicants during interviews with patent examiners.

The video tape equipment may use VHS and UHS (3/4-inch tape) cassettes.

Attorneys or applicants wishing to show a video tape during an examiner interview must be able to demon-

strate that the content of the video tape has a bearing on an outstanding issue in the application and its viewing will advance the prosecution of the application. Prior approval of viewing of a video tape during an interview must be granted by the Supervisory Primary Examiner. Also, use of the room and equipment must be granted by the Training Manager to avoid any conflict with the Patent Academy.

Requests to use video tape viewing equipment for an interview should be made at least 1 week in advance to allow the Patent Academy staff sufficient time to ensure the availability and proper scheduling of both a room and equipment.

Interviews using Office video tape equipment will be held only in the Patent Academy facilities located in One Crystal Park, Room 502. Attorneys or applicants should not contact the Patent Academy directly regarding availability and scheduling of video equipment. All scheduling of rooms and equipment should be done through and by the examiner conducting the interview. The substance of the interview, including a summary of the content of the video tape must be made of record in the application. See MPEP § 713.04.

**EXAMINATION BY EXAMINER OTHER THAN THE ONE WHO CONDUCTED THE INTERVIEW**

Sometimes the examiner who conducted the interview is transferred to another group or resigns, and the examination is continued by another examiner. If there is an indication that an interview had been held, the second examiner should ascertain if any agreements were reached at the interview. Where conditions permit, as in the absence of a clear error or knowledge of other prior art, the second examiner should take a position consistent with the agreements previously reached. See MPEP § 812.01 for a statement of telephone practice in restriction and election of species situations. <

**713.02 Interviews Prior to First Official Action [R-1]**

>Prior to filing, no interview is permitted. However, in the examiner's discretion, a limited amount of time may be spent in indicating the field of search to an attorney, searcher or inventor.

A request for an interview prior to the first Office action is ordinarily granted in continuing or substitute applications. A request for an interview in all other

applications before the first action is untimely and will not be acknowledged if written, or granted if oral; 37 CFR 1.133 (a).

### SEARCHING IN GROUP

Search in the group art unit should be permitted only with the consent of a primary examiner.

### EXPOUNDING PATENT LAW

The Patent and Trademark Office cannot act as an expounder of the patent law, nor as a counsellor for individuals. <

### 713.03 Interview for "Sounding Out" Examiner Not Permitted [R-1]

>Interviews that are solely for the purpose of "sounding out" the examiner, as by a local attorney acting for an out-of-town attorney, should not be permitted when it is apparent that any agreement that would be reached is conditional upon being satisfactory to the principal attorney. <

### 713.04 Substance of Interview Must Be Made of Record [R-2]

A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face or telephone interview with regard to the merits of an application must be made of record in the application, whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview. See 37 CFR 1.133(b), MPEP § 713.01.

#### 37 CFR 1.133 Interviews

\*\*\*\*\*

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135.

#### 37 CFR 1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent and Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Of-

fice if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete \*\*>an< Interview Summary Form for each interview where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks\*\*. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in MPEP § 812.01, or pointing out typographical errors in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below.

The Examiner Interview Summary Form PTOL 413 shall be given an appropriate paper number, placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" list on the file wrapper. In a personal interview, the duplicate copy of the Form is \*\* given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephonic interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the telephonic interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:

- Serial Number of the application
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (personal or telephonic)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney, or agent, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the claims discussed

713.04

- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). (Agreements as to allowability are tentative and do not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.)
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview
- Names of other Patent and Trademark Office personnel present.

The Form also contains a statement reminding the applicant of his or her responsibility to record the substance of the interview.

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview in each case unless both applicant and examiner agree that the examiner will record same. Where the examiner agrees to record the substance of the interview, or when it is adequately recorded on the Form or in an attachment to the Form, the examiner will check a box at the bottom of the Form informing the applicant that he or she need not supplement the Form by submitting a separate record of the substance of the interview.

It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

The complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:

- (1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
- (2) an identification of the claims discussed,
- (3) an identification of specific prior art discussed,
- (4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner,
- (5) the general thrust of the principal arguments of the applicant and the examiner should also be identified, even where the interview is initiated by the examiner.

The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner\* >,<

(6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and

(7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete or accurate, the examiner will give the applicant one month from the date of the notifying letter or the remainder of any period for response, whichever is longer, to complete the response and thereby avoid abandonment of the application by using Form paragraph 7.84 (37 CFR 1.135(c)).

¶ 7.84 *Amendment Is Non-Responsive to Interview*

The communication filed on [1] is non-responsive because it fails to include a complete or accurate record of the substance of the [2] interview. [3]>.<

Applicant is given a **ONE MONTH TIME LIMIT** from the date of this letter, or until the expiration of the period for response set in the last office action, whichever is the longer, to complete the response. **NO EXTENSION OF THIS TIME LIMIT MAY BE GRANTED UNDER EITHER 37 CFR 1.136 (a) OR (b)\*>.<**

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 2, insert the date of the interview.
2. In bracket 3, explain the deficiencies.

**EXAMINER TO CHECK FOR ACCURACY**

Applicant's summary of what took place at the interview should be carefully checked to determine the accuracy of any argument or statement attributed to the examiner during the interview. If there is an inaccuracy and it bears directly on the question of patentability, it should be pointed out in the next Office letter. If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth his or her version of the statement attributed to him or her.

If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication "Interview record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.

### 713.05 Interviews Prohibited or Granted, Special Situations [R-1]

>Saturday interviews, see MPEP § 713.01.

Except in unusual situations, no interview is permitted after the brief on appeal is filed or after a case has been passed to issue.

An interview may be appropriate before applicant's first response when the examiner has suggested that allowable subject matter is present or where it will assist applicant in judging the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

Office employees are forbidden to hold either oral or written communication with an unregistered or a disbarred attorney regarding an application unless it be one in which said attorney is the applicant. See MPEP § 105.

Interviews are frequently requested by persons whose credentials are of such informal character that there is serious question as to whether such persons are entitled to any information under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.14. In general, interviews are not granted to persons who lack proper authority from the applicant or attorney of record in the form of a paper on file in the case or do not have in their possession a copy of the application file. A MERE POWER TO INSPECT IS NOT SUFFICIENT AUTHORITY FOR GRANTING AN INTERVIEW INVOLVING THE MERITS OF THE APPLICATION.

However, interviews may be granted to registered individuals who are known to be the local representatives of the attorney in the case, even though a power of attorney to them is not of record in the particular application. When prompt action is important an interview with the local representative may be the only way to save the application from abandonment. (See MPEP § 408.)

If a registered individual seeking the interview has in his or her possession a copy of the application file, the examiner may accept his or her statement that he or she is authorized to represent the applicant under 37 CFR 1.34 or is the person named as the attorney of record.

Interviews normally should not be granted unless the requesting party has authority to bind the principal concerned.

The availability of personal interviews in the "Conference Period," which is the time between the filing of applicant's thorough first response and a concluding action by the examiner, for attorneys resident or frequently in Washington is obvious. For others more re-

note, telephone interviews may prove valuable. However, present Office policy places great emphasis on telephone interviews initiated by the examiner to attorneys and agents of record. See MPEP § 408.

The examiner, by making a telephone call, may be able to suggest minor, probably quickly acceptable changes which would result in allowance. If there are major questions or suggestions, the call might state them concisely, and suggest a further telephone or personal interview, at a prearranged later time, giving applicant more time for consideration before discussing the points raised.

For an interview with an examiner who does not have negotiation authority, arrangements should always include an examiner who does have such authority, and who is familiar with the case, so that authoritative agreement may be reached at the time of the interview.

### GROUPED INTERVIEWS

For attorneys remote from Washington who prefer personal interviews, the grouped interview practice is effective. If in any case there is a prearranged interview, *with agreement to file a prompt supplemental amendment putting the case as nearly as may be in condition for concluding action*, prompt filing of the supplemental amendment gives the case special status, and brings it up for immediate special action. <

### 713.06 No *Inter Partes* Questions Discussed *Ex Parte* [R-1]

>The examiner may not discuss *inter partes* questions *ex parte* with any of the interested parties. <

### 713.07 Exposure of Other Cases [R-1]

>Prior to an interview the examiner should arrange his or her desk so that all files, drawings and other papers, except those necessary in the interview, are placed out of view. See MPEP § 101. <

### 713.08 Demonstration, Exhibits, Models [R-2]

The invention in question may be exhibited or demonstrated during the interview by a model thereof. A model received by the examiner from the applicant or his or her attorney must be properly recorded on the

**713.09**

“Contents” portion of the application file wrapper. See MPEP § 608.03 and § 608.03(a).

Oftentimes a model or exhibit is not given into the custody of the Office but is brought directly into the group by the attorney solely for inspection or demonstration during the course of the interview. This is permissible. Demonstrations of apparatus or exhibits too large to be brought into the Office may be viewed by the examiner outside of the Office (in the Washington >area) with the approval of the supervisory primary examiner. It is presumed that the witnessing of the demonstration<\* or the reviewing of the exhibit is actually essential in the developing and clarifying of the issues involved in the application.

**713.09 Finally Rejected Application [R-1]**

>Normally, one interview after final rejection is permitted. However, prior to the interview, the intended purpose and content of the interview should be presented briefly, preferably in writing. Such an interview may be granted if the examiner is convinced that disposal or clarification for appeal may be accomplished with only nominal further consideration. Interviews merely to restate arguments of record or to discuss new limitations which would require more than nominal reconsideration or new search should be denied. See MPEP § 714.13.

Interviews may be held after the expiration of the SSP and prior to the maximum permitted statutory period of 6 months without an extension of time. See MPEP § 706.07(f).

A second or further interview after a final rejection may be held if the examiner is convinced that it will expedite the issues for appeal or disposal of the application.<

**713.10 Interview Preceding Filing  
Amendment Under 37 CFR 1.312  
[R-2]**

After a case is sent to issue, it is technically no longer under the jurisdiction of the primary examiner, 37 CFR 1.312. An interview with an examiner that would involve a detailed consideration of claims sought to be entered and perhaps \*>entailing< a discussion of the prior art for determining whether or not the claims are allowable should not be given. Obviously an applicant is not entitled to a greater degree of consideration in an amendment presented informally than is given an applicant in

the consideration of an amendment when formally presented, particularly since consideration of an amendment filed under \*\*>37 CFR< 1.312 cannot be demanded as a matter of right.

Requests for interviews on cases where notes of allowance has been mailed should be granted only with specific approval of the Group Director upon a showing in writing of extraordinary circumstances.

**714 Amendments, Applicant’s Action [R-1]**

*>37 CFR 1.115. Amendment.*

The applicant may amend before or after the first examination and action and also after the second or subsequent examination or reconsideration as specified in § 1.112 or when and as specifically required by the examiner. The patent owner may amend in accordance with §§ 1.510(e) and 1.530(b) prior to reexamination, and during reexamination proceedings in accordance with §§ 1.112 and 1.116.

See also MPEP § 714.12.

For amendments in reexamination proceedings see MPEP § 2250 and § 2266.<

**714.01 Signatures to Amendments [R-1]**

>To facilitate any telephone call that may become necessary, it is recommended that the complete telephone number with area code and extension be given, preferably near the signature. Note MPEP § 605.04 to § 605.05(a) for a discussion of signatures to the application.<

**714.01(a) Unsigned or Improperly Signed  
Amendment [R-1]**

>An unsigned amendment or one not properly signed by a person having authority to prosecute the case is not entered. This applies, for instance, where the amendment is signed by one only of two applicants and the one signing has not been given a power of attorney by the other applicant.

If copies (carbon or electrostatic) of papers which require an original signature as set forth in 37 CFR 1.4(e) are filed, the signature must be applied after the copies are made. MPEP § 714.07.

An amendment filed with a copy of a signature rather than an original signature, may be entered if an accompanying transmittal letter contains a proper original signature.

When an unsigned or improperly signed amendment is received the amendment will be listed on the

file wrapper, but not entered. The examiner will notify applicant of the status of the case, advising him or her to furnish a duplicate amendment properly signed or to ratify the amendment already filed. Applicant should be given either the time remaining in the period for response or a 1-month time limit in which to ratify the previously filed amendment (37 CFR 1.135 (c)).

Applicants may be advised of unsigned amendments by use of Form Paragraph 7.84.01.

¶ **7.84.01 Amendment Is Unsigned**

The proposed [1] filed on [2] has not been entered because it is unsigned.

Applicant is given either the time remaining in the response period of the last Office action or a ONE MONTH TIME LIMIT from the date of this letter, whichever is longer, within which to supply a duplicate paper or ratification, properly signed. NO EXTENSION OF THIS TIME LIMIT MAY BE GRANTED UNDER EITHER 37 CFR 1.136 (a) OR (b).

**Examiner Note:**

In the first "bracket" insert (1) amendment (2) substitute oath (3) substitute declaration whichever is applicable.

Sometimes problems arising from unsigned or improperly signed amendments may be disposed of by calling in the local representative of the attorney of record, since he or she may have the authority to sign the amendment.

An amendment signed by a person whose name is known to have been removed from the registers of attorneys and agents under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.347 or § 1.348 is not entered. The file and unentered amendment are submitted to the Office of Enrollment and Discipline for appropriate action. <

**714.01(c) Signed by Attorney Not of Record  
[R-1]**

>See MPEP § 405. A registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity under 37 CFR 1.34, may sign amendments even though he does not have a power of attorney in the application. See MPEP § 402. <

**714.01(d) Amendment Signed by Applicant  
But Not by Attorney of Record [R-1]**

>If an amendment signed by the applicant is received in an application in which there is a duly appointed attorney, the amendment should be entered and acted upon. Attention should be called to 37 CFR 1.33(a) in patent applications and

to 37 CFR 1.33(c) in reexamination proceedings. Two copies of the action should be prepared, one being sent to the attorney and the other directly to the applicant. The notation: "Copy to applicant" should appear on the original and on both copies. <

**714.02 Must Be Fully Responsive [R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.111. Reply by applicant or patent owner.*

(a) After the Office action, if adverse in any respect, the applicant or patent owner, if he or she persists in his or her application for a patent or reexamination proceeding, must reply thereto and may request reconsideration or further examination, with or without amendment.

(b) In order to be entitled to reconsideration or further examination, the applicant or patent owner must make request therefor in writing. The reply by the applicant or patent owner must distinctly and specifically point out the supposed errors in the examiner's action and must respond to every ground of objection and rejection in the prior Office action. If the reply is with respect to an application, a request may be made that objections or requirements as to form not necessary to further consideration of the claims be held in abeyance until allowable subject matter is indicated. The applicant's or patent owner's reply must appear throughout to be a bona fide attempt to advance the case to final action. A general allegation that the claims define a patentable invention without specifically pointing out how the language of the claims patentably distinguishes them from the references does not comply with the requirements of this section.

(c) In amending in response to a rejection of claims in an application or patent undergoing reexamination, the applicant or patent owner must clearly point out the patentable novelty which he or she thinks the claims present in view of the state of the art disclosed by the references cited or the objections made. He or she must also show how the amendments avoid such references or objections. (See §§ 1.135 and 1.136 for time for reply.)

In all cases where response to a requirement is indicated as necessary to further consideration of the claims, or where allowable subject matter has been indicated in an application, a complete response must either comply with the formal requirements or specifically traverse each one not complied with.

Drawing and specification corrections, presentation of a new oath and the like are generally considered as formal matters. However, the line between formal matter and those touching the merits is not sharp, and the determination of the merits of a case may require that such corrections, new oath, etc., be insisted upon prior to any indication of allowable subject matter.

*37 CFR 1.119. Amendment of claims.*

The claims may be amended by canceling particular claims, by presenting new claims, or by rewriting particular claims as indicated in § 1.121. The requirements of § 1.111 must be complied with by pointing out the specific distinctions believed to render the claims

**714.03**

patentable over the references in presenting arguments in support of new claims and amendments.

An amendment submitted after a second or subsequent nonfinal action on the merits which is otherwise responsive but which increases the number of claims drawn to the invention previously acted upon is not to be held nonresponsive for that reason alone. (See 37 CFR 1.112, MPEP § 706.)

The prompt development of a clear issue requires that the responses of the applicant meet the objections to and rejections of the claims. Applicant should also specifically point out the support for any amendments made to the disclosure. See MPEP § 2163.06.

An amendment attempting to “rewrite” a claim in the manner set forth in 37 CFR 1.121(b) may be held nonresponsive if it uses parentheses, ( ), where brackets, [ ], are called for; see MPEP § 714.22.

Responses to requirements to restrict are treated under MPEP § 818.

### **714.03 Amendments Not Fully Responsive Action To Be Taken [R-1]**

>If there is sufficient time remaining in the 6-month statutory period or set shortened statutory period when applicant’s amendment is found to be not fully responsive to the last Office action, a letter should at once be sent applicant pointing out wherein his or her amendment fails to fully respond coupled with a warning that the response must be completed within the time period in order to avoid the question of abandonment. See MPEP § 714.05.

Where a bona fide response to an examiner’s action is filed before the expiration of a permissible period, but through an apparent oversight or inadvertence some point necessary to a complete response has been omitted — such as an amendment or argument as to one or two of several claims involved or signature to the amendment — the examiner, as soon as he or she notes the omission, should require the applicant to complete his or her response within a specified time limit (usually one month) if the period for response has already expired or insufficient time is left to take action before the expiration of the period. If this is done the application should not be held abandoned even though the prescribed period has expired.

Under 37 CFR 1.135(c), the missing matter or lack of compliance must be considered by the examiner as being

“inadvertently omitted.” Once an inadvertent omission is brought to the attention of the applicant, the question of inadvertence no longer exists. Therefore, any further time to complete the response would not be appropriate under 37 CFR 1.135(c). Accordingly no extensions of time can be granted in such situations.

The practice of giving applicant a 1-month time limit in order to complete and/or correct a bona fide effort to file a response does not, however, normally apply after a final rejection or final action. Amendments after final are normally only approved for entry if they place the application in condition for allowance or in better form for appeal. Otherwise, they are not approved for entry. See MPEP § 714.12 and § 714.13. Thus even if some point necessary for a complete response (after final) was omitted through an apparent oversight or inadvertence, the amendment should be denied entry. A 1-month time limit to correct the omission should not be given. Applicant may, however, obtain additional time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) to file another or supplemental amendment in order to correct and/or complete the response. Two exceptions to the normal practice exist. An applicant may be given a 1-month time limit for an amendment after final if the amendment is not acceptable because: (1) it is not signed or not properly signed, or (2) additional fees are due for additional claims. See MPEP § 710.02(c).

In these limited circumstances, the applicant may be given a 1-month time limit to complete the response.

Where there is an informality as to the fee in connection with an amendment presenting additional claims, the applicant is notified by the clerk on form PTOL-319. See MPEP § 607 and § 714.10.

The examiner must exercise discretion in applying the practice under 37 CFR 1.135(c) to safeguard against abuses thereof.

The practice outlined above does not apply where there has been a deliberate omission of some necessary part of a complete response. For example, if an election of species has been required and applicant does not make election because he or she holds the requirement to be wrong, the amendment on its face is not a “bona fide attempt to advance the case to final action” (37 CFR 1.135(c)), and the examiner is without authority to postpone decision as to abandonment.

If there is ample time for applicant's reply to be filed within the time period, no reference is made to the time for response other than to note in the letter that the response must be completed within the period for response dating from the last Office action or within any extension pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a).

Form Paragraph 7.95 may be used where a bona fide response is not entirely responsive.

¶ 7.95 *Bona Fide Non-Responsive Amendments*

The communication filed on [1] is non-responsive to the prior Office action because [2]. Since the response appears to be *bona fide*, but through an apparent oversight or inadvertence failed to provide a complete response, applicant is required to complete the response within a TIME LIMIT of ONE MONTH from the date of this letter or within the time remaining in the response period of the last Office action, whichever is the longer. NO EXTENSION OF THIS TIME LIMIT MAY BE GRANTED UNDER EITHER 37 CFR 1.136 (a) OR (b) but the period for response set in the last office action may be extended up to a maximum of SIX MONTHS.

**Examiner Note:**

This practice does not apply where there has been a deliberate omission of some necessary part of a complete response. Under such cases, the examiner has no authority to grant an extension if the period for response has expired. See form paragraph 7.91.<

**714.04 Claims Presented in Amendment  
With No Attempt To Point Out  
Patentable Novelty [R-1]**

>In the consideration of claims in an amended case where no attempt is made to point out the patentable novelty, the claims should *not* be allowed. (See 37 CFR 1.111, MPEP § 714.02.)

An amendment failing to point out the patentable novelty which the applicant believes to exist in his case may be held to be nonresponsive and a time limit set to furnish a proper response if the statutory period has expired or almost expired (MPEP § 714.03). However, if the claims as amended are clearly open to rejection on grounds of record, a final rejection should generally be made.<

**714.05 Examiner Should Immediately  
Inspect [R-1]**

>Actions by applicant, especially those filed near the end of the period for response, should be inspected immediately upon filing to determine whether they are completely responsive to the preceding Office action so as to prevent abandonment of the application. If found

inadequate, and sufficient time remains, applicant should be notified of the deficiencies and warned to complete the response within the period. See MPEP § 714.03.

All amended cases put on the examiner's desk should be inspected at once to determine the following:

If the amendment is properly signed (MPEP § 714.01).

If the amendment has been filed within the statutory period, set shortened period, or time limit (MPEP § 710).

If the amendment is fully responsive (MPEP § 714.03 and § 714.04).

If the changes made by the amendment warrant transfer (MPEP § 903.08(d)).

If the case is special (MPEP § 708.01).

If claims suggested to applicant for interference purposes have been inserted.

If there is a traverse of a requirement for restriction (MPEP § 818.03(a)).

If "easily erasable" paper has been used or other non-permanent method of preparation or reproduction (MPEP § 714.07).

If applicant has cited references (MPEP § 707.05(b) and § 1302.12).

If a terminal disclaimer has been filed (MPEP § 508.01, § 804.02, § 804.03, and § 1490).

If any matter involving security has been added (MPEP § 107.01).

**ACTION CROSSES AMENDMENT**

A supplemental action is usually necessary when an amendment is filed on or before the mailing date of the regular action but reaches the examining group later. The supplemental action should be promptly prepared. It need not reiterate all portions of the previous action that are still applicable but it should specify which portions are to be disregarded, pointing out that the period for response runs from the mailing of the supplemental action. The action should be headed "Responsive to amendment of (date) and supplemental to the action mailed (date)."<

**714.06 Amendments Sent to Wrong Group  
[R-1]**

>See MPEP § 508.01.<

**714.07**

**714.07 Amendments Not in Permanent Ink [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.52(a) requires "permanent ink or its equivalent in quality" to be used on papers which will become part of part of the record and *In re Benson*, 1959 C.D. 5, 744 O.G. 353, holds that documents on so-called "easily erasable" paper violate the requirement. The fact that 37 CFR 1.52(a) has not been complied with may be discovered as soon as the amendment reaches the examining group or, later, when later, when the case is reached for action. In the first instance, applicant is promptly notified that the amendment is not entered and is required to file a permanent copy within 1 month or to order a copy to be made by the Patent and Trademark Office at his or her expense. Physical entry of the amendment will be made from the permanent copy.

If there is no appropriate response within the 1-month period, a copy is made by the Patent and Trademark Office, applicant being notified and required to remit the charges or authorize charging them to his deposit account.

In the second instance, when the nonpermanence of the amendment is discovered only when the case is reached for action, similar steps are taken, but action on the case is not held up, the requirement for a permanent copy of the amendment being included in the Office action.

Office copier or good carbon copies on satisfactory paper are acceptable. But see *In re Application Papers Filed Jan. 20, 1956*, 706 O.G. 4. Although a good copy is acceptable, signatures must be applied after the copy is made if the papers require an original signature as set forth in 37 CFR 1.4(e).

See MPEP § 608.01 for more discussion on acceptable copies.<

**714.08 Telegraphic Amendment [R-1]**

>When a telegraphic amendment is received, the telegram is placed in the file but not entered. If a properly signed formal amendment does not follow in due time, the applicant is notified that the telegram will not be accepted as a response to the former Office action. The time period for response to the Office action continues to run and is extendable under 37 CFR 1.136.

The same test as to completeness of response applies to an amendment sent by telegraph as to one sent by mail. See MPEP § 714.02.<

**714.09 Amendments Before First Office Action [R-1]**

>An amendment filed before the first Office action, but not filed along with the original application, does not enjoy the status of part of the original disclosure. See MPEP § 608.04(b). However, an application will be accorded a filing date based upon identification of the inventor(s) and the submission of a complete specification including claims and any required drawings. The oath or declaration and/or filing fee can be submitted later. Thus, in the instance where an application is filed without the oath or declaration and such application is accompanied by an amendment, that amendment is considered a part of the original disclosure. The subsequently filed oath or declaration must refer to both the application and the amendment. Any copy of the application as filed must include a copy of the amendment as well, particularly where certified copies for priority purposes are requested.

In the case of 37 CFR 1.60 or 1.62 (unexecuted) applications, an amendment to the specification stating that, "This application is a division (continuation) of application Serial No. .... filed ...." and canceling any irrelevant claims as well as any preliminary amendment should accompany the application. Amendments should either accompany the application or be filed after the application has received its serial number and filing date. See MPEP § 201.06(a).<

**714.10 Claims Added in Excess of Filing Fee [R-1]**

>The patent statute provides for the presentation of claims added in excess of the filing fee. On payment of an additional fee (see MPEP § 607), these excess claims may be presented any time after the application is filed, which of course, includes the time before the first action.<

**714.11 Amendment Filed During Interference Proceedings [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 2364.01.<

## 714.12 Amendments After Final Rejection or Action [R-1]

>37 CFR 1.116. Amendments after final action.

(a) After final rejection or action (§ 1.113) amendments may be made canceling claims or complying with any requirement of form which has been made. Amendments presenting rejected claims in better form for consideration on appeal may be admitted. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to relieve the application or patent under reexamination from its condition as subject to appeal or to save the application from abandonment under § 1.135.

(b) If amendments touching the merits of the application or patent under reexamination are presented after final rejection, or after appeal has been taken, or when such amendment might not otherwise be proper, they may be admitted upon showing of good and sufficient reasons why they are necessary and were not earlier presented.

(c) No amendment can be made as a matter of right in appealed cases. After decision on appeal, amendments can only be made as provided in § 1.198, or to carry into effect a recommendation under § 1.196.

Once a final rejection that is not premature has been entered in a case, applicant or patent owner no longer has any right to unrestricted further prosecution. This does not mean that no further amendment or argument will be considered. Any amendment that will place the case either in condition for allowance or in better form for appeal may be entered. Also, amendments complying with objections or requirements as to form are to be permitted after final action in accordance with 37 CFR 1.116(a). Ordinarily, amendments filed after the final action are not entered unless approved by the examiner. See MPEP § 706.07(f), § 714.13 and § 1207.

*The prosecution of an application before the examiner should ordinarily be concluded with the final action. However, one personal interview by applicant may be entertained after such final action if circumstances warrant.* Thus, only one request by applicant for a personal interview after final should be granted, but in exceptional circumstances, a second personal interview may be initiated by the examiner if in his judgment this would materially assist in placing the application in condition for allowance.

Many of the difficulties encountered in the prosecution of patent applications after final rejection may be alleviated if each applicant includes, at the time of filing or no later than the first response, claims varying from the broadest to which he or she believes he or she is entitled to the most detailed that he or she is willing to accept.<

## 714.13 Amendments After Final Rejection or Action, Procedure Followed [R-2]

### FINAL REJECTION — TIME FOR RESPONSE

**\*\*>If<** an applicant initially responds within two months from the date of mailing of any final rejection setting a 3-month shortened statutory period for response and the Office does not mail an advisory action until after the end of the 3-month shortened statutory period, the period for response for purposes of determining the amount of any extension fee will be the date on which the Office mails the advisory action advising applicant of the status of the application, but in no event can the period extend beyond 6 months from the date of the final rejection. This procedure **\*\*>applies<** only to a first response to a final rejection **\*\*>**. The following language must be included by the Examiner< in each final rejection mailed after February 27, 1983:

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE TO THIS FINAL ACTION IS SET TO EXPIRE THREE MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS ACTION. IN THE EVENT A FIRST RESPONSE IS FILED WITHIN TWO MONTHS OF THE MAILING DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION AND THE ADVISORY ACTION IS NOT MAILED UNTIL AFTER THE END OF THE THREE-MONTH SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD, THEN THE SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD WILL EXPIRE ON THE DATE THE ADVISORY ACTION IS MAILED, AND ANY EXTENSION FEE PURSUANT TO 37 CFR 1.136(a) WILL BE CALCULATED FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THE ADVISORY ACTION. IN NO EVENT WILL THE STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE EXPIRE LATER THAN SIX MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION.

This wording is part of Form Paragraphs 7.39, 7.40, and 7.41. Form Paragraph 7.39 appears in MPEP § 706.07. Form Paragraph 7.40 appears in MPEP § 706.07(a). Form Paragraph 7.41 appears in MPEP § 706.07(b).

For example, if applicant initially responds within 2 months from the date of mailing of a final rejection and the examiner mails an advisory action before the end of 3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection, the shortened statutory period will expire at the end of 3 months from the date of mailing of the final rejection. In such a case, any extension fee would then be calcu-

714.13

lated from the end of the 3-month period. If the examiner, however, does not mail an advisory action until after the end of 3 months, the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the examiner mails the advisory action and any extension fee may be calculated from that date. In the event that a first response is not filed within two months of the mailing date of the final rejection, any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the end of the response period set in the final rejection.

Failure to file a response during the shortened statutory period results in abandonment of the application unless the time is extended under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136.

ENTRY NOT A MATTER OF RIGHT

It should be kept in mind that applicant cannot, as a matter of right, amend any finally rejected claims, add new claims after a final rejection (see 37 CFR 1.116) or reinstate previously canceled claims.

Except where an amendment merely cancels claims, adopts examiner suggestions, removes issues for appeal, or in some other way requires only a cursory review by the examiner, compliance with the requirement of a showing under 37 CFR 1.116(b) is expected in all amendments after final rejection. Failure to properly respond to the final rejection results in abandonment.

An amendment filed at any time after final rejection but before an appeal brief is filed, may be entered upon or after filing of an appeal provided the total effect of the amendment is to (1) remove issues for appeal, and/or (2) adopt examiner suggestions.

See also MPEP § 1207 and § 1211.

ACTION BY EXAMINER

See also MPEP § 706.07 (f).

In the event that the proposed amendment does not place the case in better form for appeal, nor in condition for allowance, applicant should be promptly informed of this fact, whenever possible, within the statutory period. The refusal to enter the proposed amendment should not be arbitrary. The proposed amendment should be given sufficient consideration to determine whether the claims are in condition for allowance and/or whether the issues on appeal are simplified. Ordinarily, the specific deficiencies of the amendment need not be discussed.

The reasons for nonentry should be concisely expressed. For example:

(1) The claims, if amended as proposed, would not avoid any of the rejections set forth in the last Office action, and thus the amendment would not place the case in condition for allowance or in better condition for appeal.

(2) The claims, if amended as proposed, would raise the issue of new matter.

(3) The claims as amended present new issues requiring further consideration or search.

(4) Since the amendment presents additional claims without canceling any finally rejected claims it is not considered as placing the application in better condition for appeal; *Ex parte Wirt*, 1905 C.D. 247, 117 O.G. 599.

Examiners should indicate the status of each claim of record or proposed in the amendment, and which proposed claims would be entered on the filing of an appeal if filed in a separate paper.

Applicant should be notified, if certain portions of the amendment would be acceptable as placing some of the claims in better form for appeal or complying with objections or requirements as to form, if a separate paper were filed containing only such amendments. Similarly, if the proposed amendment to some of the claims would render them allowable, applicant should be so informed. This is helpful in assuring the filing of a brief consistent with the claims as amended. A statement that the final rejection stands and that the statutory period runs from the date of the final rejection is also in order.

Form letter PTOL-303 should be used to acknowledge receipt of a response from applicant after final rejection where such response is prior to filing of an appeal brief and does not place the application in condition for allowance. This form has been devised to advise applicant of the disposition of the proposed amendments to the claims and of the effect of any argument or affidavit not placing the application in condition for allowance or which could not be made allowable by a telephone call to clear up minor matters.

Any amendment timely filed after a final rejection should be immediately considered to determine whether it places the application in condition for allowance or in better form for appeal. An examiner is expected to turn in a response to an amendment after final rejection within 10 calendar days from the time the amendment is received by the examiner. A response to

an amendment after final rejection should be mailed within thirty (30) days of the date the amendment is received by the Office. < In *all* instances, both before and after final rejection, in which an application is placed in condition for allowance as by an interview or amendment, \*\* applicant should be notified promptly of the allowability of all claims by means of Interview Summary \*\*>PTO-413< or \*\*>a Notice of Allowability< PTOL-37.

Such a letter is important because it may avoid an unnecessary appeal and act as a safeguard against a holding of abandonment. Every effort should be made to mail the letter before the period for response expires.

If no appeal has been filed within the period for response and no amendment has been submitted to make the case allowable or which can be entered in part (see MPEP § 714.20), the case stands abandoned.

It should be noted that under 37 CFR. 1.181(f), the filing of a 37 CFR 1.181 petition will not stay the period for reply to an examiner's action which may be running against an application. See MPEP § 1207 for appeal and post-appeal procedure. For after final rejection practice relative to affidavits or declarations filed under 37 CFR 1.131 and 1.132, see MPEP § 715.09 and § 716.

Form Paragraphs 7.67-7.80 are to be used when issuing advisory actions after a final rejection.

¶ 7.67 *Advisory After Final, Heading, Before Appeal*

The period for response [1] to run [2] MONTHS from the date of the final rejection. Any extension of time must be obtained by filing a petition under 37 CFR 1.136(a) accompanied by the proposed response and the appropriate fee. The date on which the \*>response<, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for the purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should appear as a heading in all advisory actions prior to appeal. After appeal, use paragraph 7.68.
2. In Bracket 1, insert "continues" if applicant has not submitted a petition for an extension of time along with the appropriate fee under 37 CFR 1.136. If a proper extension has been requested under 37 CFR 1.136, insert "is extended" in bracket 1.
3. In bracket 2, insert the full statutory period resulting from any extensions of time which have been granted, e.g., "FOUR" months.
4. DO NOT USE THIS FORM PARAGRAPH FOR REEXAMINATION PROCEEDINGS.
5. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 *IF* transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable.

¶ 7.67.01 *Advisory After Final>, < Heading, 1st Response Filed Within 2 Months*

The shortened statutory period for response expires THREE MONTHS from the date of the final rejection or as of the mailing date of this Advisory Action, whichever is later. In no event however, will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of the final rejection. Any extension of time must be obtained by filing a petition under 37 CFR 1.136(a) accompanied by the proposed response and the appropriate fee. The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for the purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee.

Any extension fee required pursuant to 37 CFR 1.17 will be calculated from the date that the shortened statutory period for \*>response< expires as set forth above.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should be used in all advisory actions if:
  - a. it was the *first* response to the final rejection, and
  - b. it was filed within *two* months of the date of the final rejection.
2. If a notice of appeal has been filed, also use paragraph 7.68.
3. DO NOT USE THIS FORM PARAGRAPH FOR REEXAMINATION PROCEEDINGS.
4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 *IF* transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable.

¶ 7.67.02. *Advisory After Final, Heading, No Variable SSP Set in Final*

Since the first response to the final Office action has been filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of that action and the advisory action was not mailed within THREE MONTHS of that date, the THREE MONTH shortened statutory period for response set in the final Office action is hereby vacated and reset to expire as of the mailing date of the advisory action. See Notice entitled "Procedure for Handling Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.116", published in the Official Gazette at 1027 O.G. 71, February 8, 1983. In no event, however, will the statutory period for response expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of the final Office action.

Any extension fee required pursuant to 37 CFR 1.17 will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph should be used in all advisory actions where:
  - a. The response is a first response to the final action;
  - b. the response was filed within two months of the mailing date of the final; *and*
  - c. the final action failed to inform applicant of a variable SSP beyond the normal three month period, as is set forth in form paragraphs 7.39-7.41.
2. If the final action set a variable SSP, do not use this paragraph. Use paragraph 7.67.01.
3. If a notice of appeal has been filed, also use paragraph 7.68.
- >4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 *if* transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable. <

¶ 7.68 *Advisory After Final, Heading, After Appeal*

An appeal under 37 CFR 1.191 was filed in this application on [1]. Appellant's brief is due on [2] in accordance with 37 CFR 1.192(a).

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must precede paragraph 7.70 if the amendment is entered.
2. This paragraph must precede paragraph 7.71 if the amendment is not entered.

714.13

¶ 7.69 *Advisory After Final, Before Appeal, Amendment To Be Entered*

The amendment filed [1] under 37 CFR 1.116 in response to the final rejection will be entered upon the filing of an appeal, but is not deemed to place the application in condition for allowance. Upon the filing of an appeal and entry of the amendment, the status of the claims would be as follows:

- Allowed \*>claim(s)<: [2]
- Rejected \*>claim(s)<: [3]
- Claim(s) objected to: [4]

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.67, \*>7.67.01<, or \*>7.67.02<.
2. In \*>brackets< 2-4 indicate the status of all claims
3. An explanation of any changes in the rejection necessitated by the amendment, a statement of reasons for allowance, or other appropriate information may be added following the listing of the claims.

¶ 7.70 *Advisory After Final, After Appeal, Amendment Entered*

The amendment filed [1] under 37 CFR 1.116 in response to the final rejection has been entered, but is not deemed to place the application in condition for allowance. For purposes of appeal, the status of the claims is as follows:

- Allowed \*>claim(s)<: [2]
  - Rejected \*>claim(s)<: [3]
  - Claim(s) objected to: [4]
- The brief should be directed to the rejection of claim [5].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.68
2. In brackets 2-4, indicate the status of all pending claims.
3. An explanation of appropriate changes, such as a change in the rejection or a statement of reasons for allowance, may be added following the listing of the claims.
4. In bracket 5, repeat claims identified in bracket 3.

¶ 7.71 *Advisory After Final, Amendment not Entered*

The amendment filed [1] under 37 CFR 1.116 in response to the final rejection has been considered but is not deemed to place the application in condition for allowance and will not be entered because:

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.67, 7.67.01 or 7.67.02 if an appeal has not been taken, or by paragraph 7.68 if an appeal has been taken.
2. If it is not known whether a notice of appeal has been filed and the full six month period has expired, do not use paragraphs 7.67, 7.67.01, 7.67.02 or 7.68; use instead the following:  
"If an appeal under 37 CFR 1.191 has not been properly filed, this application is abandoned."
3. One or more of the appropriate paragraphs 7.72-7.76 must directly follow this paragraph.

¶ 7.72 *>Advisory After Final, <Lacks Showing, Why Necessary and not Earlier Presented*

There is no convincing showing under 37 CFR 1.116(b) why the proposed amendment is necessary and was not earlier presented.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Paragraph 7.71 must precede this paragraph.
2. Do not use this paragraph as the sole reason for refusing entry of the amendment unless the situation is aggravated, in which case a full explanation is necessary.
3. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

¶ 7.73 *>Advisory After Final, <Raises New Issues*

The proposed amendment raises new issues that would require further consideration and/or search. [1].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.71.
2. The new issues \*\*> including questions of new matter must be clearly identified in bracket 1. (Examples are sufficient if the new issues are extensive.)
3. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **if** transmittional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.<

\*\*

¶ 7.75 *>Advisory After Final, <Form for Appeal Not Improved*

The proposed amendment is not deemed to place the application in better form for appeal by materially simplifying the issues for appeal.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.71.
2. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

¶ 7.76 *>Advisory After Final, <Additional Claims Presented*

The proposed amendment presents additional claims without cancelling a corresponding number of finally rejected claims.

**Examiner Note:**

1. \*\*>This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.71.<
2. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

\*\*

¶ 7.78 *>Advisory After Final, <Proposed New Claims Would Be Allowable*

Claim [1] as proposed would be allowable if submitted in a separately filed amendment cancelling all non-allowed claims.

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.71.
2. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

¶ 7.79 *Advisory After Final, Affidavit, Exhibit, or Request for Reconsideration Considered*

The [1] has been entered and considered but does not overcome the rejection because [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by either paragraph 7.67, 7.67.01, 7.67.02, or 7.68.

2. In bracket 1, insert "affidavit", "declaration", "exhibit", or "request for reconsideration".

3. An explanation should be provided in bracket 2.

4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

¶ 7.80 *Advisory After Final, Affidavit or Exhibit Not Considered*

The [1] will not be considered because good and sufficient reasons why it was not earlier presented have not been shown. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by either paragraph 7.67, 7.67.01, 7.67.02, or 7.68.

2. In bracket 1, insert "affidavit", "declaration", "exhibit", or "request for reconsideration".

3. An explanation should follow in bracket 2.

4. Follow with form paragraph 7.41.01 **IF** transitional provisions of 37 CFR 1.129(a) are applicable and only if not used in previous action.

### HAND DELIVERY OF PAPERS

Any paper which relates to a pending application may be personally delivered to an examining group. However, the examining group will accept the paper only if: (1) the paper is accompanied by some form of receipt which can be handed back to the person delivering the paper; and (2) the examining group being asked to receive the paper is responsible for acting on the paper.

The receipt may take the form of a card identifying the paper. The identifying data on the card should be so complete as to leave no uncertainty as to the paper filed. For example, the card should contain the applicant's name(s), Serial No. filing date, and a description of the paper being filed. If more than one paper is being filed for the same application, the card should contain a description of each paper or item.

Under this procedure, the paper and receipt will be date stamped with the group date stamp. The receipt will be handed back to the person hand delivering the paper. The paper will be correlated with the application and made an official paper in the file, thereby avoiding the necessity of processing and forwarding the paper to the examining group via the Mail Room.

The examining group will accept and date stamp a paper even though the paper is accompanied by a check or the paper contains an authorization to charge a Deposit Account. However, in such an instance, the paper will be hand carried by group personnel to the Office of Finance for processing and then made an official paper in the file.

All such papers, together with the cash, checks, or money orders, shall be hand-carried to the Cashier's

Window, Room 2-1B01, between the hours of 3:00 p.m. and 4:00 p.m.

The papers shall be processed by the accounting clerk, Office of Finance, for pickup at the Cashier's Window by 3:00 p.m. the following work day. Upon return to the group, the papers will be entered in the application file wrappers.

### *Expedited Procedure for Processing Amendments and Other Responses After Final Rejection (37 CFR 1.116)*

In an effort to improve the timeliness of the processing of amendments and other responses under 37 CFR 1.116, and thereby provide better service to the public, an expedited processing procedure has been established which the public may utilize in filing amendments and other responses after final rejection under 37 CFR 1.116. In order for an applicant to take advantage of the expedited procedure the amendment or other response under 37 CFR 1.116 will have to be marked as a "Response under 37 CFR 1.116\* — Expedited Procedure — Examining Group (Insert Examining Group Number)" on the upper right portion of the amendment or other response and the envelope must be marked "Box AF" in the lower left hand corner. The markings preferably should be written in a bright color with a felt point marker. If the response is mailed to the Office, the envelope should contain only responses under 37 CFR 1.116 and should be mailed to "Box AF, Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231." Instead of mailing the envelope to "Box AF" as noted above, the response may be hand-carried to the particular Examining Group or other area of the Office in which the application is pending and marked on the outside envelope "Response Under 37 CFR 1.116 — Expedited Procedure—Examining Group (Insert Examining Group Number)."

Upon receipt by the Patent and Trademark Office from the Postal Service of an envelope appropriately marked "Box AF," the envelope will be specially processed by the Patent and Trademark Office Mail Room and forwarded promptly to the Examining Group, via the Office of Finance if any fees have to be charged or otherwise processed. Upon receipt of the response in the Examining Group it will be promptly processed by a designated clerical employee and forwarded to the examiner, via the Supervisory Primary Examiner (SPE), for action. The SPE is responsible for ensuring that prompt ac-

**714.14**

tion on the response is taken by the examiner. If the examiner to which the application is assigned is not available and will not be available for an extended period, the SPE will ensure that action on the application is promptly taken to assure meeting the PTO goal described below. Once the examiner has completed his or her consideration of the response, the examiner's action will be promptly typed and mailed by clerical employees designated to expedite the processing of responses filed under this procedure. The Examining Group supervisory personnel; e.g., the Supervisory Primary Examiner, Supervisory Applications Clerk, and Group Director are responsible for ensuring that actions on responses filed under this procedure are promptly processed and mailed. The Patent and Trademark Office goal is to mail the examiner's action on the response within 1 month from the date on which the amendment or response is received by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Applicants are encouraged to utilize this expedited procedure in order to facilitate Patent and Trademark Office processing of responses under 37 CFR 1.116. If applicants do not utilize the procedure by appropriately marking the envelope and enclosed papers, the benefits expected to be achieved therefrom will not be attained. The procedure cannot be expected to result in achievement of the goal in applications in which the delay results from actions by the applicant; e.g., delayed interviews, applicant's desire to file a further response, or a petition by applicant which requires a decision and delays action on the response. In any application in which a response under this procedure has been filed and no action by the examiner has been received within the time referred to herein, plus normal mailing time, a telephone call to the SPE of the relevant Group Art Unit would be appropriate in order to permit the SPE to determine the cause for any delay. If the SPE is unavailable or if no satisfactory response is received, the Group Director of the Examining Group should be contacted.

**714.14 Amendments After Allowance of All Claims [R-1]**

>Under the decision in *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213, after all claims in a case have been allowed the prosecution of the case on the merits is closed even though there may be outstanding formal objections which preclude fully closing the prosecution.

Amendments touching the merits are treated in a manner similar to amendments after final rejection, though the prosecution may be continued as to the formal matters. See MPEP § 714.12 and § 714.13.

See MPEP § 714.20 for amendments entered in part. See MPEP § 607 for additional fee requirements.

Use Form Paragraph 7.51 to issue an *Ex parte Quayle* action.

¶ **7.51 Quayle Action**

This application is in condition for allowance except for the following formal matters: [1].

Prosecution on the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire TWO MONTHS from the date of this letter.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Explain the formal matters which must be corrected in bracket 1.<

**714.15 Amendment Received in Examining Group After Mailing of Notice of Allowance [R-1]**

>Where an amendment, even though prepared by applicant prior to allowance, does not reach the Office until after the notice of allowance has been mailed, such amendment has the status of one filed under 37 CFR 1.312. Its entry is a matter of grace. For discussion of amendments filed under 37 CFR 1.312, see MPEP § 714.16 to § 714.16(e).

If, however, the amendment is filed in the Office prior to the mailing out of the notice of allowance, but is received by the examiner after the mailing of the notice of allowance, it has the same standing in the case as though the notice had not been mailed. Where the case has not been closed to further prosecution, as by final rejection of one or more claims, or by an action allowing all of the claims, applicant may be entitled to have such amendment entered even though it may be necessary to withdraw the application from issue. Such withdrawal, however, is unnecessary if the amendatory matter is such as the examiner would recommend for entry under 37 CFR 1.312.

As above implied, the case will not be withdrawn from issue for the entry of an amendment that would reopen the prosecution if the Office action next preceding the notice of allowance closed the case to further amendment, i.e., by indicating the patentability of all of the

claims, or by allowing some and finally rejecting the remainder.

After an applicant has been notified that the claims are all allowable, further prosecution of the merits of the case is a matter of grace and not of right (*Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213). To this extent the practice affecting the status of an amendment received in the Office on the date of mailing the notice of allowance, as set forth in *Ex parte Miller*, 1922 C.D. 36; 305 O.G. 419, is modified.<

### 714.16 Amendment After Notice of Allowance, 37 CFR 1.312 [R-2]

#### *37 CFR 1.312. Amendments after allowance.*

(a) No amendment may be made as a matter of right in an application after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Any amendment pursuant to this paragraph filed before the payment of the issue fee may be entered on the recommendation of the primary examiner, approved by the Commissioner, without withdrawing the case from issue.

(b) Any amendment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section filed after the date the issue fee is paid must be accompanied by a petition including the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why the amendment is necessary and was not earlier presented.

The amendment of an application by applicant after allowance falls within the guidelines of 37 CFR 1.312. Further, the amendment of an application broadly encompasses any change in the file record of the application. Accordingly, the following are examples of "amendments" by applicant after allowance which must comply with 37 CFR 1.312: An amendment to the specification, a change in the drawings, an amendment to the claims, a change in the inventorship, the submission of prior art, etc. Finally, it is pointed out that an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 filed on or before the date the issue fee is paid must comply with paragraph (a) and that such an amendment filed after the date the issue fee is paid must comply with paragraph (b).

The Commissioner has delegated the approval of recommendations under 37 CFR 1.312(a) to the supervisory primary examiners.

A supplemental oath is not treated as an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312, see MPEP § 603.01.

After the Notice of Allowance has been mailed, the application is technically no longer under the jurisdiction of the primary examiner. He or she can, however, make examiner's amendments (See MPEP § 1302.04)

and has authority to enter amendments submitted after Notice of Allowance of an application which embody merely the correction of formal matters in the specification or drawing, or formal matters in a claim without changing the scope thereof, or the cancellation of claims from the application, without forwarding to the supervisory primary examiner for approval.

Amendments other than those which merely embody the correction of formal matters without changing the scope of the claims require approval by the supervisory primary examiner. The Group Director establishes group policy with respect to the treatment of amendments directed to trivial informalities which seldom affect significantly the vital formal requirements of any patent; namely, (1) that its disclosure be adequately clear, and (2) that any invention present be defined with sufficient clarity to form an adequate basis for an enforceable contract.

Consideration of an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 cannot be demanded as a matter of right. Prosecution of a case should be conducted before, and thus be complete *including editorial revision of the specification and claims* at the time of the Notice of Allowance. However, where amendments of the type noted are shown (1) to be needed for proper disclosure or protection of the invention, and (2) to require no substantial amount of additional work on the part of the Office, they may be considered and, if proper, entry may be recommended by the primary examiner.

The requirements of 37 CFR 1.111(c) (MPEP § 714.02) with respect to pointing out the patentable novelty of any claim sought to be added or amended, apply in the case of an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312, as in ordinary amendments. See MPEP § 713.04 and § 713.10 regarding interviews. As to amendments affecting the disclosure, the scope of any claim, or that add a claim, the remarks accompanying the amendment must fully and clearly state the reasons on which reliance is placed to show:

- (1) why the amendment is needed;
- (2) why the proposed amended or new claims require no additional search or examination;
- (3) why the claims are patentable\* >; < and
- (4) why they were not presented earlier.

#### NOT TO BE USED FOR CONTINUED PROSECUTION

37 CFR 1.312 was never intended to provide a way for the continued prosecution of an application after it has

**714.16(a)**

been passed for issue. When the recommendation is against entry, a detailed statement of reasons is not necessary in support of such recommendation. The simple statement that the proposed claim is not obviously allowable and briefly the reason why is usually adequate. Where appropriate, any one of the following reasons is considered sufficient:

- (1) an additional search is required, or
- (2) more than a cursory review of the record is necessary, or
- (3) the amendment would involve materially added work on the part of the Office; e.g., checking excessive editorial changes in the specification or claims.

Where claims added by amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 are all of the form of dependent claims, some of the usual reasons for nonentry are less likely to apply although questions of new matter, sufficiency of disclosure, or undue multiplicity of claims could arise.

See MPEP § 607 and § 714.16(c) for additional fee requirements.

**AMENDMENTS FILED AFTER PAYMENT  
OF ISSUE FEE**

37 CFR 1.312(b) provides that amendments under 37 CFR 1.312 filed after the date the issue fee has been paid must include a petition and fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why such an amendment is necessary and was not earlier presented. Such petitions are decided by the Group Director. >Form Paragraph 13.10 should be used where no petition and/or fee has been filed.

¶ *13.10 Rule 312 Amendment, Issue Fee Paid, No Petition/Fee*  
Applicants amendment of [1] was filed after the issue fee was paid. 37 CFR 1.312(b) requires a petition and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(i).

**Examiner Note:**

- 1. For Rule 312 amendments submitted after the issue fee has been paid and not complying with 37 CFR 1.312(b), use this paragraph on form PTOL-90.
- 2. In bracket 1, insert the date of the amendment.<

**714.16(a) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312,  
Copied Patent Claims [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 2305.04 for the procedure to be followed when an amendment is received after notice of allowance which includes one or more claims copied or substantially copied from a patent.

The entry of the copied patent claims is not a matter of right. See MPEP § 714.19 item (4).

See MPEP § 607 and § 714.16(c) for additional fee requirements.<

**714.16(b) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312  
Filed With a Motion Under  
37 CFR 1.633 [R-1]**

>Where an amendment filed with a motion under 37 CFR 1.633(c)(2) applies to a case in issue, the amendment is not entered unless and until the motion has been granted. See MPEP § 2333.<

**714.16(c) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312,  
Additional Claims [R-1]**

>If the amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 adds claims (total and independent) in excess of the number previously paid for, additional fees are required. The amendment is *not* considered by the examiner unless accompanied by the full fee required. See MPEP § 607 and 35 U.S.C. 41.<

**714.16(d) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312,  
Handling [R-1]**

**>AMENDMENTS AFFECTING THE  
DISCLOSURE OF THE SPECIFICATION,  
ADDING CLAIMS, OR CHANGING THE  
SCOPE OF ANY CLAIM**

Amendments under 37 CFR 1.312 are sent by the Correspondence and Mail Division to the Publishing Division which, in turn, forwards the proposed amendment, file, and drawing (if any) to the group which allowed the application. In the event that the class and subclass in which the application is classified has been transferred to another group after the application was allowed, the proposed amendment, file and drawing (if any) are transmitted directly to said other group and the Publishing Division notified. If the examiner who allowed the application is still employed in the Patent and Trademark Office but not in said other group, he or she may be consulted about the propriety of the proposed amendment and given credit for any time spent in giving it consideration. The amendment is PROMPTLY considered by the examiner who indicates whether or not its entry is recommended by writing "Enter — 312," "Do

Not Enter" or "Enter In Part" thereon in red ink in the upper left corner.

If the amendment is favorably considered, it is entered and a notice of entry (PTOL-271) is prepared. No "Entry Recommended under Rule 312" stamp is required on the amendment or on the notice of entry in view of the use of form (PTOL-271). The primary examiner indicates his or her recommendation by stamping and signing his or her name on the notice of entry form (PTOL-271). Form Paragraph 7.85 may be used to indicate entry.

¶ 7.85 *Amendment under 37CFR 1.312, Entered*

The amendment filed on [1] under 37 CFR 1.312 has been entered.

**Examiner Note:**

1. Use this form for both Order 3311 amendments that do not affect the scope of the claims, and for other amendments being entered under 37 CFR 1.312.

2. Entry of amendments under Order 3311 require the approval of a Primary Examiner and entry of amendments under 37 CFR 1.312(a) require approval by the Supervisory Patent Examiner on recommendation of the Primary Examiner. See MPEP § 714.16

3. Amendments filed after payment of the issue fee require a petition and fee. These petitions are first decided by the Group Director.

If the examiner's recommendation is completely adverse, a report giving the reasons for nonentry is typed on the notice of disapproval (PTOL-271) and signed by the primary examiner.

Form Paragraph 7.87 may be used to indicate nonentry.

¶ 7.87 *Amendment under 37CFR 1.312, not Entered*

The proposed amendment filed on [1] under 37 CFR 1.312 has not been entered. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

The reasons for non-entry should be specified in bracket 2.

In either case, whether the amendment is entered or not entered, the file, drawing, and unmailed notices are forwarded to the supervisory primary examiner for consideration, approval, and mailing.

For entry-in-part, see MPEP § 714.16(e).

The filling out of the appropriate form by the clerk does not signify that the amendment has been admitted; for, though actually entered it is not officially admitted unless and until approved by the supervisory primary examiner.

See MPEP § 607 and § 714.16(c) for additional fee requirements.

Petitions to the Commissioner relating to the refusal to enter an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 and relating

to entry of an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 filed after payment of the issue fee are decided by the group director.

If the 37 CFR 1.312 amendment includes proposed drawing changes which are acceptable, the Office response should include Form Paragraph 6.48.

¶ 6.48 *Drawing Changes in 37 CFR 1.312 Amendment*

Applicant is hereby given ONE MONTH from the date of this letter or until the expiration of the period set in the "Notice of Allowance" (PTOL-85) or "Notice of Allowability" (PTOL-37), whichever is longer, to file corrected drawings.

**Examiner Note:**

Use with 37 CFR 1.312 amendment notice where there is a drawing correction proposal or request.

**AMENDMENTS WHICH EMBODY MERELY  
THE CORRECTION OF FORMAL MATTERS IN  
THE SPECIFICATION, FORMAL CHANGES IN  
A CLAIM WITHOUT CHANGING THE SCOPE**

**THEREOF, OR THE CANCELLATION  
OF CLAIMS**

The examiner indicates approval of amendments concerning merely formal matters by writing "Enter Formal Matters Only" thereon. Such amendments do not require submission to the supervisory primary examiner prior to entry. See MPEP § 714.16. The notice of entry (PTOL-271) is date stamped and mailed by the examining group. If such amendments are disapproved either in whole or in part, they require the signature of the supervisory primary examiner. <

**714.16(e) Amendments Under 37 CFR 1.312,  
Entry in Part [R-1]**

>The general rule that an amendment cannot be entered in part and refused in part should not be relaxed, but when, under 37 CFR 1.312, an amendment, for example, is proposed containing a plurality of claims or amendments to claims, some of which may be entered and some not, the acceptable claims or amendments should be entered in the case. If necessary, the claims should be renumbered to run consecutively with the claims already in the case. The refused claims or amendments should be canceled in lead pencil on the amendment.

The examiner should then submit a report (PTOL-271) recommending the entry of the acceptable

**714.17**

portion of the amendment and the nonentry of the remaining portion together with his reasons therefor. The claims entered should be indicated by number in this report. Applicant may be notified by using Form Paragraph 7.86.

¶ *7.86 Amendment under 37 CFR 1.312, Entered in Part*

The amendment filed on [1] under 37 CFR 1.312 has been entered in part. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

When an amendment under 37 CFR 1.312 is proposed containing plural changes, some of which may be entered and some not, the acceptable changes should be entered. An indication of which changes have and have not been entered with appropriate explanation should follow in bracket 2.

Handling is similar to complete entry of a 37 CFR 1.312 amendment.

Entry in part is not recommended unless the full additional fee required, if any, accompanies the amendment. See MPEP § 607 and § 714.16(c).<

**714.17 Amendment Filed After the Period for Response Has Expired [R-1]**

>When an application is not prosecuted within the period set for response and thereafter an amendment is filed with out a petition for extension of time and fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a), such amendment shall be endorsed on the file wrapper of the application, but not formally entered. The clerk shall immediately notify the applicant, by telephone and form letter PTOL-327, that the amendment was not filed within the time period and therefore cannot be entered and that the application is abandoned unless a petition for extension of time and the appropriate fee are timely filed. See MPEP § 711.02.

A mere authorization to charge a deposit account for any fee required will not be considered to be a petition for an extension of time.

The Patent and Trademark Office has been receiving an excessively large volume of petitions to revive based primarily on the late filing of amendments and other responses to official actions. Many of these petitions indicate that the late filing was due to unusual mail delays; however, the records generally show that the filing was only 2 or 3 days late.

In order to alleviate, for applicants and the Office, the problems and expenditures of time and effort occasioned by abandonments and petitions to revive, it is suggested that responses to official action be mailed to the office at least one, and preferably 2 week(s) prior to the

expiration of the period within which a response is required or that the Certificate of Mailing procedure under 37 CFR 1.8 (MPEP § 512) or 37 CFR 1.10 (MPEP § 513) be utilized. This suggestion is made in the interest of improving efficiency, thereby providing better service to the public.<

**714.18 Entry of Amendments [R-2]**

Amendments are stamped with the date of their receipt in the group. It is important to observe the distinction which exists between the stamp which shows the date of receipt of the amendment in the group ("Group Date" stamp) and the stamp bearing the date of receipt of the amendment by the Office ("Office Date" stamp). The latter date, placed in the left-hand corner, should always be referred to in writing to the applicant with regard to his or her amendment.

All amendments received in the clerical sections are processed and with the applications delivered to the supervisory primary examiner for his or her review and distribution to the examiners.

Every mail delivery should be carefully screened to remove all amendments responding to a final action in which a time period is running against the applicant. Such amendments should be processed within the next 24 hours.

The purpose of this procedure is to ensure uniform and prompt treatment by the examiners of all cases where the applicant is awaiting a reply to a proposed amendment after final action. By having all of these cases pass over the supervisory primary examiner's desk, he or she will be made aware of the need for any special treatment, if the situation so warrants. For example, the supervisory primary examiner will know whether or not the examiner in each case is on extended leave or otherwise incapable of moving the case within the required time periods (\*\* see MPEP § 714.13). In cases of this type, the applicant should receive an Office communication in sufficient time to adequately consider his or her next action if the case is not allowed. Consequently, the clerical handling will continue to be special when these cases are returned by the examiners to the clerical sections.

The amendment or letter is placed in the file, given its number as a paper in the application, and its character endorsed on the file wrapper in red ink.

When several amendments are made in an application on the same day no particular order as to the hour of

the receipt or the mailing of the amendments can be assumed, but consideration of the case must be given as far as possible as though all the papers filed were a composite single paper.

After entry of the amendment the application is "up for action." It is placed on the examiner's desk, and he or she is responsible for its proper disposal. The examiner should immediately inspect the amendment as set forth in MPEP § 714.05. After inspection, if no immediate or special action is required, the application awaits examination in regular order.

### **714.19 List of Amendments, Entry Denied** **[R-2]**

The following types of amendments are ordinarily denied entry:

(1) An amendment presenting an unpatentable claim, or a claim requiring a new search or otherwise raising a new issue in a case whose prosecution before the primary examiner has been closed, as where

(a) All claims have been allowed,

(b) All claims have been finally rejected (for exceptions see MPEP § 714.12, § 714.13, and § 714.20(4)),

(c) Some claims allowed and remainder finally rejected. See MPEP § 714.12 to § 714.14.

(2) Substitute specification that does not comply with 37 CFR 1.125. See MPEP § 608.01(q) and § 714.20.

(3) A patent claim suggested by the examiner and not presented within the time limit set or an extension thereof, unless entry is authorized by the Commissioner. See MPEP § 2305.03.\*\*

(4) While copied patent claims are generally admitted even though the case is under final rejection or on appeal, under certain conditions, the claims may be refused entry. See MPEP § 2307.03.

(5) An unsigned or improperly signed amendment or one signed by a disbarred attorney.

(6) An amendment filed in the Patent and Trademark Office after the expiration of the statutory period or set time limit for response and any extension thereof. See MPEP § 714.17.

(7) An amendment so worded that it cannot be entered with certain accuracy. See MPEP § 714.23.

(8) An amendment cancelling all of the claims and presenting no substitute claim or claims. See MPEP § 711.01.

(9) An amendment in a case no longer within the examiner's jurisdiction with certain exceptions in applications in issue, except on approval of the Commissioner. See MPEP § 714.16.

(10) Amendments to the drawing held by the examiner to contain new matter are not entered until the question of new matter is settled. This practice of nonentry because of alleged new matter, however, does not apply in the case of amendments to the specification and claims. See MPEP § 608.04 and § 706.03(o).

(11) An amendatory paper containing objectionable remarks that, in the opinion of the examiner, brings it within the condemnation of 37 CFR 1.3, will be submitted to the group director for return to applicant. See MPEP § 714.25 and MPEP § 1003, item 3. If the group director determines that the remarks are in violation of 37 CFR 1.3, he will return the paper.

(12) Amendments not in permanent ink. Amendments on so-called "easily erasable paper." See MPEP § 714.07.

(13) An amendment presenting claims (total and independent) in excess of the number previously paid for and not accompanied by the full fee for the claims or an authorization to charge the fee to a deposit account.

(14) An amendment canceling all claims drawn to the elected invention and presenting only claims drawn to the nonelected invention should not be entered. Such an amendment is nonresponsive. Applicant should be notified as directed in MPEP § 714.03 and § 714.05. See MPEP § 821.03.

While amendments falling within any of the foregoing categories should not be entered by the examiner at the time of filing, a subsequent showing by applicant may lead to entry of the amendment.

### **714.20 List of Amendments Entered in** **Part [R-2]**

To avoid confusion of the record the general rule prevails that an amendment should not be entered in part. As in the case of most other rules, the strict observance of its letter may sometimes work more harm than would result from its infraction, especially if the amendment in question is received at or near the end of the period for response. Thus,

(1) an "amendment" presenting an unacceptable substitute specification along with amendatory matter, as amendments to claims or new claims, should be

**714.21**

entered in part, rather than refused entry in toto. The substitute specification should be denied entry and so marked, while the rest of the paper should be entered.

The case as thus amended is acted on when reached in its turn, the applicant being advised that the substitute specification \*\* has not been entered. \*\*

>See 37 CFR 1.125 and MPEP § 608.01(q) for information regarding the submission of a substitute specification.<

Under current practice, substitute specifications may be voluntarily filed by the applicant if he or she desires. A >proper< substitute specification will normally be accepted by the Office even if it has not been required by the examiner.

\*\*

(2) An amendment under 37 CFR 1.312, which in part is approved and in other part disapproved, is entered only as to the approved part. See MPEP § 714.16(e).

(3) In a case having all claims allowed and some formal defect noted, where an amendment is presented at or near the close of the statutory period curing the defect and adding one or more claims some or all of which are in the opinion of the examiner not patentable, or will require a further search, the amendment in such a case will be entered only as to the formal matter. Applicant has no right to have new claims considered or entered at this point in the prosecution.

(4) In an amendment accompanying a motion granted only in part, the amendment is entered only to the extent that the motion was granted.

NOTE. The examiner writes "Enter" in ink and his or her initials in the left margin opposite the enterable portions.

**714.21 Amendments Inadvertently Entered, No Legal Effect [R-1]**

>If the clerk inadvertently enters an amendment when it should not have been entered, such entry is of no legal effect, and the same action is taken as if the changes had not been actually made, inasmuch as they have not been legally made. Unless such unauthorized entry is deleted, suitable notation should be made on the margin of the amendatory paper, as "Not Officially Entered."

If it is to be retained in the file an amendatory paper, even though not entered, should be given a paper number and listed on the file wrapper with the

notation "Not Entered." See 37 CFR 1.3 and MPEP § 714.25, for an instance of a paper which may be returned.<

**714.22 Entry of Amendments, Directions for [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.121. *Manner of making amendments.*

(a) Erasures, additions, insertions, or alterations of the Office file of papers and records must not be physically entered by the applicant. Amendments to the application (excluding the claims) are made by filing a paper (which should conform to § 1.52), directing or requesting that specified amendments be made. The exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted by said amendment must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made.

(b) Except as otherwise provided herein, a particular claim may be amended only by directions to cancel or by rewriting such claim with underlining below the word or words added and brackets around the word or words deleted. The rewriting of a claim in this form will be construed as directing the cancellation of the original claim; however, the original claim number followed by the parenthetical word "amended" must be used for the rewritten claim. If a previously rewritten claim is rewritten, underlining and bracketing will be applied in reference to the previously rewritten claim with the parenthetical expression "twice amended," "three times amended," etc., following the original claim number.\*

(c) A particular claim may be amended in the manner indicated for the application in paragraph (a) of this section to the extent of corrections in spelling, punctuation, and typographical errors. Additional amendments in this manner will be admitted provided the changes are limited to (1) deletions and/or (2) the addition of no more than five words in any one claim. Any amendment submitted with instructions to amend particular claims but failing to conform to the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section may be considered non-responsive and treated accordingly.

(d) Where underlining or brackets are intended to appear in the printed patent or are properly part of the claimed material and not intended as symbolic of changes in the particular claim, amendment by rewriting in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section shall be prohibited.

(e) In reissue applications, both the descriptive portion and the claims are to be amended by either (1) submitting a copy of a portion of the description or an entire claim with all matter to be deleted from the patent being placed between brackets and all matter to be added to the patent being underlined, or (2) indicating the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted and the precise point where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Any word or words to be inserted must be underlined. See § 1.173.

(f) Proposed amendments presented in patents involved in reexamination proceedings must be presented in the form of a full copy of the text of (1) each claim which is amended and (2) each paragraph of the description which is amended. Matter deleted from the patent shall be placed between brackets and matter added shall be underlined. Copies of the printed claims from the patent may be used with any additions being indicated by carets and deleted material being placed between brackets. Claims must not be renumbered and the numbering of the claims added for reexamination must follow the

number of the highest numbered patent claim. No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. No new matter may be introduced into the patent.

The term "brackets" set forth in 37 CFR 1.121(b) means angular brackets, thus: [ ]. It does not encompass and is to be distinguished from parentheses ( ). Any amendment using parentheses to indicate canceled matter in a claim rewritten under 37 CFR 1.121(b) may be held nonresponsive in accordance with 37 CFR 1.121(c).

Where, by amendment under 37 CFR 1.121(b), a dependent claim is rewritten to be in independent form, the subject matter from the prior independent claim should be considered to be "added" matter and should be underlined.

37 CFR 1.121(f) requires a complete copy of any new or amended claim when presented during reexamination proceedings. See MPEP § 2221, § 2250, and § 2266. Form Paragraphs 6.33 and 6.34 may be used to inform applicants if the amendments are not in proper format.

#### ¶ 6.33 *Amendment to the Claims, 37 CFR 1.121*

The amendment to the claims has not been entered because it requests the addition of more than 5 words in any one claim. See 37 CFR 1.121(c) below:

(c) A particular claim may be amended in the examiner indicated in for the application in paragraph (a) of this section to the extent of corrections in spelling, punctuation, and typographical errors. Additional amendments in this manner will be admitted provided the changes are limited to: (1) deletions and/or (2) the addition of no more than five words in any one claim. Any amendment submitted with instructions to amend particular claims but failing to conform to the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section may be considered nonresponsive and treated accordingly.

The amendments to the claims should be made in accordance with 37 CFR 1.121(b) which states:

(b) Except as otherwise provided herein, a particular claim may be amended only by directions to cancel or by rewriting such claim with underlining below the word or words added and brackets around the word or words deleted. The rewriting of a claim in this form will be construed as directing the cancellation of the original claim; however, the original claim number followed by the parenthetical word "amended" must be used for the rewritten claim. If a previously rewritten claim is rewritten, underlining and bracketing will be applied in reference to the previously rewritten claim with the parenthetical expression "twice amended" "three times amended", etc., following the original claim number.

Applicant is given a ONE MONTH TIME LIMIT from the date of this letter, or until the expiration of the period for response set in the last Office action whichever is longer, to complete the response. NO EXTENSION OF THIS TIME LIMIT MAY BE GRANTED UNDER EITHER 37CFR 1.136(a) OR (b), but the period for response set in the last office action may be extended up to a maximum of six months.

#### ¶ 6.34 *Amendment of the Claims, Brackets or Underlining Cannot Be Used*

The claims of this application contain underlining or brackets that are intended to appear in the printed patent or are properly part of the claimed material. The brackets or underlining are not intended to indicate amendments or changes in the claims. Under these conditions, proposed amendments to the claims may not be made by underlining words added or by bracketing words to be deleted. Accordingly, the proposed amendment to the claims has not been entered. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).

Applicant is given a ONE MONTH TIME LIMIT from the date this letter, or until the expiration of the period for response set in the last Office action, whichever is longer, to complete the response. NO EXTENSION OF THIS TIME LIMIT MAY BE GRANTED UNDER EITHER 37 CFR 1.136(a) OR (b) but the period for response set in the last Office action may be extended up to a maximum of SIX MONTHS.<

#### 714.23 **Entry of Amendments, Directions for, Defective [R-1]**

>The directions for the entry of an amendment may be defective, as, inaccuracy in the line designated, or lack of precision where the word to which the amendment is directed occurs more than once in the specified line. If it is clear from the context what is the correct place of entry, the amendatory paper will be properly amended in the examining group; and notation thereof, initialed in ink by the examiner, who will assume full responsibility for the change, will be made on the margin of the amendatory paper. In the next Office action the applicant should be informed of this alteration in the amendment and the entry of the amendment as thus amended. The applicant will also be informed of the nonentry of an amendment where defective directions and context leave doubt as to the intent of applicant.<

#### 714.24 **Amendment of Amendments [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.124. *Amendment of amendments.*

When an amendatory clause is to be amended, it should be wholly rewritten and the original insertion canceled, so that no interlineations or deletions shall appear in the clause as finally presented. Matter canceled by amendment can be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the canceled matter as a new insertion.

However, where a relatively small amendment to a previous amendment can be made easily without causing the amendatory matter to be obscure or difficult to follow, such small amendment should be entered.<

#### 714.25 **Discourtesy of Applicant or Attorney [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.3. *Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.*

Applicants and their attorneys or agents are required to conduct their business with the Patent and Trademark Office with decorum and courtesy. Papers presented in violation of this requirement will be submitted to the Commissioner and will be returned by his direct order. Complaints against examiners and other employees must be made in communications separate from other papers.

All papers received in the Patent and Trademark Office should be briefly reviewed by the clerk, before entry, sufficiently to determine whether any discourteous remarks appear therein.

If the attorney is discourteous in the remarks or arguments in his amendment, either the discourtesy should be entirely ignored or the paper submitted to the group director with a view toward its being returned. See MPEP § 1003, item 3. If the group director determines that the remarks are in violation of 37 CFR 1.3, the Group Director will return the paper. <

**715 Swearing Back of Reference—Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131 [R-2]**

*37 CFR 1.131. Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication*

(a)(1) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. §§ 102(a) or (e), or 35 U.S.C. § 103 based on a U.S. patent to another which is prior art under 35 U.S.C. §§ 102(a) or (e) and which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in § 1.601(n), or on reference to a foreign patent or to a printed publication, the inventor of the subject matter of the rejected claim, the owner of the patent under reexamination, or the party qualified under §§ 1.42, 1.43 or 1.47, may submit an appropriate oath or declaration to overcome the patent or publication. The oath or declaration must include facts showing a completion of the invention in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country before the filing date of the application on which the \*>U.S.< patent issued, or before the date of the foreign patent, or before the date of the printed publication. When an appropriate oath or declaration is made, the patent or publication cited shall not bar the grant of a patent to the inventor or the confirmation of the patentability of the claims of the patent, unless the date of such patent or printed publication is more than one year prior to the date on which the inventor's or patent owner's application was filed in this country.

(2) A date of completion of the invention may not be established under this section before December 8, 1993, in a NAFTA country, or before January 1, 1996, in a WTO Member country other than a NAFTA country.

(b) The showing of facts shall be such, in character and weight, as to establish reduction to practice prior to the effective date of the reference, or conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to said date to a subsequent reduction to practice or to the filing of the application. Original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, must

accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration or their absence satisfactorily explained.

37 CFR 1.131(a) has been amended to implement the relevant provisions of Public Law 103-182, 107 Stat. 2057 (1993) (North American Free Trade Agreement Act) and Public Law 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809 (1994) (Uruguay Round Agreements Act), respectively. Under 37 CFR 1.131(a) as amended, which provides for the establishment of a date of completion of the invention in a NAFTA or WTO member country, as well as in the United States, an applicant can establish a date of completion in a NAFTA member country on or after December 8, 1993, the effective date of section 331 of Public Law 103-182, the North American Free Trade Agreement Act, and can establish a date of completion in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA member country on or after January 1, 1996, the effective date of section 531 of Public Law 103-465, the Uruguay Round Agreements Act (URAA). Acts occurring prior to the effective dates of NAFTA or URAA may be relied upon to show completion of the invention; however, a date of completion of the invention may not be established under 37 CFR 1.131 before December 8, 1993 in a NAFTA country or before January 1, 1996 in a WTO country other than a NAFTA country.

Any printed publication dated prior to an applicant's or patent owner's effective filing date, or any domestic patent of prior filing date, which is in its disclosure pertinent to the claimed invention, is available for use by the examiner as a reference, either basic or auxiliary, in the rejection of the claims of the application or patent under reexamination.

Such a rejection may be overcome, in certain instances noted below, by filing of an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131, known as "swearing back" of the reference.

It should be kept in mind that it is the rejection that is withdrawn and not the reference.

**SITUATIONS WHERE 37 CFR 1.131 AFFIDAVITS OR DECLARATIONS CAN BE USED**

Affidavits or declarations under 37 CFR 1.131 may be used:

(1) Where the date of the foreign patent or that of the publication is less than 1 year prior to applicant's or patent owner's effective filing date.

(2) Where the reference, a U.S. Patent, with a patent date less than one year prior to applicant's effective

filing date, shows but does not claim the same patentable invention. See MPEP § 715.05 for a discussion of “same patentable invention.”

#### SITUATIONS WHERE 37 CFR 1.131 AFFIDAVITS OR DECLARATIONS ARE INAPPROPRIATE

An affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 is not appropriate in the following situations:

(1) Where the reference publication date is more than one year back of applicant’s or patent owner’s effective filing date. Such a reference is a “statutory bar” under 35 U.S.C. 102(b).

(2) Where the reference U.S. patent claims the same patentable invention. See MPEP § 715.05 for a discussion of “same patentable invention” and MPEP § 2306.

(3) Where the reference is a foreign patent for the same invention to applicant or patent owner or his or her legal representatives or assigns issued prior to the filing date of the domestic application or patent on an application filed more than 12 months prior to the filing date of the domestic application. See 35 U.S.C. 102(d).

(4) Where the effective filing date of applicant’s or patent owner’s parent application or an International Convention proved filing date is prior to the effective date of the reference, an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 is unnecessary because the reference is not used. See MPEP § 201.11 to § 201.15.

(5) Where the reference is a prior U.S. patent to the same entity, claiming the same invention\*\* >. The < question involved is one of “double patenting.”

(6) Where the reference is the disclosure of a prior U.S. patent to the same party, not copending\*\* >. The < question is one of dedication to the public. Note however, *In re Gibbs and Griffin*, 168 USPQ 578 (CCPA 1971) which substantially did away with the doctrine of dedication.

(7) Where applicant has >clearly< admitted on the record that subject matter relied on in the reference is prior art\*>. In this case,< that subject matter may be used as a basis for rejecting his or her claims and may not be overcome by an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131. *In re Blout*, 333 F.2d 928, 142 USPQ 173 (CCPA 1964); *In re Lopresti*, 333 F.2d 932, 142 USPQ 177 (CCPA 1964); *In re Garfinkel*, 437 F.2d 1000, 168 USPQ 659 (CCPA 1971); *In re Hellsund*, 474 F.2d 1307, 177 USPQ 170 (CCPA 1973).

(8) Where the subject matter relied upon is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(f).

(9) Where the subject matter relied on in the reference is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(g). 37 CFR 1.131 is designed to permit an applicant to overcome rejections under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) and (e) based on patents and publications having effective filing dates less than one year prior to the effective filing date but subsequent to his or her actual date of invention. However, when the subject matter relied on is also available under 35 U.S.C. 102(g), a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration cannot be used to overcome it. *In re Bass*, 474 F.2d 1276, 177 USPQ 178 (CCPA 1973). This is because subject matter which is available under 35 U.S.C. 102(g) by definition must have been made before the applicant made his invention. References under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) and (e), by contrast, merely establish a presumption that their subject matter was made before applicant’s invention date. It is this presumption which may be rebutted by evidence submitted under 37 CFR 1.131.

(10) Where the subject matter corresponding to a lost count in an interference is either prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(g) or barred to applicant by the doctrine of interference estoppel. *In re Bandel*, 348 F.2d 563, 146 USPQ 389 (CCPA 1965); *In re Kroekel*, 803 F.2d 705, 231 USPQ 640 (Fed. Cir. 1986). See also *In re Deckler* 24 USPQ2d 1448 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (Under the principles of *res judicata* and *collateral estoppel*, applicant was not entitled to claims that were patentably indistinguishable from the claim lost in interference even though the subject matter of the lost count was not available for use in an obviousness rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103). But see *In re Zletz*, 893 F.2d 319, 13 USPQ2d 1320 (Fed. Cir. 1989) (A losing party to an interference, on showing that the invention now claimed is not “substantially the same” as that of the lost count, may employ the procedures of 37 CFR 1.131 to antedate the filing date of an interfering application). On the matter of when a “lost count” in an interference constitutes prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(g), see *In re McKellin*, 529 F.2d 1342, 188 USPQ 428 (CCPA 1976) (A count is not prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(g) as to the loser of an interference where the count was lost based on the winner’s foreign priority date). Similarly, where one party in an interference wins a count by establishing a date of invention in a NAFTA or WTO member country (see 35 U.S.C. 104), the subject matter of that count is unpatentable to the other

party by the doctrine of interference estoppel, even though it is not available as statutory prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(g) (see MPEP § 2138.01 and § 2138.02).

### REFERENCE DATE TO BE OVERCOME

The date to be overcome under 37 CFR 1.131 is the effective date of the reference (i.e., the date on which the reference is available as prior art).

#### 1. U.S. Patents

See MPEP § 2136 through § 2136.03 for a detailed discussion of the effective date of a U.S. patent as a reference.

Should it be established that the portion of the patent disclosure relied on as the reference was introduced into the patent application by amendment and as such was new matter, the date to be overcome by the affidavit or declaration is the date of amendment. *In re Willien*, 74 F.2d 550, 24 USPQ 210 (CCPA 1935). The effective date of a domestic patent when used as a reference is not the foreign filing date to which the application for patent may have been entitled under 35 U.S.C. 119(a) during examination. *In re Hilmer*, 359 F.2d 859, 149 USPQ 480 (1966). Therefore, the date to be overcome under 37 CFR 1.131 is the effective U.S. filing date, not the foreign priority date. Note, however, that, when the U.S. patent reference is entitled to a priority date based on an earlier filed international application (PCT), the effective filing date of the reference is the international filing date as defined by 35 U.S.C. 363. Further, note that the effective date of a patent issued on an application entitled to priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) to a provisional application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(b) is the filing date of the provisional application, except for a patent granted on an international application in which applicant has fulfilled the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2) and (4) of 35 U.S.C. 371. The effective date of a patent granted on such a 35 U.S.C. 371 application is the date on which the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2) and (4) were fulfilled.

#### 2. Foreign Patents

See MPEP § 2126 through § 2127 regarding date of availability of foreign patents as prior art.

#### 3. Printed Publications

A printed publication, including a published foreign patent application, is effective as of its publication date,

not its date of receipt by the publisher. For additional information regarding effective dates of printed publications, see MPEP § 2128 through § 2128.02.

### >FORM PARAGRAPHS<

Form Paragraphs 7.57 – 7.64 may be used to respond to 37 CFR 1.131 affidavits.

#### ¶ 7.57 Affidavit or Declaration Under 37CFR 1.131, Ineffective, Heading

The [1] filed on [2] under 37 CFR 1.131 has been considered but is ineffective to overcome the [3] reference.

#### Examiner Note:

1. In bracket 1, insert either "affidavit" or "declaration".
2. This paragraph must be followed by one or more of paragraphs 7.58 to 7.63 or a paragraph setting forth proper basis for the insufficiency, such as a failure to establish acts performed in this country, or that the scope of the declaration or affidavit is not commensurate with the scope of the claim(s).

#### ¶ 7.58 Affidavit or Declaration Under 37CFR 1.131, Ineffective, Claiming Same Invention

The [1] reference is a U.S. patent that claims the rejected invention. An affidavit or declaration is inappropriate under 37 CFR 1.131(a) when the patent is claiming the same patentable invention, see MPEP § 2306. The patent can only be overcome by establishing priority of invention through interference proceedings. See MPEP Chapter 2300 for information on initiating interference proceedings.

#### Examiner Note:

1. If used to respond to the submission of an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit, this paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.
2. This paragraph may be used without paragraph 7.57 when an affidavit under 37 CFR 1.131 has not yet been filed, and the examiner desires to notify applicant that the submission of an affidavit under 37 CFR 1.131 would be inappropriate.

#### ¶ 7.59 Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, Insufficient Evidence of Reduction to Practice Before Reference Date

The evidence submitted is insufficient to establish a reduction to practice of the invention in this country or a NAFTA or WTO member country prior to the effective date of the [1] reference. [2].

#### Examiner Note:

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.
2. An explanation of the lack of showing of the alleged reduction to practice must be provided in bracket 2.

#### ¶ 7.60 Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, >Ineffective, < Reference is a Statutory Bar

The [1] reference is a statutory bar under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) and thus cannot be overcome by an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131.

#### Examiner Note:

This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.

#### ¶ 7.61 Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, >Ineffective, < Insufficient Evidence of Conception

The evidence submitted is insufficient to establish a conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the [1] reference. While conception is the mental part of the inventive act, it must be capable of proof, such as by demonstrative evidence or by a complete disclosure to another. Conception is more than a vague idea of how to solve a problem. The requisite means themselves and their interaction must also be comprehended. See *Mergenthaler v. Scudder*, 1897 C.D. 724, 81 O.G. 1417 (D.C. Cir. 1897). [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.
2. An explanation of the deficiency in the showing of conception must be presented in bracket 2.
3. If the affidavit additionally fails to establish either diligence or a subsequent reduction to practice, this paragraph should be followed by paragraph 7.62 and/or 7.63. If either diligence or a reduction to practice is established, a statement to that effect should follow this paragraph.

¶ 7.62 *Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, >Ineffective, < Diligence Lacking*

The evidence submitted is insufficient to establish diligence from a date prior to the date of reduction to practice of the [1] reference to either a constructive reduction to practice or an actual reduction to practice. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.
2. If the affidavit additionally fails to establish conception, this paragraph must also be preceded by paragraph 7.61. If the affidavit establishes conception, a statement to that effect should be added to this paragraph.
3. If the affidavit additionally fails to establish an alleged reduction to practice prior to the application filing date, this paragraph must be followed by paragraph 7.63. If such an alleged reduction to practice is established, a statement to that effect should be added to this paragraph.
4. An explanation of the reasons for a holding of non-diligence must be provided in bracket 2.
5. See MPEP § 715.07(a), *Ex parte Merz*, 75 USPQ 296 (Bd. App. 1947), which indicates that diligence is not required after reduction to practice.

¶ 7.63 *Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, >Ineffective, < Insufficient Evidence of Actual Reduction To Practice*

The evidence submitted is insufficient to establish applicant's alleged actual reduction to practice of the invention in this country or a NAFTA or WTO member country after the effective date of the [1] reference. [2].

**Examiner Note:**

1. This paragraph must be preceded by paragraph 7.57.
2. If the alleged reduction to practice is prior to the effective date of the reference, do not use this paragraph. See paragraph 7.59.
3. If the affidavit additionally fails to establish either conception or diligence, paragraphs 7.61 and/or 7.62 should precede this paragraph. If either conception or diligence is established, a statement to that effect should be included after this paragraph.
4. An explanation of the lack of showing of the alleged reduction to practice must be given in bracket 2.

¶ 7.64 *Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.131, Effective to Overcome Reference*

The [1] filed on [2] under 37 CFR 1.131 is sufficient to overcome the [3] reference.

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert either "affidavit" or "declaration".
2. In bracket 2, insert the filing date of the affidavit or declaration.
3. In bracket 3, insert the name of the reference.

## 715.01 37 CFR 1.131 Affidavits Versus 37 CFR 1.132 Affidavits [R-1]

>The purpose of a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration is to overcome a prior art rejection by proving invention of the claimed subject matter by applicant prior to the effective date of the reference relied upon in the rejection.

In some situations, an applicant may, alternatively, be able to overcome prior art rejections relying on references which are available as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (e) by proving that the subject matter relied upon in the reference was applicant's own invention.

Similarly, where the reference relied upon in a 35 U.S.C. 103 rejection qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g), applicant may be able to overcome this rejection by proving that the subject matter relied upon and the claimed invention were commonly owned or subject to common assignment at the time the latter invention was made. In such situations, an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132, rather than 37 CFR 1.131, would be appropriate. See MPEP § 715.01(a) through § 715.01(c) for specific situations where these issues may arise. <

### 715.01(a) Reference Is a Joint Patent to Applicant and Another [R-1]

>When subject matter, disclosed but not claimed in a patent issued jointly to S and another, is claimed in a later application filed by S, the joint patent is a valid reference unless overcome by affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 or an unequivocal declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 by S that he/she conceived or invented the subject matter disclosed in the patent and relied on in the rejection. *In re DeBaun*, 214 USPQ 933 (CCPA 1982). See MPEP § 716.10 for a discussion of the use of 37 CFR 1.132 affidavits or declarations to overcome rejections by establishing that the subject matter relied on in the patent was the invention of the applicant. Disclaimer by

**715.01(b)**

the other patentee should not be required but, if submitted, may be accepted by the examiner.

Although affidavits or declarations submitted for the purpose of establishing that the reference discloses applicant's invention are properly filed under 37 CFR 1.132, rather than 37 CFR 1.131, such affidavits submitted improperly under 37 CFR 1.131 will be considered as though they were filed under 37 CFR 1.132 to traverse a ground of rejection. *In re Facius*, 408 F.2d 1396, 161 USPQ 294 (CCPA 1969). <

**715.01(b) Reference and Application Have Common Assignee [R-2]**

The mere fact that the reference patent which shows but does not claim certain subject matter and the application which claims it are owned by the same assignee does not avoid the necessity of filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131, in the absence of a showing under 37 CFR 1.132 that the patentee derived the subject matter relied on from the applicant (MPEP § 716.10). The common assignee does not obtain any rights in this regard by virtue of common ownership which he would not have in the absence of common ownership. *In re Beck*, \*\*>155 F.2d 398, 69 USPQ 520 (CCPA 1946)<; *Pierce v. Watson*, >275 F.2d 890, < 124 USPQ 356 >(D.C. Cir. 1960)<; *In re Friette* \*\*, 412 F.2d 269, 162 USPQ 163>(CCPA 1969)<. Where, however, a rejection is applied under 35 U.S.C. 102(f)/103 or 35 U.S.C. 102(g)/103 using the reference patent, a showing that the invention was commonly owned at the time the later invention was made would preclude such a rejection or be sufficient to overcome such a rejection.

**715.01(c) Reference Is Publication of Applicant's Own Invention [R-2]**

Unless it is a statutory bar, a rejection based on a publication may be overcome by a showing that it was published either by applicant himself/herself or on his/her behalf. Since such a showing is not made to show a date of invention by applicant prior to the date of the reference under 37 CFR 1.131, the limitation in 35 U.S.C. 104 and in 37 CFR 1.131(a)(1) that only acts which occurred in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country may be relied on to establish a date of invention is not applicable. *Ex parte Lemieux*, 115 USPQ 148, 1957 C.D. 47, 725 O.G. 4 (Bd. App. 1957); *Ex parte Powell* \*\*, 1938 C.D.

15, 489 O.G. 231 (Bd. App. 1938). See MPEP § 716.10 regarding 37 CFR 1.132 affidavits submitted to show that the reference is a publication of applicant's own invention.

**COAUTHORSHIP**

Where the applicant is one of the co-authors of a publication cited against his or her application, he or she may overcome the rejection by filing an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131. Alternatively, the applicant may overcome the rejection by filing a specific affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 establishing that the article is describing applicant's own work. An affidavit or declaration by applicant alone indicating that applicant is the sole inventor and that the others were merely working under his direction is sufficient to remove the publication as a reference under 35 U.S.C. 102(a). *In re Katz*, 687 F.2d 450, 215 USPQ 14 (CCPA 1982).

**DERIVATION**

When the unclaimed subject matter of a patent or other publication is applicant's own invention, a rejection on that patent or publication may be removed by submission of evidence establishing the fact that the patentee or author derived his or her knowledge of the relevant subject matter from applicant. Moreover applicant must further show that he or she made the invention upon which the relevant disclosure in the patent or publication is based. *In re Mathews*, 408 F.2d 1393, 161 USPQ 276, 56 CCPA 1033 (CCPA 1969); *In re Facius*, 408 F.2d 1396, 161 USPQ 294, 56 CCPA 1384 (CCPA 1969).

**715.02 How Much of the Claimed Invention Must Be Shown, Including the General Rule as to Generic Claims [R-2]**

The 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration must establish possession of either the whole invention claimed or something falling within the claim (such as a species of a claimed genus), in the sense that the claim as a whole reads on it. *In re Tanczyn*, 146 USPQ 298 (CCPA 1965) (Where applicant claims an alloy comprising both nitrogen and molybdenum, an affidavit showing applicant made an alloy comprising nitrogen but not molybdenum is not sufficient under 37 CFR 1.131 to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103 based on the combined teachings of one reference disclosing an alloy comprising nitrogen but not molybdenum and a second reference dis-

closing an alloy comprising molybdenum but not nitrogen). Note, however, where the differences between the claimed invention and the disclosure of the reference(s) are so small as to render the claims obvious over the reference(s), an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 is required to show no more than the reference shows. *In re Stryker*, 168 USPQ 372 (CCPA 1971). In other words, where the examiner, in rejecting a claim under 35 U.S.C. 103, has treated a claim limitation as being an obvious feature or modification of the disclosure of the reference(s) relied upon, without citation of a reference which teaches such feature or modification, a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration \*\*> may be sufficient< to overcome the rejection \*\*> even if< it does not show such feature or modification.

Further, \*\* a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit is not insufficient merely because it does not show the identical disclosure of the reference(s) relied upon. If the affidavit contains facts showing a completion of the invention commensurate with the extent >of< the invention as claimed is shown in the reference, the affidavit or declaration is sufficient, whether or not it is a showing of the identical disclosure of the reference. *In re Wakefield*, 422 F.2d 897, 164 USPQ 636 (CCPA 1970).

Even if applicant's 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit is not fully commensurate with the rejected claim, the applicant can still overcome the rejection by showing that the differences between the claimed invention and the showing under 37 CFR 1.131 would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art, in view of applicant's 37 CFR 1.131 evidence, prior to the effective date of the reference(s). Such evidence is sufficient because applicant's possession of what is shown carries with it possession of variations and adaptations which would have been obvious, at the same time, to one of ordinary skill in the art. However, the affidavit or declaration showing must still establish possession of the invention (i.e., the basic inventive concept) and not just of what one reference (in a combination of applied references) happens to show, if that reference does not itself teach the basic inventive concept. *In re Spiller*, 500 F.2d 1170, 182 USPQ 614 (CCPA 1974) (Claimed invention was use of electrostatic forces to adhere dry starch particles to a wet paper web on the Fourdrinier wire of a paper-making machine. 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit established use of electrostatic forces to adhere starch particles to wet blotting paper moved over a fluidized bed of starch particles prior to the

applied reference date. Affidavit was sufficient in view of prior art reference showing that deposition of dry coatings directly on wet webs on the Fourdrinier wire of a paper-making machine was well known in the art prior to the date of the applied reference. The affidavit established possession of the basic invention, i.e., use of electrostatic forces to adhere starch to wet paper.)

#### SWEARING BEHIND ONE OF A PLURALITY OF COMBINED REFERENCES

Applicant may overcome a 35 U.S.C. 103 rejection based on a combination of references by showing completion of the invention by applicant prior to the effective date of any of the references; applicant need not antedate the reference with the earliest filing date. However, as discussed above, applicant's 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit must show possession of either the whole invention as claimed or something falling within the claim(s) prior to the effective date of the reference being antedated; it is not enough merely to show possession of what the reference happens to show if the reference does not teach the basic inventive concept.

Where a claim has been rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103 based on Reference A in view of Reference B, with the effective date of secondary Reference B being earlier than that of Reference A, the applicant can rely on the teachings of Reference B to show that the differences between what is shown in his or her 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration and the claimed invention would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art prior to the date of Reference A. However, the 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration must still establish possession of the claimed invention, not just what Reference A shows, if Reference A does not teach the basic inventive concept.

#### GENERAL RULE AS TO GENERIC CLAIMS

A reference applied against generic claims may (in most cases) be antedated as to such claims by an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 showing completion of the invention of only a single species, within the genus, prior to the effective date of the reference (assuming, of course, that the reference is not a statutory bar or a patent claiming the same invention). See *Ex parte Biesecker*, 144 USPQ 129 (Bd. App. 1964). See, also, *In re Fong*, 288 F.2d 932, 129 USPQ 264 (CCPA 1961); *In re Defano*, 392 F.2d 280, 157 USPQ 192 (CCPA 1968) (distinguishing chemical species of genus compounds from embodiments of a single in-

**715.03**

vention). See, however, MPEP § 715.03 for practice relative to cases in unpredictable arts.

**715.03 Genus—Species, Practice Relative to Cases Where Predictability Is in Question [R-1]**

> Where generic claims have been rejected on a reference which discloses a species not antedated by the affidavit or declaration, the rejection will not ordinarily be withdrawn, subject to the rules set forth below, unless the applicant is able to establish that he or she was in possession of the generic invention prior to the effective date of the reference. In other words, the affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 must show as much as the minimum disclosure required by a patent specification to furnish support for a generic claim.

**REFERENCE DISCLOSES SPECIES**

*Species Claim*

Where the claim under rejection recites a species and the reference discloses the claimed species, the rejection can be overcome under 37 CFR 1.131 directly by showing prior completion of the claimed species or indirectly by a showing of prior completion of a different species coupled with a showing that the claimed species would have been an obvious modification of the species completed by applicant. See *In re Spiller*, 500 F.2d 1170, 182 USPQ 614 (1974).

*Genus Claim*

The principle is well established that the disclosure of a species in a cited reference is sufficient to prevent a later applicant from obtaining a "generic claim." *In re Gosteli*, 872 F.2d 1008, 10 USPQ2d 1614 (Fed. Cir. 1989); *In re Slayter*, 276 F.2d 408, 125 USPQ 345 (CCPA 1960).

Where the only pertinent disclosure in the reference is a single species of the claimed genus, the applicant can overcome the rejection directly under 37 CFR 1.131 by showing prior possession of the species disclosed in the reference. On the other hand, a reference which discloses several species of a claimed genus can be overcome directly under 37 CFR 1.131 only by a showing that the applicant completed, prior to the date of the reference, all of the species shown in the reference. *In re tempel*, 113 USPQ 77 (CCPA 1957).

Proof of prior completion of a species different from the reference species will be sufficient to overcome a reference indirectly under 37 CFR 1.131 if the reference species would have been obvious in view of the species shown to have been made by the applicant. *In re Clarke*, 148 USPQ 665 (CCPA 1966); *In re Plumb*, 176 USPQ 323 (CCPA 1973); *In re Hostettler*, 356 F.2d 562, 148 USPQ 514 (CCPA 1966). Alternatively, if the applicant cannot show possession of the reference species in this manner, the applicant may be able to antedate the reference indirectly by, for example, showing prior completion of one or more species which put him or her in possession of the claimed genus prior to the reference date. The test is whether the species completed by applicant prior to the reference date provided an adequate basis for inferring that the invention has generic applicability. *In re Shokal*, 242 F.2d 771, 113 USPQ 283 (CCPA 1957); *In re Rainer*, 390 F.2d 771, 156 USPQ 334 (CCPA 1968); *In re Clarke*, 148 USPQ 665 (CCPA 1966); *In re Plumb*, 176 USPQ 323 (CCPA 1973).

It is not necessary for the affidavit evidence to show that the applicant viewed his or her invention as encompassing more than the species \*\* actually made. The test is whether the facts set out in the affidavit are such as would persuade one skilled in the art that the applicant possessed so much of the invention as is shown in the reference. *In re Schaub*, 537 F.2d 509, 190 USPQ 324 (CCPA 1976).

*Species Versus Embodiments*

References which disclose one or more embodiments of a single claimed invention, as opposed to species of a claimed genus, can be overcome by filing a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit showing prior completion of a single embodiment of the invention, whether it is the same or a different embodiment from that disclosed in the reference. See *In re Fong*, 288 F.2d 932, 129 USPQ 264 (CCPA 1961) (Where applicant discloses and claims a washing solution comprising a detergent and polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), with no criticality alleged as to the particular detergent used, the PVP being used as a soil-suspending agent to prevent the redeposition of the soil removed, the invention was viewed as the use of PVP as a soil-suspending agent in washing with a detergent. The disclosure in the reference of the use of PVP with two detergents, both of which differed from that shown in applicant's 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit, was considered a

disclosure of different embodiments of a single invention, rather than species of a claimed genus); *In re Defano*, 392 F.2d 280, 157 USPQ 192 (CCPA 1968).

#### REFERENCE DISCLOSES CLAIMED GENUS

In general, where the reference discloses the claimed genus, a showing of completion of a single species within the genus is sufficient to antedate the reference under 37 CFR 1.131. *Ex parte Biesecker*, 144 USPQ 129 (Bd. App. 1964).

In cases where predictability is in question, on the other hand, a showing of prior completion of one or a few species within the disclosed genus is generally not sufficient to overcome the reference. *In re Shokal*, 242 F.2d 771, 113 USPQ 283 (CCPA 1957). The test is whether the species completed by applicant prior to the reference date provided an adequate basis for inferring that the invention has generic applicability. *In re Clarke*, 356 F.2d 987, 148 USPQ 665 (CCPA 1965); *In re Rainer*, 390 F.2d 771, 156 USPQ 334 (CCPA 1968); *In re DeFano*, 392 F.2d 280, 157 USPQ 192 (CCPA 1968); *In re Mantell*, 454 F.2d 1398, 172 USPQ 530 (CCPA 1973). In the case of a small genus such as the halogens, which consists of four species, a reduction to practice of three, or perhaps even two, species might show possession of the generic invention, while in the case of a genus comprising hundreds of species, reduction to practice of a considerably larger number of species would be necessary. *In re Shokal, supra*.

It is not necessary for the affidavit evidence to show that the applicant viewed his or her invention as encompassing more than the species he or she actually made. The test is whether the facts set out in the affidavit are such as would persuade one skilled in the art that the applicant possessed so much of the invention as is shown in the reference. *In re Schaub*, 537 F. 509, 190 USPQ 324 (CCPA 1976).

### 715.04 Who May Make Affidavit or Declaration; Formal Requirements of Affidavits and Declarations [R-1]

#### > WHO MAY MAKE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION

(A) All the inventors of the subject matter claimed.

(B) An affidavit or declaration by less than all named inventors of an application is accepted where it is shown that less than all named inventors of an application invented the subject matter of the claim or claims under rejection. For example, one of two joint inventors is accepted where it is shown that one of the joint inventors is the sole inventor of the claim or claims under rejection.

(C) The assignee or other party in interest when it is not possible to produce the affidavit or declaration of the inventor. *Ex parte Foster*, 1903 C.D. 213, 105 O.G. 261 (Comm'r Pat. 1903).

Affidavits or declarations to overcome a rejection of a claim or claims on a cited patent or publication must be made by the inventor or inventors of the subject matter of the rejected claim(s) or the assignee or other party in interest when it is not possible to produce the affidavit or declaration of the inventor(s). Thus, where all of the named inventors of a pending application are not inventors of every claim of the application, any affidavit under 37 CFR 1.131 could be signed by only the inventor(s) of the subject matter of the rejected claims. Further, where it is shown that a joint inventor is deceased, refuses to sign, or is otherwise unavailable, the signatures of the remaining joint inventors are sufficient. However, the affidavit or declaration, even though signed by fewer than all the joint inventors, must show completion of the invention by all of the joint inventors of the subject matter of the claim(s) under rejection. *In re Carlson*, 79 F.2d 900, 27 USPQ 400 (CCPA 1935).

#### FORMAL REQUIREMENTS OF AFFIDAVITS AND DECLARATIONS

An affidavit is a statement in writing made under oath before a notary public, magistrate, or officer authorized to administer oaths. See MPEP § 604 through § 604.06 for additional information regarding formal requirements of affidavits.

37 CFR 1.68 permits a declaration to be used instead of an affidavit. The declaration must include an acknowledgment by the declarant that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon. The declarant must set forth in the body of the declaration that all statements made of the declarant's own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.<

## 715.05

## 715.05 Patent Claiming Same Invention

## [R-1]

>When the reference in question is a noncommonly owned patent claiming the same invention as applicant and its issue date is less than one year prior to the filing date of the application being examined, applicant's remedy, if any, must be by way of 37 CFR 1.608 instead of 37 CFR 1.131. The examiner should therefore take note whether the status of the patent as a reference is that of a PATENT or a PUBLICATION. If the patent is claiming the same invention as the application, this fact should be noted in the Office action. The reference patent can then be overcome only by way of interference. Note, however, 35 U.S.C. 135 and MPEP § 2300.01.

Where the reference patent and the application at issue are commonly owned and are claiming the same invention, an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 may be used to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102 or 103 only if a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 has been granted.

A 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit is ineffective to overcome a United States patent, not only where there is a verbatim correspondence between claims of the application and of the patent, but also where there is no patentable distinction between the respective claims. *In re Hidy*, 303 F.2d 954, 133 USPQ 650 (CCPA 1962); *In re Wagenhorst*, 20 CCPA 829, 62 F.2d 831, 16 USPQ 126 (CCPA 1933); *In re Teague*, 254 F.2d 145, 117 USPQ 284 (CCPA 1958); *In re Clark*, 457 F.2d 1004, 173 USPQ 359 (CCPA 1972); *In re Ward*, 236 F.2d 428, 111 USPQ 101 (CCPA 1956).

If the application (or patent under reexamination) and the domestic patent contain claims which are identical, or which are not patentably distinct, then the application and patent are claiming the "same patentable invention," defined by 37 CFR 1.601(n) as follows:

Invention "A" is the "same patentable invention" as an invention "B" when invention "A" is the same as (35 U.S.C. 102) or is obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention "B" assuming invention "B" is prior art with respect to invention "A."

As provided in 37 CFR 1.601(i), an interference may be declared whenever an examiner is of the opinion that an application and a patent contain claims for the "same patentable invention." An applicant who is claiming an invention which is identical to, or obvious in view of, the invention as claimed in a domestic patent cannot employ

an affidavit under 37 CFR 1.131 as a means for avoiding an interference with the patent. To allow an applicant to do so would result in the issuance of two patents to the same invention.

Since 37 CFR 1.131 defines "same patentable invention" in the same way as the interference rules (37 CFR 1.601(n)), the PTO cannot prevent an applicant from overcoming a reference by a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration on the grounds that the reference domestic patent claims applicant's invention and, at the same time, deny applicant an interference on the grounds that the claims of the application and those of the reference patent are not for substantially the same invention. See *In re Eickmeyer*, 602 F.2d 974, 202 USPQ 655 (CCPA 1979). Where, in denying an applicant's motion in interference to substitute a broader count, it is held that the limitation to be deleted was material for the opponent patentee, this constitutes a holding that the proposed count is for an invention which is not the "same patentable invention" claimed by the patentee. Therefore, the applicant may file an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 to overcome a prior art rejection based on the patent. *Adler v. Kluver*, 159 USPQ 511 (Bd. Pat. Int. 1968).

Form paragraph 7.58 (reproduced in MPEP § 715) may be used to note such a situation in the Office action.<

## 715.07 Facts and Documentary Evidence [R-2]

### GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The essential thing to be shown under 37 CFR 1.131 is priority of invention and this may be done by any satisfactory evidence of the fact. FACTS, not conclusions, must be alleged \*\*>. Evidence< in the form of exhibits \*> may accompany< the affidavit or declaration. Each exhibit relied upon should be specifically referred to in the affidavit or declaration, in terms of what it is relied upon to show. For example, the allegations of fact might be supported by submitting as evidence one or more of the following:

- (1) attached sketches;
- (2) attached blueprints;
- (3) attached photographs;
- (4) attached reproductions of notebook entries;
- (5) an accompanying model;

(6) attached supporting statements by witnesses, where verbal disclosures are the evidence relied upon, *Ex parte Ovshinsky*, 10 USPQ2d 1075 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989).

(7) testimony given in an interference. Where interference testimony is used, the applicant must point out which parts of the testimony are being relied on; examiners cannot be expected to search the entire interference record for the evidence. *Ex parte Homan*, 1905 C.D. 288 (Comm'r Pat. 1905).

(8) Disclosure documents (MPEP § 1706) may be used as documentary evidence of conception.

A general allegation that the invention was completed prior to the date of the reference is not sufficient. *Ex parte Saunders*, 1883 C.D. 23, 23 O.G. 1224 (Comm'r Pat. 1883). Similarly, a declaration by the inventor to the effect that his or her invention was conceived or reduced to practice prior to the reference date without a statement of facts demonstrating the correctness of this conclusion, is insufficient to satisfy 37 CFR 1.131.

\*\* 37 CFR 1.131(b) requires that original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration or their absence satisfactorily explained.

If the applicant made sketches he should so state, and produce and describe them; if the sketches were made and lost, and their contents remembered, they should be reproduced and furnished in place of the originals. The same course should be pursued if the disclosure was by means of models. If neither sketches nor models are relied upon, but it is claimed that verbal disclosures, sufficiently clear to indicate definite conception of the invention, were made the witness should state as nearly as possible the language used in imparting knowledge of the invention to others.

*Ex parte Donovan*, 1890 C.D. 109, 52 O.G. 309 (Comm'r Pat. 1890).

However, when reviewing a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration, the examiner must consider all of the evidence presented in its entirety, including the affidavits or declarations and all accompanying exhibits, records and "notes." An accompanying exhibit need not support all claimed limitations, provided that any missing limitation is supported by the declaration itself. *Ex parte Ovshinsky*, 10 USPQ2d 1075 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989).

The affidavit or declaration and exhibits must clearly explain which facts or data applicant is relying on to show completion of his or her invention prior to the particular date. Vague and general statements in broad terms about what the exhibits describe along with a general assertion that the exhibits describe a reduction to practice "amounts essentially to mere pleading, unsupported by proof or a showing of facts" and, thus, does not satisfy the requirements of 37 CFR 1.131(b). *In re Borkowski*, 505 F.2d 713, 184 USPQ 29 (CCPA 1974). >Applicant must give a clear explanation of the exhibits pointing out exactly what facts are established and relied on by applicant. *Id.* at 33; see also *In re Harry*, 333 F.2d 920, 142 USPQ 164 (CCPA 1964) (Affidavit "asserts that facts exist but does not tell what they are or when they occurred.")<

#### ESTABLISHMENT OF DATES

If the dates of the exhibits have been removed or blocked off, the matter of dates can be taken care of in the body of the oath or declaration.

When alleging that conception or a reduction to practice occurred prior to the effective date of the reference, the dates in the oath or declaration may be the actual dates or, if the applicant or patent owner does not desire to disclose his or her actual dates, he or she may merely allege that the acts referred to occurred prior to a specified date. However, the actual dates of acts relied on to establish diligence must be provided. See MPEP § 715.07(a) regarding the diligence requirement.

#### THREE WAYS TO SHOW PRIOR INVENTION

The affidavit or declaration must state FACTS and produce such documentary evidence and exhibits in support thereof as are available to show conception and completion of invention in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country (MPEP § 715.07(c)), at least the conception being at a date prior to the effective date of the reference. Where there has not been reduction to practice prior to the date of the reference, the applicant or patent owner must also show diligence in the completion of his or her invention from a time just prior to the date of the reference continuously up to the date of an actual reduction to practice or up to the date of filing his

## 715.07

or her application (filing constitutes a constructive reduction to practice, 37 CFR 1.131).

As discussed above, 37 CFR 1.131(b) provides three ways in which an applicant can establish prior invention of the claimed subject matter. The showing of facts must be sufficient to show:

(1) reduction to practice of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference; or

(2) conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to the reference date to a subsequent (actual) reduction to practice; or

(3) conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to the reference date to the filing date of the application (constructive reduction to practice).

A conception of an invention, though evidenced by disclosure, drawings, and even a model, is not a complete invention under the patent laws, and confers no rights on an inventor, and has no effect on a subsequently granted patent to another, **UNLESS THE INVENTOR FOLLOWS IT WITH REASONABLE DILIGENCE BY SOME OTHER ACT**, such as an actual reduction to practice or filing an application for a patent. *Automatic Weighing Mach. Co. v. Pneumatic Scale Corp., Limited*, 166 F.2d 288, 1909 C.D. 498, 139 O.G. 991 (1st Cir. 1909).

Conception is the mental part of the inventive act, but it must be capable of proof, as by drawings, complete disclosure to another person, etc. In *Mergenthaler v. Scudder*, 1897 C.D. 724, 81 O.G. 1417 (D.C. Cir. 1897), it was established that conception is more than a mere vague idea of how to solve a problem; the means themselves and their interaction must be comprehended also.

In general, proof of actual reduction to practice requires a showing that the apparatus actually existed and worked for its intended purpose. However, "there are some devices so simple that a mere construction of them is all that is necessary to constitute reduction to practice." *In re Asahi/America Inc.*, 94-1249 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (Citing *Newkirk v. Lulegian*, 825 F.2d 1581, 3USPQ2d 1793 (Fed. Cir. 1987) and *Sachs v. Wadsworth*, 48 F.2d 928, 929, 9 USPQ 252, 253 (CCPA 1931). The claimed restraint coupling held to be so simple a device that mere construction of it was sufficient to constitute reduction to practice. Photographs, coupled with articles and a technical report describing the coupling in detail were sufficient to show reduction to practice.)

The facts to be established under 37 CFR 1.131 are similar to those to be proved in interference. The difference lies in the way in which the evidence is presented. If applicant disagrees with a holding that the facts are insufficient to overcome the rejection, his remedy is by appeal from the continued rejection.

See MPEP § 2138.04 through § 2138.06 for a detailed discussion of the concepts of conception, reasonable diligence, and reduction to practice.

For the most part, the terms "conception," "reasonable diligence," and "reduction to practice" have the same meanings under 37 CFR 1.131 as they have in interference proceedings. However, in *In re Eickmeyer*, 602 F.2d 974, 202 USPQ 655 (CCPA 1979), the court stated the following:

The purpose of filing a [37 CFR 1.]131 affidavit is not to demonstrate prior invention, per se, but merely to antedate the effective date of a reference. See *In re Moore*, 58 CCPA 1340, 444 F.2d 572, 170 USPQ 260 (1971). Although the test for sufficiency of an affidavit under Rule 131(b) parallels that for determining priority of invention in an interference under 35 U.S.C. 102(g), it does not necessarily follow that Rule 131 practice is controlled by interference law. To the contrary, "[t]he parallel to interference practice found in Rule 131(b) should be recognized as one of convenience rather than necessity." *Id.* at 1353, 444 F.2d at 580, 170 USPQ at 267. Thus, "the 'conception' and 'reduction to practice' which must be established under the rule need not be the same as what is required in the 'interference' sense of those terms." *Id.*; accord, *In re Borkowski*, 505 F.2d 713, 718-19, 184 USPQ 29, 33 (CCPA 1974).

One difference is that in interference practice a reduction to practice requires a proof that a utility was known, whereas under 37 CFR 1.131 practice, proof of a utility must be shown only if the reference discloses a utility. *In re Wilkinson*, 304 F.2d 673, 134 USPQ 171 (CCPA 1962); *In re Moore*, 444 F.2d 572, 170 USPQ 260 (CCPA 1971). Where proof of utility is required, whether or not test results are required to establish the utility of the subject matter in question depends on the facts of each case. The ultimate issue is whether the evidence is such that one of ordinary skill in the art would be

satisfied to a reasonable certainty that the subject matter necessary to antedate the reference possessed the alleged utility. *In re Blake*, 358 F.2d 149 USPQ 217 (CCPA 1966). Also, in interference practice, conception, reasonable diligence, and reduction to practice require corroboration, whereas averments made in a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration do not require corroboration; an applicant may stand on his own affidavit or declaration if he so elects. *Ex parte Hook*, 102 USPQ 130 (Bd. App. 1953).

Form Paragraph 7.59 or 7.63 (both reproduced in MPEP § 715) may be used where insufficient evidence is included in a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit.

### 715.07(a) Diligence [R-1]

>Where conception occurs prior to the date of the reference, but reduction to practice is afterward, it is not enough merely to allege that applicant or patent owner had been diligent. *Ex parte Hunter*, 1889 C.D. 218, 49 O.G. 733 (Comm'r Pat. 1889). Rather, applicant must show evidence of facts establishing diligence.

In determining the sufficiency of a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration, diligence need not be considered unless conception of the invention prior to the effective date is clearly established, since diligence comes into question only after prior conception is established. *Ex parte Kantor*, 177 USPQ 455 (Bd. App. 1958).

What is meant by diligence is brought out in *Christie v. Seybold*, 1893 C.D. 515, 64 O.G. 1650 (6th Cir. 1893). In patent law, an inventor is either diligent at a given time or he is not diligent; there are no degrees of diligence. An applicant may be diligent within the meaning of the patent law when he or she is doing nothing, if his or her lack of activity is excused. Note, however, that the record must set forth an explanation or excuse for the inactivity; the PTO or courts will not speculate on possible explanations for delay or inactivity. See *In re Nelson*, 420 F.2d 1079, 164 USPQ 458 (CCPA 1970). Diligence must be judged on the basis of the particular facts in each case. See MPEP § 2138.06 for a detailed discussion of the diligence requirement for proving prior invention.

Under 37 CFR 1.131, the critical period in which diligence must be shown begins just prior to the effective date of the reference and ends with the date of a reduction to practice, either actual or constructive (i.e., filing a United States patent application). Note, therefore, that only diligence before reduction to practice is a material

consideration. The "lapse of time between the completion or reduction to practice of an invention and the filing of an application thereon" is not relevant to an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131. See *Ex parte Merz*, 75 USPQ 296 (Bd. App. 1947).

Form Paragraph 7.62 (reproduced in MPEP § 715) may be used to respond to a 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit where diligence is lacking. <

### 715.07(b) Interference Testimony Sometimes Used [R-1]

>In place of an affidavit or declaration the testimony of the applicant in an interference may be sometimes used to antedate a reference in lieu of 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration.

The part of the testimony to form the basis of priority over the reference should be pointed out. *Ex parte Bowyer*, 1939 C.D. 5, 42 USPQ 526 (Comm'r Pat. 1939). <

### 715.07(c) Acts Relied Upon Must Have Been Carried Out in This Country or a NAFTA or WTO Member Country [R-1]

>35 U.S.C. 104. *Invention Made Abroad*

In proceedings before the Patent and Trademark Office and in the courts, an applicant for a patent, or a patentee, may not establish a date of invention by reference to knowledge or use thereof, or other activity with respect thereto, in a foreign country other than a NAFTA country or a WTO member country, except as provided in sections 119 and 365 of this title. Where an invention was made by a person, civil or military, while domiciled in the United States and serving in a foreign country in connection with operations by or on behalf of the United States, he shall be entitled to the same rights of priority with respect to such invention as if the same had been made in the United States.

The 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration must contain an allegation that the acts relied upon to establish the date prior to the reference were carried out in this country or in a NAFTA country or WTO member country. See 35 U.S.C. 104.

Under 37 CFR 1.131(a), which provides for the establishment of a date of completion of the invention in a NAFTA or WTO member country, as well as in the United States, an applicant can establish a date of completion in a NAFTA member country on or after December 8, 1993, the effective date of section 331 of Public Law 103-182, the North American Free Trade Agreement Act, and can establish a date of completion in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA member country on or after January 1, 1996, the effective date

**715.07(d)**

of section 531 of Public Law 103-465, the Uruguay Round Agreements Act. Acts occurring prior to the effective dates of NAFTA or URAA may be relied upon to show completion of the invention; however, a date of completion of the invention may not be established under 37 CFR 1.131 before December 8, 1993 in a NAFTA country or before January 1, 1996 in a WTO country other than a NAFTA country.<

**715.07(d) Disposition of Exhibits [R-1]**

>Exhibits, such as those filed as part of an affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131, that are too bulky to be placed in the application file are retained in the examining group until the case is finally disposed of. When the case goes to issue (or abandonment) the exhibits are returned or otherwise disposed of. See MPEP § 608.03(a).<

**715.08 Passed Upon by Primary Examiner [R-1]**

>The question of sufficiency of affidavits or declarations under 37 CFR 1.131 should be reviewed and decided by a primary examiner.

Review of questions of formal sufficiency and propriety are by petition. Such petitions are answered by the Group Directors (MPEP § 1002.02(c), item 4(e)).

Review on the merits of 37 CFR 1.131 affidavit or declaration is by appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.<

**715.09 Seasonable Presentation [R-1]**

>Affidavits or declarations under 37 CFR 1.131 must be timely presented in order to be admitted. Affidavits and declarations submitted under 37 CFR 1.131 and other evidence traversing rejections are considered timely if:

- (a) submitted prior to a final rejection,
- (b) submitted before appeal in an application not having a final rejection, or
- (c) submitted after final rejection and submitted
  - (i) with a first response after final rejection for the purpose of overcoming a new ground of rejection or requirement made in the final rejection, or
  - (ii) with a satisfactory showing under 37 CFR 1.116(b) or 37 CFR 1.195, or
  - (iii) under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

All admitted affidavits and declarations are acknowledged and commented upon by the examiner in his or her next succeeding action.

For affidavits or declarations under 37 CFR 1.131 filed after appeal, see 37 CFR 1.195 and MPEP § 1212.

Review of an examiner's refusal to enter an affidavit as untimely is by petition and not by appeal to the Board of Appeals. *In re Deters*, 515 F.2d 1152, 185 USPQ 644 (CCPA 1975); *Ex parte Hale*, 49 USPQ 209 (Bd. App. 1941). See MPEP § 715.08 regarding review of questions of propriety of 37 CFR 1.131 affidavits and declarations.<

**715.10 Review of Affidavit or Declaration for Evidence of Prior Public Use or Sale or Failure to Disclose Best Mode [R-1]**

>Any affidavits or declarations submitted under 37 CFR 1.131 and the accompanying evidence must be reviewed carefully by the examiner in order to determine whether they show that the claimed invention was "in public use" or "on sale" in this country more than one year prior to the effective filing date of the application, which acts constitute a statutory bar under 35 U.S.C. 102(b). Although the rejection based on the reference(s) sought to be antedated may actually be overcome by such an affidavit or declaration, the effect of the applicant's prior "public use" or "on sale" activities may not be overcome under 37 CFR 1.131. See MPEP § 2133.03 regarding rejections based on "public use" and "on sale" statutory bars.

Where the 37 CFR 1.131 evidence relies on an embodiment of the invention not disclosed in the application, the question of whether the application includes the "best mode" must be considered. However, a "best mode" rejection should not be made unless the record, taken as a whole, establishes by a preponderance of the evidence that applicant's specification has not set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out the invention. See MPEP § 2165 - § 2165.04 regarding the best mode requirement of the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112.<

**716 Affidavits or Declarations Traversing Rejections, 37 CFR 1.132 [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.132. *Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.*

When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected on reference to a domestic patent which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the invention, or on reference to a foreign patent, or to a printed publication, or to facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, or when rejected upon a mode or capability of operation attributed to a reference, or because the alleged invention is held to be inoperative or lacking in utility, or frivolous or injurious to public health or morals, affidavits or declarations traversing these references or objections may be received.

It is the responsibility of the primary examiner to personally review and decide whether affidavits or declarations submitted under 37 CFR 1.132 for the purpose of traversing grounds of rejection, are responsive to the rejection and present sufficient facts to overcome the rejection.

This rule sets forth the general policy of the Office consistently followed for a long period of time of receiving affidavit evidence traversing rejections or objections. The enumeration of rejections in the rule is merely exemplary. All affidavits or declarations presented which do not fall within or under other specific rules are to be treated or considered as falling under this rule.

Form Paragraph 7.65 or 7.66 should be used to comment on a 37 CFR 1.132 affidavit or declaration.

¶ 7.65 *Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.132, Effective To Withdraw Rejection*

The [1] under 37 CFR 1.132 filed [2] is sufficient to overcome the rejection of claim [3] based upon [4].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert either "affidavit" or "declaration".
2. In bracket 2, insert the filing date of the affidavit or declaration.
3. In bracket 3, insert the affected claim or claims.
4. In bracket 4, indicate the rejection that has been overcome, including the statutory grounds; i.e., insufficiency of disclosure under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph; lack of utility under 35 U.S.C. 101, inoperativeness under 35 U.S.C. 101; a specific reference applied under 35 U.S.C. 103, etc. See MPEP § 716.

¶ 7.66 *Affidavit or Declaration Under 37 CFR 1.132, Insufficient*

The [1] under 37 CFR 1.132 filed [2] is insufficient to overcome the rejection of claim [3] based upon [4] as set forth in the last Office action because [5].

**Examiner Note:**

1. In bracket 1, insert either "affidavit" or "declaration".
2. In bracket 2, insert the filing date of the affidavit or declaration.
3. In bracket 3, insert the claim or claims affected.
4. In bracket 4, indicate the rejection that has been overcome, including the statutory grounds; i.e., insufficiency of disclosure under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, lack of utility under 35 U.S.C. 101, inoperativeness under 35 U.S.C. 101, a specific reference applied under 35 U.S.C. 103, etc. See MPEP § 716.

5. In bracket 5, set forth the reasons for the insufficiency; e.g., categories include: "untimely", "fails to set forth facts", "facts presented are not germane to the rejection at issue", "showing is not commensurate in scope with the claims", etc. See MPEP § 716. Also include a detailed explanation of the reasons why the affidavit or declaration is insufficient.<

## 716.01 Generally Applicable Criteria [R-2]

The following criteria are applicable to all evidence traversing rejections submitted by applicants, including affidavits or declarations submitted under 37 CFR 1.132:

### (1) *Timeliness*

Evidence traversing rejections must be timely or seasonably filed to be entered and entitled to consideration. *In re Rothermel* \*\*, 276 F.2d 393, 125 USPQ 328 (CCPA 1960).

Affidavits and declarations submitted under 37 CFR 1.132 and other evidence traversing rejections are considered timely if:

- (a) submitted prior to a final rejection,
- (b) submitted before appeal in an application not having a final rejection, or
- (c) submitted after final rejection and submitted
  - (i) with a first response after final rejection for the purpose of overcoming a new ground of rejection or requirement made in the final rejection, or
  - (ii) with a satisfactory showing under 37 CFR 1.116(b) or 37 CFR 1.195, or
  - (iii) under 37 CFR 1.129(a).

### (2) *Consideration of Evidence*

Evidence traversing rejections must be considered by the examiner whenever present. All entered affidavits, declarations, and >other< evidence traversing rejections are acknowledged and commented upon by the examiner in the next succeeding action. The extent of the commentary depends on the action taken by the examiner. Where an examiner holds that the evidence is sufficient to overcome the *prima facie* case, the comments should be consistent with the guidelines for statements of reasons for allowance. See MPEP § 1302.14. Where the evidence is insufficient to overcome the rejection, the examiner must specifically explain why the evidence is insufficient. General statements such as "the declaration lacks technical validity" or "the evidence is not commensurate with the scope of the claims" without an explanation supporting such findings are insufficient.

**716.01(a)**

**716.01(a) Objective Evidence of Nonobviousness [R-2]**

**OBJECTIVE EVIDENCE MUST BE CONSIDERED WHENEVER PRESENT**

Affidavits or declarations \* >containing< evidence of criticality or unexpected results, commercial success, long-felt but unsolved needs, failure of others, skepticism of experts, etc., must be considered by the examiner in determining the issue of obviousness of claims for patentability under 35 U.S.C. 103. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit stated in *Stratoflex, Inc. v. Aeroquip Corp.*, 713 F.2d 1530, 218 USPQ 871, 879 (Fed. Cir. 1983) that "evidence rising out of the so-called 'secondary considerations' must always when present be considered en route to a determination of obviousness." Such evidence might \*\* give light to circumstances surrounding the origin of the subject matter sought to be patented. As indicia of obviousness or unobviousness, such evidence may have relevancy. *Graham v. John Deere Co.*, 383 U.S. 1, 148 USPQ 459 (1966); *In re Palmer*, 451 F.2d 1100, 172 USPQ 126 (CCPA 1971); *In re Fielder and Underwood*, 471 F.2d 640, 176 USPQ 300 (CCPA 1973). The *Graham v. John Deere* pronouncements on the relevance of commercial success, etc. to a determination of obviousness were not negated in *Sakraida v. Ag Pro*, 425 U.S. 273, 189 USPQ 449 (1979) or *Anderson's-Black Rock Inc. v. Pavement Salvage Co.*, 396 U.S. 57, 163 USPQ 673 (1969), where reliance was placed upon *A&P Tea Co. v. Supermarket Corp.*, 340 U.S. 147, 87 USPQ 303 (1950). See *Dann v. Johnston*, 425 U.S. 219, 189 USPQ 257, \* 261 >, n. 4 < (1976)\*\*.

Examiners must consider comparative data in the specification which is intended to illustrate the claimed invention in reaching a conclusion with regard to the obviousness of the claims. *In re Margolis*, 785 F.2d 1029, 228 USPQ 940 (Fed. Cir. 1986). \*\* >The< lack of objective evidence of nonobviousness does not weigh in favor of obviousness. *Miles Labs. Inc. v. Shandon Inc.*, 997 F.2d 870, 27 USPQ2d 1123, 1129 (Fed. Cir. 1993), *cert. denied*, 127 L. Ed. 232 (1994). However, where a *prima facie* case of obviousness is established, the failure to provide rebuttal evidence is dispositive.

**716.01(b) Nexus Requirement and Evidence of Nonobviousness [R-1]**

**>TO BE OF PROBATIVE VALUE, ANY SECONDARY EVIDENCE MUST BE RELATED TO THE CLAIMED INVENTION (NEXUS REQUIRED)**

The weight attached to evidence of secondary considerations by the examiner will depend upon its relevance to the issue of obviousness and the amount and nature of the evidence. Note the great reliance apparently placed on this type of evidence by the Supreme Court in upholding the patent in *United States v. Adams*, 383 U.S. 39, 148 USPQ 479 (1966).

To be given substantial weight in the determination of obviousness or nonobviousness, evidence of secondary considerations must be relevant to the subject matter as claimed, and therefore the examiner must determine whether there is a nexus between the merits of the claimed invention and the evidence of secondary considerations. *Ashland Oil, Inc. v. Delta Resins & Refractories, Inc.*, 776 F.2d 281, 227 USPQ 657, 673-674, n. 42 (Fed. Cir. 1985), *cert. denied*, 475 U.S. 1017 (1986). The term "nexus" designates a factually and legally sufficient connection between the objective evidence of nonobviousness and the claimed invention so that the evidence is of probative value in the determination of nonobviousness. *Demaco Corp. v. F. Von Langsdorff Licensing Ltd.*, 851 F.2d 1387, 7 USPQ 2d 1222 (Fed. Cir.), *cert. denied*, 488 U.S. 956 (1988). <

**716.01(c) Probative Value of Objective Evidence [R-2]**

**TO BE OF PROBATIVE VALUE, ANY OBJECTIVE EVIDENCE SHOULD BE SUPPORTED BY ACTUAL PROOF**

Objective evidence which must be factually supported by an appropriate affidavit or declaration to be of probative value includes evidence of unexpected results, commercial success, solution of a long-felt need, inoperability of the prior art, invention before the date of the reference, and allegations that the author(s) of the prior art derived the disclosed subject matter from the applicant. See, for example, *In re De Blauwe*, 736 F.2d 699, 222 USPQ 191, 196 (Fed. Cir. 1984) ("It is well settled that unexpected results must be established by

factual evidence.” “[A]ppellants have not presented any experimental data showing that prior heat-shrinkable articles split. Due to the absence of tests comparing appellant’s heat shrinkable articles with those of the closest prior art, we conclude that appellant’s assertions of unexpected results constitute mere argument.”) See also *In re Lindner*, 457 F.2d 506, 508, 173 USPQ 356, 358 (CCPA 1972); *Ex parte George*, 21 USPQ2d 1058 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1991).

#### ATTORNEY ARGUMENTS CANNOT TAKE THE PLACE OF EVIDENCE

The arguments of counsel cannot take the place of evidence in the record. *In re Schulze*, 346 F.2d 600, 602, 145 USPQ 716, 718 (CCPA 1965). Examples of attorney statements which are not evidence and which must be supported by an appropriate affidavit or declaration include statements regarding unexpected results, commercial success, solution of a long-felt need, inoperability of the prior art, invention before the date of the reference, and allegations that the author(s) of the prior art derived the disclosed subject matter from the applicant.

\*\*

See MPEP § 2145 generally for case law pertinent to the consideration of applicant’s rebuttal arguments.

#### OPINION EVIDENCE

Although factual evidence is preferable to opinion testimony, such testimony is entitled to consideration and some weight so long as the opinion is not on the ultimate legal conclusion at issue. While an opinion as to a legal conclusion is not entitled to any weight, the underlying basis for the opinion may be persuasive. *In re Chilowsky*, 306 F.2d 908, 134 USPQ 515 (CCPA 1962) (expert opinion that an application meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 is not entitled to any weight; however, facts supporting a basis for deciding that the specification complies with 35 U.S.C. 112 are entitled to some weight); *In re Lindell*, 385 F.2d 453, 155 USPQ 521 (CCPA 1967) (Although an affiant’s or declarant’s opinion on the ultimate legal issue is not evidence in the case, “some weight ought to be given to a persuasively supported statement of one skilled in the art on what was not obvious to him.” 155 USPQ at 524 (emphasis in original)).

In assessing the probative value of an expert opinion, the examiner must consider the nature of the matter sought to be established, the strength of any opposing evidence, the interest of the expert in the outcome of the case, and the presence or absence of factual support for the expert’s opinion. *Ashland Oil, Inc. v. Delta Resins & Refractories, Inc.*, 776 F.2d 281, 227 USPQ 657 (Fed. Cir. 1985), *cert. denied*, 475 U.S. 1017 (1986). See also *In re Oelrich*, 198 USPQ 210 (CCPA 1978) (factually based expert opinions on the level of ordinary skill in the art were sufficient to rebut the *prima facie* case of obviousness); *Ex parte Gray*, 10 USPQ2d 1922 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989) (statement in publication dismissing the “preliminary identification of a human  $\beta$ -NGF-like molecule” in the prior art, even if considered to be an expert opinion, was inadequate to overcome the rejection based on that prior art because there was no factual evidence supporting the statement); *In re Carroll*, 601 F.2d 1184, 202 USPQ 571 (CCPA 1979) (expert opinion on what the prior art taught, supported by documentary evidence and formulated prior to the making of the claimed invention, received considerable deference); *In re Beattie*, 974 F.2d 1309, 24 USPQ2d 1040 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (declarations of seven persons skilled in the art offering opinion evidence praising the merits of the claimed invention were found to have little value because of a lack of factual support); *Ex parte George*, 21 USPQ2d 1058 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1991) (conclusory statements that results were “unexpected,” unsupported by objective factual evidence, were considered but were not found to be of substantial evidentiary value).

Although an affidavit or declaration which states only conclusions may have some probative value, such an affidavit or declaration may have little weight when considered in light of all the evidence of record in the application. *In re Brandstadter*, 484 F.2d 1395, 179 USPQ 286 (CCPA 1973).

An affidavit of an applicant as to the advantages of his claimed invention, while less persuasive than that of a disinterested person, cannot be disregarded for this reason alone. *Ex parte Keyes*, 214 USPQ 579 (Bd. App. 1982); *In re McKenna*, 203 F.2d 717, 97 USPQ 348 (CCPA 1953).

**716.01(d)****716.01(d) Weighing Objective Evidence  
[R-2]****IN MAKING A FINAL DETERMINATION OF  
PATENTABILITY, EVIDENCE SUPPORTING  
PATENTABILITY MUST BE WEIGHED  
AGAINST EVIDENCE SUPPORTING  
PRIMA FACIE CASE**

When an applicant submits evidence traversing a rejection, the examiner must reconsider the patentability of the claimed invention. The ultimate determination of patentability must be based on consideration of the entire record, by a preponderance of evidence, with due consideration to the persuasiveness of any arguments and any secondary evidence. *In re Oetiker*, 977 F.2d 1443, 24 USPQ2d 1443 (Fed. Cir. 1992). The submission of objective evidence of patentability does not mandate a conclusion of patentability in and of itself. *In re Chupp*, 816 F.2d 643, 2 USPQ2d 1437 (Fed. Cir. 1987). Facts established by rebuttal evidence must be evaluated along with the facts on which the conclusion of a *prima facie* case was reached, not against the conclusion itself. *In re Eli Lilly*, 902 F.2d 943, 14 USPQ2d 1741 (Fed. Cir. 1990). In other words, each piece of rebuttal evidence should not be evaluated for its ability to knockdown the *prima facie* case. All of the competent rebuttal evidence taken as a whole should be weighed against the evidence supporting the *prima facie* case. *In re Piasecki*, 745 F.2d 1468, 223 USPQ 785, 788 (Fed. Cir. 1984). Although the record may establish evidence of secondary considerations which are indicia of nonobviousness, the record may also establish such a strong case of obviousness that the objective evidence of nonobviousness is not sufficient to outweigh the evidence of obviousness. *Newell \* > Cos. < v. Kenney \* > Mfg. < Co.*, 864 F.2d 757, 9 USPQ2d 1417, 1427 (Fed. Cir. 1988), *cert. denied*, 493 U.S. 814 (1989). See *In re Piasecki*, 745 F.2d 1468, 223 USPQ 785 (Fed. Cir. 1984) for a detailed discussion of the proper roles of the examiner's *prima facie* case and applicant's rebuttal evidence in the final determination of obviousness.

If, after evaluating the evidence, the examiner is still not convinced that the claimed invention is patentable, the next Office action should include a statement to that effect and identify the reason(s) (e.g., evidence of commercial success not convincing, the commercial success not related to the technology, etc.). See *Demaco Corp. v.*

*F. Von Langsdorff Licensing Ltd.*, 851F.2d 1387, 7 USPQ 2d 1222 (Fed. Cir.), *cert. denied*, 488 U.S. 956(1988). See also MPEP § 716.01.

**716.02 Allegations Of Unexpected Results  
[R-2]**

Any differences between the claimed invention and the prior art may be expected to result in some differences in properties. The issue is whether the properties differ to such an extent that the difference is really unexpected. *In re Merck & Co.*, \* 231 USPQ 375 (Fed. Cir. 1986) (differences in sedative and anticholinergic effects between prior art and claimed antidepressants were not unexpected). In *In re Waymouth*, 499 F.2d 1273, 182 USPQ 290, 293 (CCPA 1974), the court held that unexpected results for a claimed range as compared with the range disclosed in the prior art had been shown by a demonstration of "a marked improvement, over the results achieved under other ratios, as to be classified as a difference in kind, rather than one of degree." Compare *In re Wagner*, 152 USPQ 552, 560 (CCPA 1967) (differences in properties cannot be disregarded on the ground they are differences in degree rather than in kind); *Ex parte Gelles*, 22 USPQ2d 1318, 1319 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1992) ("we generally consider a discussion of results in terms of 'differences in degree' as compared to 'differences in kind' . . . to have very little meaning in a relevant legal sense").

**716.02(a) Evidence Must Show Unexpected  
Results [R-1]****>GREATER THAN EXPECTED RESULTS ARE  
EVIDENCE OF NONOBVIOUSNESS**

"A greater than expected result is an evidentiary factor pertinent to the legal conclusion of obviousness ... of the claims at issue." *In re Corkill*, 226 USPQ 1005 (Fed. Cir. 1985). In *Corkhill*, the claimed combination showed an additive result when a diminished result would have been expected. This result was persuasive of nonobviousness even though the result was equal to that of one component alone. Evidence of a greater than expected result may also be shown by demonstrating an effect which is greater than the sum of each of the effects taken separately (i.e., demonstrating "synergism"). *Merck & Co. Inc. v. Biocraft Laboratories Inc.*, 874 F.2d 804, 10 USPQ2d 1843 (Fed. Cir.), *cert. denied*, 493 U.S. 975

(1989). However, a greater than additive effect is not necessarily sufficient to overcome a *prima facie* case of obviousness because such an effect can either be expected or unexpected. Applicants must further show that the results were greater than those which would have been expected from the prior art to an unobvious extent, and that the results are of a significant, practical advantage. *Ex parte The NutraSweet Co.*, 19 USPQ2d 1586 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1991) (Evidence showing greater than additive sweetness resulting from the claimed mixture of saccharin and L-aspartyl-L-phenylalanine was not sufficient to outweigh the evidence of obviousness because the teachings of the prior art lead to a general expectation of greater than additive sweetening effects when using mixtures of synthetic sweeteners.).

#### SUPERIORITY OF A PROPERTY SHARED WITH THE PRIOR ART IS EVIDENCE OF NONOBVIOUSNESS

Evidence of unobvious or unexpected advantageous properties, such as superiority in a property the claimed compound shares with the prior art, can rebut *prima facie* obviousness. "Evidence that a compound is unexpectedly superior in one of a spectrum of common properties . . . can be enough to rebut a *prima facie* case of obviousness." No set number of examples of superiority is required. *In re Chupp*, 816 F.2d 643, 2 USPQ2d 1437, 1439 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (Evidence showing that the claimed herbicidal compound was more effective than the closest prior art compound in controlling quackgrass and yellow nutsedge weeds in corn and soybean crops was sufficient to overcome the rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103, even though the specification indicated the claimed compound was an average performer on crops other than corn and soybean.). See also *Ex parte A*, 17 USPQ2d 1716 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1990) (unexpected superior therapeutic activity of claimed compound against anaerobic bacteria was sufficient to rebut *prima facie* obviousness even though there was no evidence that the compound was effective against all bacteria).

#### PRESENCE OF AN UNEXPECTED PROPERTY IS EVIDENCE OF NONOBVIOUSNESS

Presence of a property not possessed by the prior art is evidence of nonobviousness. *In re Papesch*, 315 F.2d 381, 137 USPQ 43 (CCPA 1963) (rejection of claims to compound structurally similar to the prior art compound

was reversed because claimed compound unexpectedly possessed anti-inflammatory properties not possessed by the prior art compound); *Ex parte Thumm*, 132 USPQ 66 (Bd. App. 1961) (Appellant showed that the claimed range of ethylene diamine was effective for the purpose of producing "regenerated cellulose consisting substantially entirely of skin" whereas the prior art warned "this compound has 'practically no effect.'"). The submission of evidence that a new product possesses unexpected properties does not necessarily require a conclusion that the claimed invention is nonobvious. *In re Payne*, 606 F.2d 303, 203 USPQ 245 (CCPA 1979). See the discussion of latent properties and additional advantages in MPEP § 2145, paragraph (b).

#### ABSENCE OF AN EXPECTED PROPERTY IS EVIDENCE OF NONOBVIOUSNESS

Absence of property which a claimed invention would have been expected to possess based on the teachings of the prior art is evidence of unobviousness. *Ex parte Mead Johnson & Co.* 227 USPQ 78 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1985) (Based on prior art disclosures, claimed compounds would have been expected to possess beta-andrenergic blocking activity; the fact that claimed compounds did not possess such activity was an unexpected result sufficient to establish unobviousness within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 103.). <

#### 716.02(b) Burden on Applicant [R-1]

##### >BURDEN ON APPLICANT TO ESTABLISH RESULTS ARE UNEXPECTED AND SIGNIFICANT

The evidence relied up should establish "that the differences in results are in fact unexpected and unobvious and of both statistical and practical significance." *Ex parte Gelles*, 22 USPQ2d 1318, 1319 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1992) (Mere conclusions in appellants' brief that the claimed polymer had an unexpectedly increased impact strength "are not entitled to the weight of conclusions accompanying the evidence, either in the specification or in a declaration." 22 USPQ2d at 1319.); *Ex parte C*, 27 USPQ2d 1492 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1992) (Applicant alleged unexpected results with regard to the claimed soybean plant, however there was no basis for judging the practical significance of data with regard to maturity date, flowering date, flower color, or height of the plant.). See also *In re Nolan*, 553 F.2d 1261, 193 USPQ 641, 645 (CCPA 1977) and *In re Eli Lilly*, 902

**716.02(c)**

F.2d 943, 14 USPQ2d 1741 (Fed. Cir. 1990) as discussed in MPEP § 716.02(c).

**APPLICANTS HAVE BURDEN OF EXPLAINING  
PROFFERED DATA**

“[A]ppellants have the burden of explaining the data in any declaration they proffer as evidence of non-obviousness.” *Ex parte Ishizaka*, 24 USPQ2d 1621, 1624 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1992).

**DIRECT AND INDIRECT COMPARATIVE TESTS  
ARE PROBATIVE OF NONOBVIOUSNESS**

Evidence of unexpected properties may be in the form of a direct or indirect comparison of the claimed invention with the closest prior art which is commensurate in scope with the claims. See *In re Boesch*, 617 F.2d 272, 205 USPQ 215 (CCPA 1980) and MPEP § 716.02(d) – § 716.02(e). See *In re Blondel*, 499 F.2d 1311, 1317, 182 USPQ 294, 298 (CCPA 1974) and *In re Fouche*, 439 F.2d 1237, 169 USPQ 429, 433 (CCPA 1971) for examples of cases where indirect comparative testing was found sufficient to rebut a *prima facie* case of obviousness.

The patentability of an intermediate may be established by unexpected properties of an end product “when one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably ascribe to a claimed intermediate the ‘contributing cause’ for such an unexpectedly superior activity or property.” *In re Magerlein*, 202 USPQ 473, 479 (CCPA 1979). “In order to establish that the claimed intermediate is a ‘contributing cause’ of the unexpectedly superior activity or property of an end product, an applicant must identify the cause of the unexpectedly superior activity or property (compared to the prior art) in the end product and establish a nexus for that cause between the intermediate and the end product.” 202 USPQ at 479.<

**716.02(c) Weighing Evidence of Expected and  
Unexpected Results [R-1]**

**>EVIDENCE OF UNEXPECTED AND  
EXPECTED PROPERTIES MUST BE WEIGHED**

Evidence of unexpected results must be weighed against evidence supporting *prima facie* obviousness in making a final determination of the obviousness of the claimed invention. *In re May*, 197 USPQ 601 (CCPA 1978) (Claims directed to a method of effecting analgesia without producing physical dependence by adminis-

tering the levo isomer of a compound having a certain chemical structure were rejected as obvious over the prior art. Evidence that the compound was unexpectedly nonaddictive was sufficient to overcome the obviousness rejection. Although the compound also had the expected result of potent analgesia, there was evidence of record showing that the goal of research in this area was to produce an analgesic compound which was nonaddictive, enhancing the evidentiary value of the showing of non-addictiveness as an indicia of nonobviousness.). See MPEP § 716.01(d) for guidance on weighing evidence submitted to traverse a rejection.

Where the unexpected properties of a claimed invention are not shown to have a significance equal to or greater than the expected properties, the evidence of unexpected properties may not be sufficient to rebut the evidence of obviousness. *In re Nolan*, 553 F.2d 1261, 193 USPQ 641, 645 (CCPA 1977) (Claims were directed to a display/memory device which was *prima facie* obvious over the prior art. The court found that a higher memory margin and lower operating voltage would have been expected properties of the claimed device, and that a higher memory margin appears to be the most significant improvement for a memory device. Although applicant presented evidence of unexpected properties with regard to lower peak discharge current and higher luminous efficiency, these properties were not shown to have a significance equal to or greater than that of the expected higher memory margin and lower operating voltage. The court held the evidence of nonobviousness was not sufficient to rebut the evidence of obviousness.); *In re Eli Lilly*, 902 F.2d 943, 14 USPQ2d 1741 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (Evidence of improved feed efficiency in steers was not sufficient to rebut *prima facie* case of obviousness based on prior art which specifically taught the use of compound X537A to enhance weight gain in animals because the evidence did not show that a significant aspect of the claimed invention would have been unexpected.).

**EXPECTED BENEFICIAL RESULTS ARE  
EVIDENCE OF OBVIOUSNESS**

“Expected beneficial results are evidence of obviousness of a claimed invention, just as unexpected results are evidence of unobviousness thereof.” *In re Gershon*, 152 USPQ 602, 604 (CCPA 1967) (resultant decrease of dental enamel solubility accomplished by adding an acidic buffering agent to a fluoride containing dentifrice was

expected based on the teaching of the prior art); *Ex parte Blanc*, 13 USPQ2d 1383 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989) (Claims at issue were directed to a process of sterilizing a polyolefinic composition which contains an antioxidant with high-energy radiation. Although evidence was presented in appellant's specification showing that particular antioxidants are effective, the Board concluded that these beneficial results would have been expected because one of the references taught a claimed antioxidant is very efficient and provides better results compared with other prior art antioxidants.) <

#### 716.02(d) Unexpected Results Commensurate in Scope With Claimed Invention [R-1]

>Whether the unexpected results are the result of unexpectedly improved results or a property not taught by the prior art, the "objective evidence of nonobviousness must be commensurate in scope with the claims which the evidence is offered to support." In other words, the showing of unexpected results must be reviewed to see if the results occur over the entire claimed range. *In re Clemens*, 622 F.2d 1029, 206 USPQ 289, 296 (CCPA 1980) (Claims were directed to a process for removing corrosion at "elevated temperatures" using a certain ion exchange resin (with the exception of claim 8 which recited a temperature in excess of 100°C). Appellant demonstrated unexpected results via comparative tests with the prior art ion exchange resin at 110°C and 130°C. The court affirmed the rejection of claims 1-7 and 9-10 because the term "elevated temperatures" encompassed temperatures as low as 60°C where the prior art ion exchange resin was known to perform well. The rejection of claim 8, directed to a temperature in excess of 100°C, was reversed.). See also *In re Grasselli*, 218 USPQ 769, 777 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (Claims were directed to certain catalysts containing an alkali metal. Evidence presented to rebut an obviousness rejection compared catalysts containing sodium with the prior art. The court held this evidence insufficient to rebut the *prima facie* case because experiments limited to sodium were not commensurate in scope with the claims.)

#### NONOBVIOUSNESS OF A GENUS OR CLAIMED RANGE MAY BE SUPPORTED BY DATA SHOWING UNEXPECTED RESULTS OF A SPECIES OR NARROWER RANGE UNDER CERTAIN CIRCUMSTANCES

The nonobviousness of a broader claimed range can be supported by evidence based on unexpected results from testing a narrower range if one of ordinary skill in the art would be able to determine a trend in the exemplified data which would allow the artisan to reasonably extend the probative value thereof. *In re Kollman*, 201 USPQ 193 (CCPA 1979) (Claims directed to mixtures of an herbicide known as "FENAC" with a diphenyl ether herbicide in certain relative proportions were rejected as *prima facie* obvious. Applicant presented evidence alleging unexpected results testing three species of diphenyl ether herbicides over limited relative proportion ranges. The court held that the limited number of species exemplified did not provide an adequate basis for concluding that similar results would be obtained for the other diphenyl ether herbicides within the scope of the generic claims. Claims 6-8 recited a FENAC:diphenyl ether ratio of 1:1 to 4:1 for the three specific ethers tested. For two of the claimed ethers, unexpected results were demonstrated over a ratio of 16:1 to 2:1, and the effectiveness increased as the ratio approached the untested region of the claimed range. The court held these tests were commensurate in scope with the claims and supported the nonobviousness thereof. However, for a third ether, data was only provided over the range of 1:1 to 2:1 where the effectiveness decreased to the "expected level" as it approached the untested region. This evidence was not sufficient to overcome the obviousness rejection.); *In re Lindner*, 173 USPQ 356, 359 (CCPA 1972) (Evidence of nonobviousness consisted of comparing a single composition within the broad scope of the claims with the prior art. The court did not find the evidence sufficient to rebut the *prima facie* case of obviousness because there was "no adequate basis for reasonably concluding that the great number and variety of compositions included in the claims would behave in the same manner as the tested composition.").

#### DEMONSTRATING CRITICALITY OF A CLAIMED RANGE

To establish unexpected results over a claimed range, applicants should compare a sufficient number of tests

**716.02(e)**

both inside and outside the claimed range to show the criticality of the claimed range. *In re Hill*, 128 USPQ 197 (CCPA 1960).<

**716.02(e) Comparison With Closest Prior Art [R-1]**

>An affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.132 must compare the claimed subject matter with the closest prior art to be effective to rebut a *prima facie* case of obviousness. *In re Burckel*, 201 USPQ 67 (CCPA 1979). "A comparison of the claimed invention with the disclosure of each cited reference to determine the number of claim limitations in common with each reference, bearing in mind the relative importance of particular limitations, will usually yield the closest single prior art reference." *In re Merchant*, 197 USPQ 785, 787 (CCPA 1978) (emphasis in original). Where the comparison is not identical with the reference disclosure, deviations therefrom should be explained, *In re Finley*, 81 USPQ 383 (CCPA 1949), and if not explained should be noted and evaluated, and if significant, explanation should be required. *In re Armstrong*, 126 USPQ 281 (CCPA 1960) (deviations from example were inconsequential).

**THE CLAIMED INVENTION MAY BE  
COMPARED WITH PRIOR ART THAT  
IS CLOSER THAN THAT APPLIED  
BY THE EXAMINER**

Applicants may compare the claimed invention with prior art that is more closely related to the invention than the prior art relied upon by the examiner. *In re Holladay*, 199 USPQ 516 (CCPA 1978); *Ex parte Humber*, 217 USPQ 265 (Bd. App. 1961) (Claims to a 13-chloro substituted compound were rejected as obvious over nonchlorinated analogs of the claimed compound. Evidence showing unexpected results for the claimed compound as compared with the 9-, 12-, and 14-chloro derivatives of the compound rebutted the *prima facie* case of obviousness because the compounds compared against were closer to the claimed invention than the prior art relied upon.).

**COMPARISONS WHEN THERE ARE TWO  
EQUALLY CLOSE PRIOR ART REFERENCES**

Showing unexpected results over one of two equally close prior art references will not rebut *prima facie* obviousness unless the teachings of the prior art references

are sufficiently similar to each other that the testing of one showing unexpected results would provide the same information as to the other. *In re Johnson*, 223 USPQ 1260, 1264 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (Claimed compounds differed from the prior art either by the presence of a trifluoromethyl group instead of a chloride radical, or by the presence of an unsaturated ester group instead of a saturated ester group. Although applicant compared the claimed invention with the prior art compound containing a chloride radical, the court found this evidence insufficient to rebut the *prima facie* case of obviousness because the evidence did not show relative effectiveness over all compounds of the closest prior art. An applicant does not have to test all the compounds taught by each reference, "[h]owever, where an applicant tests less than all cited compounds, the test must be sufficient to permit a conclusion respecting the relative effectiveness of applicant's claimed compounds and the compounds of the closest prior art." 223 USPQ at 1264 (quoting *In re Payne*, 203 USPQ 245, 256 (CCPA 1979)) (emphasis in original).).

**THE CLAIMED INVENTION MAY BE  
COMPARED WITH THE CLOSEST SUBJECT  
MATTER THAT EXISTS IN THE PRIOR ART**

Although evidence of unexpected results must compare the claimed invention with the closest prior art, applicant is not required to compare the claimed invention with subject matter that does not exist in the prior art. *In re Geiger*, 2 USPQ2d 1276, 1279 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (Newman, J., concurring) (Evidence rebutted *prima facie* case by comparing claimed invention with the most relevant prior art. Note that the majority held the Office failed to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness.); *In re Chapman*, 357 F.2d 418, 148 USPQ 711 (CCPA 1966) (Requiring applicant to compare claimed invention with polymer suggested by the combination of references relied upon in the rejection of the claimed invention under 35 U.S.C. 103 "would be requiring comparison of the results of the invention with the results of the invention." 148 USPQ at 714.).<

**716.02(f) Advantages Disclosed or Inherent [R-1]**

>Advantages not disclosed in appellant's application may not be urged as a basis for the allowance of claims, *In re Davies*, 177 USPQ 381, 385 (CCPA 1973) ("[W]e are of

the view that the basic property or utility must be disclosed in order for affidavit evidence of unexpected properties to be offered.”; “[T]he public will derive the most benefit from a patent when it discloses on its face those properties or utilitarian advantages which were ultimately persuasive of nonobviousness.”), unless the advantage would inherently flow from what was originally disclosed in the specification. *In re Zenitz*, 142 USPQ 158 (CCPA 1964) (evidence that claimed compound minimized side effects of hypotensive activity must be considered because this undisclosed property would inherently flow from disclosed use as tranquilizer); *Ex parte Sasajima*, 212 USPQ 103 (Bd. App. 1981) (evidence relating to initially undisclosed relative toxicity of claimed pharmaceutical compound must be considered). *In re Davies*, the court held that the undisclosed properties of toughened polystyrene (i.e., improved gloss, transparency, and processability) would not flow from a disclosure of improved mechanical properties such as impact strength.

The specification need not disclose proportions or values as critical for applicants to present evidence showing the proportions or values to be critical. *In re Saunders* 170 USPQ 213, 220 (CCPA 1971).<

### 716.02(g) Declaration or Affidavit Form [R-1]

>“The reason for requiring evidence in declaration or affidavit form is to obtain the assurances that any statements or representations made are correct, as provided by 35 U.S.C. 25 and 18 U.S.C. 1001.” Permitting a publication to substitute for expert testimony would circumvent the guarantees built into the statute. *Ex parte Gray*, 10 USPQ2d 1922, 1928 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1989). Publications may, however, be evidence of the facts in issue and should be considered to the extent that they are probative.<

### 716.03 Commercial Success [R-1]

#### >NEXUS BETWEEN CLAIMED INVENTION AND EVIDENCE OF COMMERCIAL SUCCESS REQUIRED

An applicant who is asserting commercial success to support its contention of nonobviousness bears the burden of proof of establishing a nexus between the claimed invention and evidence of commercial success. The term

“nexus” designates a factually and legally sufficient connection between the evidence of commercial success and the claimed invention so that the evidence is of probative value in the determination of nonobviousness. *Demaco Corp. v. F. Von Langsdorff Licensing Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1222 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

#### COMMERCIAL SUCCESS ABROAD IS RELEVANT

Commercial success abroad, as well as in the United States, is relevant in resolving the issue of nonobviousness. *Lindemann Maschinenfabrik GMBH v. American Hoist & Derrick Co.*, 221 USPQ 481 (Fed. Cir. 1984).<

### 716.03(a) Commercial Success Commensurate in Scope With Claimed Invention [R-1]

#### >EVIDENCE OF COMMERCIAL SUCCESS MUST BE COMMENSURATE IN SCOPE WITH THE CLAIMS

Objective evidence of nonobviousness including commercial success must be commensurate in scope with the claims. *In re Tiffin*, 448 F.2d 791, 171 USPQ 294 (CCPA 1971) (evidence showing commercial success of thermoplastic foam “cups” used in vending machines was not commensurate in scope with claims directed to thermoplastic foam “containers” broadly). In order to be commensurate in scope with the claims, the commercial success must be due to claimed features, and not due to unclaimed features. *Joy Technologies Inc. v. Manbeck*, 751 F. Supp. 225, 17 USPQ2d 1257, 1260 (D.D.C. 1990), *aff’d*, 959 F.2d 226, 22 USPQ2d 1153, 1156 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (Features responsible for commercial success were recited only in allowed dependent claims, and therefore the evidence of commercial success was not commensurate in scope with the broad claims at issue.).

An affidavit or declaration attributing commercial success to a product or process “constructed according to the disclosure and claims of [the] patent application” or other equivalent language does not establish a nexus between the claimed invention and the commercial success because there is no evidence that the product or process which has been sold corresponds to the claimed invention, or that whatever commercial success may have occurred is attributable to the product or process defined by the claims. *Ex parte Standish*, 10 USPQ2d 1454, 1458 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1988).

**716.03(b)**

**REQUIREMENTS WHEN CLAIMED INVENTION IS NOT COEXTENSIVE WITH COMMERCIAL PRODUCT OR PROCESS**

If a particular range is claimed, applicant does not need to show commercial success at every point in the range. "Where, as here, the claims are directed to a combination of ranges and procedures not shown by the prior art, and where substantial commercial success is achieved at an apparently typical point within those ranges, and the affidavits definitely indicate that operation throughout the claimed ranges approximates that at the particular points involved in the commercial operation, we think the evidence as to commercial success is persuasive." *In re Hollingsworth*, 117 USPQ 182, 184 (CCPA 1958). See also *Demaco Corp. v. F. Von Langsdorff Licensing Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1222 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (where the commercially successful product or process is not coextensive with the claimed invention, applicant must show a legally sufficient relationship between the claimed feature and the commercial product or process).<

**716.03(b) Commercial Success Derived From Claimed Invention [R-1]**

**>COMMERCIAL SUCCESS MUST BE DERIVED FROM THE CLAIMED INVENTION**

In considering evidence of commercial success, care should be taken to determine that the commercial success alleged is directly derived from the invention claimed, in a marketplace where the consumer is free to choose on the basis of objective principles, and that such success is not the result of heavy promotion or advertising, shift in advertising, consumption by purchasers normally tied to applicant or assignee, or other business events extraneous to the merits of the claimed invention, etc. *In re Mageli*, 176 USPQ 305 (CCPA 1973) (conclusory statements or opinions that increased sales were due to the merits of the invention are entitled to little weight); *In re Noznick*, 178 USPQ 43 (CCPA 1973).

In *ex parte* proceedings before the Patent and Trademark Office, an applicant must show that the claimed features were responsible for the commercial success of an article if the evidence of nonobviousness is to be accorded substantial weight. Merely showing that there was commercial success of an article which embodied the invention is not sufficient. *Ex parte Remark*, 15 USPQ2d 1498, 1502-02 ((Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1990). Compare

*Demaco Corp. v. F. Von Langsdorff Licensing Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1222 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (In civil litigation, a patentee does not have to prove that the commercial success is not due to other factors. "A requirement for proof of the negative of all imaginable contributing factors would be unfairly burdensome, and contrary to the ordinary rules of evidence.").

See also *Pentec, Inc. v. Graphic Controls Corp.* 227 USPQ 766 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (commercial success may have been attributable to extensive advertising and position as a market leader before the introduction of the patented product); *In re Fielder*, 176 USPQ 300 (CCPA 1973) (success of invention could be due to recent changes in related technology or consumer demand; here success of claimed voting ballot could be due to the contemporary drive toward greater use of automated data processing techniques); *EWP Corp. v. Reliance Universal, Inc.* 225 USPQ 20 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (evidence of licensing is a secondary consideration which must be carefully appraised as to its evidentiary value because licensing programs may succeed for reasons unrelated to the unobviousness of the product or process, e.g., license is mutually beneficial or less expensive than defending infringement suits); *Hybritech Inc. v. Monoclonal Antibodies, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 81 (Fed. Cir. 1986) (Evidence of commercial success supported a conclusion of nonobviousness of claims to an immunometric "sandwich" assay with monoclonal antibodies. Patentee's assays became a market leader with 25% of the market within a few years. Evidence of advertising did not show absence of a nexus between commercial success and the merits of the claimed invention because spending 25-35% of sales on marketing was not inordinate (mature companies spent 17-32% of sales in this market), and advertising served primarily to make industry aware of the product because this is not kind of merchandise that can be sold by advertising hyperbole.).

**COMMERCIAL SUCCESS MUST FLOW FROM THE FUNCTIONS AND ADVANTAGES DISCLOSED OR INHERENT IN THE SPECIFICATION DESCRIPTION**

To be pertinent to the issue of nonobviousness, the commercial success of devices falling within the claims of the patent must flow from the functions and advantages disclosed or inherent in the description in the specification. Furthermore, the success of an embodiment within

the claims may not be attributable to improvements or modifications made by others. *In re Vamco Machine & Tool, Inc.* 224 USPQ 617 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

#### IN DESIGN CASES, ESTABLISHMENT OF NEXUS IS ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

Establishing a nexus between commercial success and the claimed invention is especially difficult in design cases. Evidence of commercial success must be clearly attributable to the design to be of probative value, and not to brand name recognition, improved performance, or some other factor. *Litton System, Inc. v. Whirlpool Corp.*, 221 USPQ 97 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (showing of commercial success was not accompanied by evidence attributing commercial success of Litton microwave oven to the design thereof).

#### SALES FIGURES MUST BE ADEQUATELY DEFINED

Gross sales figures do not show commercial success absent evidence as to market share, *Cable Electric Products, Inc. v. Genmark, Inc.* 226 USPQ 881 (Fed. Cir. 1985), or as to the time period during which the product was sold, or as to what sales would normally be expected in the market, *Ex parte Standish*, 10 USPQ2d 1454 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1988).<

### 716.04 Long-Felt Need and Failure of Others [R-1]

#### >THE CLAIMED INVENTION MUST SATISFY A LONG-FELT NEED WHICH WAS RECOGNIZED, PERSISTENT, AND NOT SOLVED BY OTHERS

Establishing long-felt need requires objective evidence that an art recognized problem existed in the art for a long period of time without solution. The relevance of long-felt need and the failure of others to the issue of obviousness depends on several factors. First, the need must have been a persistent one that was recognized by those of ordinary skill in the art. *In re Gershon*, 152 USPQ 602, 605 (CCPA 1967) (“Since the alleged problem in this case was first recognized by appellants, and others apparently have not yet become aware of its existence, it goes without saying that there could not possibly be any evidence of either a long felt need in the . . . art for a solution to a problem of dubious existence or

failure of others skilled in the art who unsuccessfully attempted to solve a problem of which they were not aware.”); *Orthopedic Equipment Co., Inc. v. All Orthopedic Appliances, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 1281 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (Although the claimed invention achieved the desirable result of reducing inventories, there was no evidence of any prior unsuccessful attempts to do so.).

Second, the long-felt need must not have been satisfied by another before the invention by applicant. *Newell Companies v. Kenney Mfg. Co.*, 9 USPQ2d 1417, 1426 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (Although at one time there was a long-felt need for a “do-it-yourself” window shade material which was adjustable without the use of tools, a prior art product fulfilled the need by using a scored plastic material which could be torn. “[O]nce another supplied the key element, there was no long-felt need or, indeed, a problem to be solved”).

Third, the invention must in fact satisfy the long-felt need. *In re Cavanagh*, 168 USPQ 466 (CCPA 1971).

#### LONG-FELT NEED IS MEASURED FROM THE DATE A PROBLEM IS IDENTIFIED AND EFFORTS ARE MADE TO SOLVE IT

Long felt need is analyzed as of date the problem is identified and articulated, and there is evidence of efforts to solve that problem, not as of the date of the most pertinent prior art references. *Texas Instruments Inc. v. Int'l Trade Comm'n*, 26 USPQ2d 1018, 1029 (Fed. Cir. 1993).

#### OTHER FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO THE PRESENCE OF A LONG-FELT NEED MUST BE CONSIDERED

The failure to solve a long-felt need may be due to factors such as lack of interest or lack of appreciation of an invention's potential or marketability rather than want of technical know-how. *Scully Signal Co. v. Electronics Corp. of America*, 196 USPQ 657 (1st. Cir. 1977).

See also *Environmental Designs, Ltd. v. Union Oil Co. of Cal.*, 218 USPQ 865, 869 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (presence of legislative regulations for controlling sulfur dioxide emissions did not militate against existence of long-felt need to reduce the sulfur content in the air); *In re Tiffin*, 170 USPQ 88 (CCPA 1971) (fact that affidavit supporting contention of fulfillment of a long-felt need was sworn by a licensee adds to the weight to be accorded the

**716.05**

affidavit, as long as there is a bona fide licensing agreement entered into at arm's length). <

**716.05 Skepticism of Experts [R-1]**

>“Expressions of disbelief by experts constitute strong evidence of nonobviousness.” *Environmental Designs, Ltd. v. Union Oil Co. of Cal.*, 218 USPQ 865, 869 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (citing *United States v. Adams*, 383 U.S. 39, 52, 148 USPQ 479, 483-484 (1966)) (The patented process converted all the sulfur compounds in a certain effluent gas stream to hydrogen sulfide, and thereafter treated the resulting effluent for removal of hydrogen sulfide. Before learning of the patented process, chemical experts, aware of earlier failed efforts to reduce the sulfur content of effluent gas streams, were of the opinion that reducing sulfur compounds to hydrogen sulfide would not adequately solve the problem.).

“The skepticism of an expert, expressed before these inventors proved him wrong, is entitled to fair evidentiary weight, . . . as are the five to six years of research that preceded the claimed invention.” *In re Dow Chemical Co.*, 5 USPQ2d 1529 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *Burlington Industries Inc. v. Quigg* 3 USPQ2d 1436 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (testimony that the invention met with initial incredulity and skepticism of experts was sufficient to rebut the *prima facie* case of obviousness based on the prior art). <

**716.06 Copying [R-1]**

>Another form of secondary evidence which may be presented by applicants during prosecution of an application, but which is more often presented during litigation, is evidence that competitors in the marketplace are copying the invention instead of using the prior art. However, more than the mere fact of copying is necessary to make that action significant because copying may be attributable to other factors such as a lack of concern for patent property or contempt for the patentee's ability to enforce the patent. *Cable Electric Products, Inc. v. Genmark, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 881 (Fed. Cir. 1985). Evidence of copying was persuasive of nonobviousness when an alleged infringer tried for a substantial length of time to design a product or process similar to the claimed invention, but failed and then copied the claimed invention instead. *Dow Chemical Co. v. American Cyanamid Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 1350 (Fed. Cir. 1987). Alleged copying is not persuasive of nonobviousness when the copy is not identical to the claimed product, and the other manufacturer had not expended great effort to develop its own solu-

tion. *Pentec, Inc. v. Graphic Controls Corp.*, 227 USPQ 766 (Fed. Cir. 1985). See also *Vandenberg v. Dairy Equipment Co.*, 224 USPQ 195, 199 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (evidence of copying not found persuasive of nonobviousness) and *Panduit Corp. v. Dennison Manufacturing Co.*, 227 USPQ 337, 348, 349 (Fed. Cir. 1985), vacated on other grounds, 475 U.S. 809, 229 USPQ 478 (1986), on remand, 1 USPQ2d 1593 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (evidence of copying found persuasive of nonobviousness where admitted infringer failed to satisfactorily produce a solution after 10 years of effort and expense). <

**716.07 Inoperability of References [R-1]**

>Since every patent is presumed valid (35 U.S.C. 282), and since that presumption includes the presumption of operability, *Metropolitan Eng. Co. v. Coe*, 1935 C.D. 54, 78 F.2d 199, examiners should not express any opinion on the operability of a patent. Affidavits or declarations attacking the operability of a patent cited as a reference must rebut the presumption of operability by a preponderance of the evidence. *In re Sasse*, 629 F.2d 675, 207 USPQ 107 (CCPA 1980).

Further, since in a patent it is presumed that a process if used by one skilled in the art will produce the product or result described therein, such presumption is not overcome by a mere showing that it is possible to operate within the disclosure without obtaining the alleged product. *In re Weber*, 405 F.2d 1403, 160 USPQ 549 (CCPA 1969). It is to be presumed also that skilled workers would as a matter of course, if they do not immediately obtain desired results, make certain experiments and adaptations, within the skill of the competent worker. The failures of experimenters who have no interest in succeeding should not be accorded great weight. *In re Michalek*, 162 F.2d 229, 74 USPQ 107 (CCPA 1947); *In re Reid*, 179 F.2d 998, 84 USPQ 478 (CCPA 1950).

Where the affidavit or declaration presented asserts inoperability in features of the reference which are not relied upon, the reference is still effective as to other features which are operative. *In re Shepherd*, 172 F.2d 560, 80 USPQ 495 (CCPA 1949).

Where the affidavit or declaration presented asserts that the reference relied upon is inoperative, the claims represented by applicant must distinguish from the alleged inoperative reference disclosure. *In re Crosby*, 157 F.2d 198, 71 USPQ 73 (CCPA 1946). See also *In re Epstein*, 32 F.3d 1559, 31 USPQ2d 1817 (Fed. Cir. 1994)

(lack of diagrams, flow charts, and other details in the prior art references did not render them nonenabling in view of the fact that applicant's own specification failed to provide such detailed information, and that one skilled in the art would have known how to implement the features of the references.

If a patent teaches or suggests the claimed invention, an affidavit or declaration by patentee that he or she did not intend the disclosed invention to be used as claimed by applicant is immaterial. *In re Pio*, 217 F.2d 956, 104 USPQ 177 (CCPA 1954). Compare *In re Yale*, 434 F.2d 66, 168 USPQ 46 (CCPA 1970) (Correspondence from a co-author of a literature article confirming that the article misidentified a compound through a typographical error that would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art was persuasive evidence that the erroneously typed compound was not put in the possession of the public.).<

#### 716.08 Utility and Operability of Applicant's Disclosure [R-1]

>See MPEP § 2107.01, paragraphs (d), (e), and (f) for guidance on when it is proper to require evidence of utility or operativeness, and how to evaluate any evidence which is submitted to overcome a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 101 for lack of utility. See MPEP § 2107 – § 2107.02 generally for an overview of legal precedent relevant to the utility requirement of 35 U.S.C. 101.<

#### 716.09 Sufficiency of Disclosure [R-1]

>See MPEP § 2164 – § 2164.04(b) for guidance in determining whether the specification provides an enabling disclosure in compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph.

Once the examiner has established a *prima facie* case of lack of enablement, the burden falls on the applicant to present persuasive arguments, supported by suitable proofs where necessary, that one skilled in the art would have been able to make and use the claimed invention using the disclosure as a guide. *In re Brandstadter*, 484 F.2d 1395, 179 USPQ 286 (CCPA 1973). Evidence to supplement a specification which on its face appears deficient under 35 U.S.C. 112 must establish that the information which must be read into the specification to make it complete would have been known to those of ordinary skill in the art. *In re Howarth*, 654 F.2d 103, 210 USPQ 689 (CCPA 1981) (copies of patent specifications which

had been opened for inspection in Rhodesia, Panama, and Luxembourg prior to the U.S. filing date of the applicant were not sufficient to overcome a rejection for lack of enablement under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph).

Affidavits or declarations presented to show that the disclosure of an application is sufficient to one skilled in the art are not acceptable to establish facts which the specification itself should recite. *In re Buchner*, 929 F.2d 660, 18 USPQ2d 1331 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (Expert described how he would construct elements necessary to the claimed invention whose construction was not described in the application or the prior art; this was not sufficient to demonstrate that such construction was well-known to those of ordinary skill in the art.); *In re Smyth*, 189 F.2d 982, 90 USPQ 106 (CCPA 1951).

Affidavits or declarations purporting to explain the disclosure or to interpret the disclosure of a pending application are usually not considered. *In re Oppenauer*, 143 F.2d 974, 62 USPQ 297 (CCPA 1944). But see *Glaser v. Strickland*, 220 USPQ 446 (Bd. Pat. Int. 1983) which re-examines the rationale on which *In re Oppenauer* was based in light of the Federal Rules of Evidence. The Board stated as a general proposition "Opinion testimony which merely purports to state that a claim or count, is 'disclosed' in an application involved in an interference . . . should not be given any weight. Opinion testimony which purports to state that a particular feature or limitation of a claim or count is disclosed in an application involved in an interference and which explains the underlying factual basis for the opinion may be helpful and can be admitted. The weight to which the latter testimony may be entitled must be evaluated strictly on a case-by-case basis."<

#### 716.10 Attribution [R-1]

>Under certain circumstances an affidavit or declaration may be submitted which attempts to attribute a reference or part of a reference to the applicant. If successful, the reference is no longer applicable. When subject matter, disclosed but not claimed in a patent application issued jointly to S and another, is claimed in a later application filed by S, the joint patent is a valid reference available as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(a), (e), or (f) unless overcome by affidavit or declaration under 37 CFR 1.131 showing prior invention (see MPEP § 715) or an unequivocal declaration by S under 37 CFR 1.132

that he or she conceived or invented the subject matter disclosed in the patent. Disclaimer by the other patentee should not be required but, if submitted, may be accepted by the examiner.

Where there is a published article identifying the authorship (MPEP § 715.01(c)) or a patent identifying the inventorship (MPEP § 715.01(a)) that discloses subject matter being claimed in an application undergoing examination, the designation of authorship or inventorship does not raise a presumption of inventorship with respect to the subject matter disclosed in the article or with respect to the subject matter disclosed but not claimed in the patent so as to justify a rejection under subsection (f).

However, it is incumbent upon the inventors named in the application, in response to an inquiry regarding the appropriate inventorship under subsection (f) or to rebut a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (e), to provide a satisfactory showing by way of affidavit under 37 CFR 1.132 that the inventorship of the application is correct in that the reference discloses subject matter derived from the applicant rather than invented by the author or patentee notwithstanding the authorship of the article or the inventorship of the patent. *In re Katz*, 687 F.2d 450, 215 USPQ 14,18 (CCPA 1982) (inquiry is appropriate to clarify any ambiguity created by an article regarding inventorship and it is then incumbent upon the applicant to provide "a satisfactory showing that would lead to a reasonable conclusion that [applicant] is the ... inventor" of the subject matter disclosed in the article and claimed in the application).

An uncontradicted "unequivocal statement" from the applicant regarding the subject matter disclosed in an article or patent will be accepted as establishing inventorship. *In re DeBaun*, 214 USPQ 933, 936 (CCPA 1982). However, a statement by the applicants regarding their inventorship in view of an article or a patent may not be sufficient where there is evidence to the contrary. *Ex parte Kroger*, 218 USPQ 370 (Bd. App. 1982) (a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) was affirmed notwithstanding declarations by the alleged actual inventors as to their inventorship in view of a nonapplicant author submitting a letter declaring the author's inventorship); *In re Carriera*, 189 USPQ 461 (CCPA 1976) (disclaiming declarations from patentees were directed at the generic invention and not at the claimed species, hence no need to consider derivation of the subject matter).

A successful 37 CFR 1.132 affidavit or declaration establishing derivation by the author or patentee of a first

reference does not enable an applicant to step into the shoes of that author or patentee in regard to its date of publication so as to defeat a later second reference. *In re Costello*, 717 F.2d 1346, 219 USPQ 389, 392 (Fed. Cir. 1983).

## EXAMPLES

The following examples demonstrate the application of an attribution affidavit or declaration.

### *Example 1*

During the search the examiner finds a reference fully describing the claimed invention. The applicant is the author or patentee and it was published or patented less than one year prior to the filing date of the application. The reference cannot be used against applicant since it does not satisfy the 1-year time requirement of 35 U.S.C. 102(b).

### *Example 2*

Same facts as above, but the author or patentee is an entity different from applicant. Since the entities are different, the reference is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (e).

In the situation described in Example 2, an affidavit under 37 CFR 1.132 may be submitted to show that the relevant portions of the reference originated with or were obtained from applicant. Thus the affidavit attempts to convert the fact situation from that described in Example 2 to the situation described in Example 1. <

## 717 File Wrapper [R-1]

>The folder in which the Patent and Trademark Office maintains the application papers is referred to as a file wrapper.<

### 717.01 Papers in File Wrapper [R-1]

>Papers that do not become a permanent part of the record should not be entered on the "Contents" of the file wrapper. All papers legally entered on the "contents" of the file wrapper are given a paper number. No paper legally entered on the "Contents" should ever be withdrawn or returned to applicant without special authority of the Commissioner. Certain oaths executed abroad may be returned but a copy is retained in the file. See MPEP § 604.04(a).<

### **717.01(a) Arrangement of Papers in File Wrapper [R-1]**

>Until revision for allowance, the specification, amendments and all other communications from applicant are fastened to the left side (center fold) of the file wrapper. They are in inverse chronological order; that is, the communication with the latest "Mail Room" date is on top. A similar arrangement is followed on the right side, where Office actions and other communications from the Office are fastened, except that the print is always kept on top for the convenience of the examiner.

Where amendments are submitted in duplicate, the carbon copy is destroyed except where the duplicate is received within the time period for response and the original is late. In this latter situation both copies are placed in the file. The "original" (ribbon copy) is entered with reference made to the carbon copy.

At allowance, only those papers required by the printer are placed in the left side (center section) of the file wrapper.

The use of return self-addressed postcards as a receipt is covered in MPEP § 503.<

### **717.01(b) Prints [R-1]**

>The prints of the drawing are fastened inside the file wrapper by the Customer Services Division.

The white paper prints shall always be kept on top of the papers on the right of the file wrapper.

All prints and inked sketches subsequently filed to be part of the record should be endorsed with the date of their receipt in the office and given their appropriate paper number. Note MPEP § 608.02(m).<

### **717.02 Data Entered on File Wrapper [R-1]**

>See also MPEP § 707.10, § 717.01.

It is sometimes necessary to return applications to the Application Branch for correction of the file wrapper label. If the examiner notices an error in any of the data originally entered on the file wrapper, he or she should return the application to the Application Branch for correction.

Instances where such a return is necessary include:

(1) Correction of Inventorship such as changes in the order of the names or a change in the name of an inventor, granted by petition, and additions or deletions of inventors under 37 CFR 1.48. See MPEP § 605.04 (g).

(2) Correction of the Filing Date.

(3) Correction concerning prior U.S. applications which have serial number errors. See MPEP § 202.02.

(4) Correction of application type, for example, where an application is filed under 37 CFR 1.60 but is not shown as such on the file wrapper.

The application must be sent to the Application Branch for correction of the file wrapper label and should be accompanied by an Application Branch Data Base Routing Slip with an explanation of the correction to be made.

All other corrections are performed in the examining group. For example, changes to claims to priority under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c), changes to the title, power of attorney, and correspondence address may be made with red ink.

If an error is noticed in the name or address of the assignee, it should be corrected by the Assignment Division.

All of the above entries are either typed or made in black ink. Such changes by amendment as change of address or of attorney are entered in red ink by the clerk of the group, the original entry being canceled but not erased.<

### **717.02(b) Name or Residence of Inventor or Title Changed [R-1]**

>The distinction between "residence" and Post Office address should not be lost sight of.

MPEP § 605.04(c) explains the procedure to be followed concerning sending the application to the Application Division when applicant changes name.

Unless specifically requested by applicant, the residence will not be changed on the file. For example, if a new oath gives a different residence from the original, the file will not be changed.<

### **717.03 Classification During Examination [R-1]**

>When a new case is received in an examining group, the classification of the case and the initials or name of the examiner who will examine it or other assigned docket designation are noted in pencil in the upper left hand corner of the first sheet of the "heavy paper" print and in the designated spaces on the file wrapper. These notations should be kept current.<

## 717.04

## 717.04 Index of Claims [R-1]

>Constant reference is made to the "Index of Claims" found in the inside of the file wrapper of all applications. It should be kept up to date so as to be a reliable index of all claims standing in a case, and of the amendment in which the claims are to be found.

The preprinted series of claim numbers appearing on the file wrapper refer to the claim numbers as originally filed while the adjacent column should be used for the entry of the final numbering of the allowed claims.

Independent claims should be designated in the Index of Claims by encircling the claim number in red ink.

A line in red ink should be drawn below the number corresponding to the number of claims originally presented.

Thereafter, a line in red ink should be drawn below the number corresponding to the highest numbered claim added by each amendment. Just outside the Index of Claims form opposite the number corresponding to the first claim of each amendment there should be placed the letter designating the amendment.

If the claims are amended in rewritten form under 37 CFR 1.121(b), the original claim number should not be stricken from the Index of Claims but a notation should be made in red ink in the margin to the left of the original claim number, i.e. "Amend. 1"; if the claim is rewritten a second time, "Amend. 1" should be changed by striking out "1" and inserting "2" above it.

As any claim is canceled, a line in red ink should be drawn through its number.

A space is provided for completion by the examiner to indicate the date and type of each Office action together with the resulting status of each claim. A list of codes for identifying each type of Office action appears below the Index. At the time of allowance, the examiner places the final patent claim numbers in the column marked "Final." <

## 717.05 Field of Search [R-1]

>In each action involving a search, the examiner shall endorse, on the flap of the file wrapper, the U.S. classes and subclasses, International Patent Classification(s) and publications searched, the date when the search was made or was brought up to date and the examiner's initials, all entries being in BLACK INK. Great care should be taken so as to clearly indicate the places

searched and the date(s) on which the search was conducted.

In order to provide a complete, accurate, and uniform record of what has been searched and considered by the examiner for each application, the Patent and Trademark Office has established procedures for recording search data in the application file. Such a record is of importance to anyone evaluating the strength and validity of a patent, particularly if the patent is involved in litigation. These procedures will also facilitate the printing of certain search data on patents.

Under the procedures, searches are separated into two categories and listed, as appropriate, in either the "SEARCHED" box or "SEARCHED NOTES" box on the file wrapper.

If additional space is required, entries should be continued on the outside right flap of the file wrapper.

## A. "SEARCHED" Box Entries

Search entries made here, except those for search updates (see item A.3 below), will be printed under "Field of Search" on the patent front page. Therefore, the following searches will be recorded in the "SEARCHED" box by the examiner along with the date and the examiner's initials, according to the following guidelines:

(1) *A complete search of a subclass*, including all United States and foreign patent documents, whether filed by U.S. or IPC classification, and other publications placed therein.

The complete classification (class and subclass) should be recorded.

*Examples:*

424/270, 272, 273

224/42.1 F

414/DIG. 4

D3/32 R

A61K 9/22

A61K 31/56 – A61K 31/585

(2) *A limited search of a subclass*, for example, a search that is restricted to an identifiable portion of the patent documents placed therein. If, however, only the publications in a subclass are searched, such an entry is to be made under "SEARCH NOTES" rather than under "SEARCHED." (See item B(4) below.)

The class and subclass, followed by the information defining the portion of the subclass searched—in parenthesis, should be recorded.

*Examples:*

414/1 (U.S. only)  
238/6 (1954 to date).

(3) *An update of a search previously made.* This search entry will be recorded in a manner to indicate clearly which of the previously recorded searches have been updated, followed by the expression "(updated)." Search update entries, although recorded in the "SEARCHED" box, will not be printed.

*Examples:*

424/270 (updated)  
414/DIG, 4 (updated)  
Above (updated)

When a search made in a parent application is updated during the examination of a continuing application, those searches updated, followed by "(updated from parent S.N. ....)" will be recorded. If the parent application has been patented, the patent number "Pat. N. ...." instead of serial number in the above phrase will be recorded. The examiner should recopy the entire search updated from the parent on the file wrapper of the continuing application to the extent pertinent to the continuing application.

*Examples:*

|            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 273/29 BC  | (updated from             |
| 343/114.5  | parent S.N. 495,123)      |
| 116/DIG.47 | (updated from             |
| D7/73, 74  | parent Pat. N. 4,998,999) |

**B. "SEARCH NOTES" Box Entries**

Entries made in the "SEARCH NOTES" box are of equal importance to those placed in the "SEARCHED" box; however, these entries are not to be printed on any resulting patent. They are intended to complete the application file record of areas and/or documents considered by the examiner in his or her search. The examiner should record the following searches in this box and in the manner indicated, with each search dated and initialed:

(1) *A cursory search, or scanning, of a U.S. subclass or IPC subclass/group/subgroup, i.e., a search usually made to determine if the documents classified there are relevant. Record the classification, followed by "(cursory)."*

*Examples:*

250/13 (cursory)  
A61K 9/44 (cursory)

(2) *A consultation with other examiners to determine if relevant search fields exist in their areas of expertise.*

If the subclass is not searched, record the class and subclass discussed, followed by "(consulted)." This entry may also include the name of the examiner consulted and the art unit.

*Examples:*

24/ fasteners (consulted)  
24/ fasteners (consulted J. Doe A.U. 3501)  
24/201 R-230 AV (consulted)

(3) *A search of a publication not located within the classified patent file, e.g., a library search, a text book search, a Chemical Abstracts search, etc. Record according to the following for each type of literature search:*

(a) *Abstracting publications, such as Chemical Abstracts record name of publications, list terms consulted in index, and indicate period covered.*

*Examples:*

*Chem. Abs, Palladium hydride Jan-June 1975*  
*Eng. Index, Data Conversion Analog to Digital 1975*

(b) *Periodicals* — list by title and period or volumes covered, as appropriate.

*Example:*

*Popular Mechanics, June-Dec. 1974*  
*Lubrication Engineering, vols. 20-24*

(c) *Books* — list by title and author, edition or date, as appropriate.

*Example:*

*Introduction to Hydraulic Fluids, Roger E. Hatton, 1962*

(d) *Other types of literature not specifically mentioned herein (i.e., catalogs, manufacturer's literature, private collections, etc.)*

Record data as necessary to provide unique identification of material searched.

*Example:*

*Sears Roebuck catalog, Spring-Summer, 1973.*

Where a book or specific issue of a periodical is cited by the examiner, it is not necessary to list the specific book or periodical in the "SEARCH NOTES" box.

717.05

A cursory or browsing search through a number of materials that are not found to be of significant relevance may be indicated in a collective manner, e.g., "Browsed STIC shelves under QA 76.5" or "Browsed text books in STIC relating to .....". More detailed reviews or searches through books and periodicals or any search of terms in abstracting publications should be specifically recorded, however.

(e) *Computer Search in Scientific and Technical Information Center (STIC)* — An online computerized literature searching service which uses key terms and index terms to locate relevant publications in many large bibliographic data bases is available in the STIC. Members of the STIC staff are assigned to assist examiners in selecting key terms and to conduct a search. To record a computer search conducted by STIC, see instructions in B6 below

(4) A search of only the *publications in a subclass*. Record class and subclass followed by "(publications only)."

*Examples:*

43/56 (publications only)  
99/DIG. 15 (publications only)

(5) *A review of art cited in a parent application* or an original patent, as required for all continuing and reissue applications and reexamination proceedings, or a review of art cited in related applications or patents mentioned within the specification, such as those included to provide background of the invention.

Record the serial number of a parent application that is still pending or abandoned, followed by "refs. checked" or "refs. ck'ed." If for any reason not all of the references have been checked because they are not available or clearly not relevant, such exceptions should be noted.

S. N. 495,123 refs. checked  
S. N. 490,000 refs. checked  
S. N. 480,111 refs. checked except for Greek patent to Kam  
S. N.410,113 refs. not checked since the file was not available

Record the patent number of a parent or related application that is now patented or of an original patent now being reissued with "refs. checked" or "refs. ck'ed."

*Examples:*

Pat. 3,900,000 refs. checked.  
Pat. 3,911,111 refs. ck'ed

(6) *In each action involving a search of a computer accessed text or chemical structure or sequence database*, the examiner shall endorse, in the SEARCH NOTES box on the file wrapper flap, the name of the database service, the date when the search was made or was brought up to date and the examiner's initials. All entries shall be made in BLACK INK. If additional space is required, entries shall be continued on the outside right flap of the file wrapper. Computer database searches including text, chemical structure, or sequences shall be documented in the SEARCH NOTES box on the file wrapper by providing the following minimum information:

- (a) The search logic or chemical structure or sequence used as a query;
- (b) The name of the file or files searched and the data base service;
- (c) Date of the search; and
- (d) The examiner's initials.

Three ways in which this minimum documentation can be provided are:

- (1) supplying, and as necessary annotating, the computer search printout resulting from a computer assisted search (see examples 1 and 2 and "Printouts" below), or
- (2) recording the required information on Form PTO-1604 (Form PTO-1605 for Sequence Searches), or
- (3) recording the required information in the SEARCH NOTES box.

For methods (1) and (2), the name of the database service and the expressions "(see form)" or "(see printout)" should be recorded in the SEARCH NOTES box as appropriate with the date and the examiner's initials.

*Printouts*

Most of the database services accessed in application searches provide a command to display or print the search history which includes most, if not all, of the minimum required information for documenting database searches. Table 1 below lists the history command for each database service and which of the required minimum documentation elements are missing when the history command is entered. The missing elements may be documented by writing them on the printout of the search history or by supplying further portions of the

missing when the history command is entered. The missing elements may be documented by writing them on the printout of the search history or by supplying further portions of the search transcript which do include the missing elements. In some instances, depending on the database service, the log off command will supply the missing data element. A printout of the history command and log out response containing the required data elements is acceptable as full documentation of a search. This is the case with STN and Questel's log off command.

In each case, the name of the database service is not provided by entering the history command and must be supplied in another manner. If there are several search statements in the history, the statement or statements of which the results were reviewed should be indicated by circling them in **BLACK INK**. The form or printout page(s) with the required data elements should be hole punched and placed in the application file on the right hand flap of the file wrapper.

TABLE 1

*History Commands and Missing Elements  
by Database Service*

| Data-base Service | History Command | Name of Database Service | Search Logic | Name of File Searched | Date of Birth |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| APS               | d his full      | no                       | yes          | yes                   | yes           |
| Dialog            | ds**            | no                       | yes          | missing 1             | missing***    |
| STN*              | d his full      | no****                   | yes          | yes                   | yes           |
| Orbit             | his**           | no****                   | yes          | missing 2             | missing***    |
| Questel           | hj**            | no***                    | yes          | yes                   | missing****   |
| Mead              | r **            | no                       | yes          | yes                   | yes           |
| IG Suite          | none            | yes***                   | yes****      | yes                   | yes           |

\* In a structure search in STN, in addition to "d his full", the structure should be printed out while in the Registry File. The command string for this is "d L# que stat," where L# is the number of the answer set of a full file structure search.

\*\* Need to enter history command for each file searched before changing file or logging off.

\*\*\* Information provided as part of search result file for each request.

\*\*\*\* Search query sequence provided as part of search result file for each request.

\*\*\*\*\* Displayed by log off command.

1 Name and number of file provided at file entry; number only of file given when leaving

the file; number only of last file accessed given at log off.

2 Name of the file given at file entry and when leaving the file; name of last file accessed given at log off.

*Explanation of Table Terminology*

**History Command** – Generally, a display of what the user has asked the search software to do. Will display the search logic entered by the user. Some histories are limited to display of the searches done only in the current file while others deliver a complete record of what file or files were accessed and all searches done since sign on. Dialog, Questel, Orbit, and Mead are services limited to display of the searches done only in the current file.

**Name of Database Service** – Most services do not display this information as part of the search transcript. None of the services in the table list that information as part of the history command. However, Orbit, Questel, and STN supply the name of the database service during log off.

**Search Logic** – Generally, a display of the search commands executed by the search software. For a structure or sequence search, this can be a printout of the structure or sequence used to query the system.

**Name of File Searched** – This is the name of the collection of data accessed. In some services, the file name is only displayed when the file is selected and not in response to the history display command. Dialog and Orbit are two such services. The file in some cases is identified only by a number. For example, Dialog only supplies the file number with the log off command. The file number alone is not adequate documentation of a search. The name of the file is required.

**Date of Search** – Dialog, Orbit, and Questel do not display the date of search as part of the history command. They do supply the date of search during log off.

Nucleotide and peptide sequence searches will be fully documented by a printout of the search query sequence and the beginning of the search result file. Each query sequence should be clearly related to the appropriate search result, if necessary, by appropriate annotation.

*Other Databases*

For other types of publicly accessible computer accessed databases (e.g., CD ROM databases, specialized databases, etc.), record data as necessary to provide

**717.05**

unique identification of material searched and sufficient information as to the search query or request so that the search can be up- dated. The record should also document the location of the database and its form (CD ROM, etc.)

*Example; Citing a biotech CD ROM database*

Entrez: Sequences, National Center for Biotechnology Information, Version 7.19.91b (CD ROM, Group 1800) Searched HIV and vaccine; neighbored Galloway article dated 6/5/91 on April 1, 1990.

*Example: Citing a nonbiotech CD ROM database*  
Computer Select, (November, 1991), Ziff Davis Communications Co., (CD ROM, STIC), Searched Unix and emulation on December 1, 1991.

*C. Information Not Recorded On The Flap of The File Wrapper*

For an indication of consideration or nonconsideration of prior art citations submitted by applicant in Information Disclosure Statements (37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98), see MPEP 609.<

**Example #1:**

YOU ARE NOW CONNECTED TO THE NTIS DATABASE.  
 COVERS 1977 THRU V91 #16 BIWEEKLY UPDATE (9116)  
 SEE NTBK FOR 1964-1976 COVERAGE.  
 SEE NTIM FOR 1964-PRESENT COVERAGE.  
 his

PROG:  
 SS 1: AIDS (4863)  
 SS 2: ( PATENT/DT OR PATENTED/DT OR PATENTS/DT ) (22627)  
 SS 3: 1 AND 2 (127)

SS 4 /C?  
 USER:  
 file inspec

PROG:  
 ELAPSED TIME ON NTIS: 0.04 HRS.  
 YOU ARE NOW CONNECTED TO THE INSPEC DATABASE.  
 COVERS FROM 1977 THRU BIWEEKLY UPDATE (9116)  
 SEE FILE INSP6976 FOR COVERAGE FROM 1969 THROUGH 1976.  
 his

PROG:  
 SS 1: SOLAR AND BICYCLE# (4)

SS 2 /C?  
 USER:  
 stop y

PROG:  
 TERMINAL SESSION FINISHED 03/12/92 8:20 A.M. (CENTRAL TIME)  
 ELAPSED TIME ON INSPEC: 0.03 HRS.  
 ELAPSED TIME THIS TERMINAL SESSION: 0.08 HOURS.  
 ORBIT SEARCH SESSION COMPLETED. THANKS FOR USING ORBIT!

**Example #2:**

= d his full  
 (FILE "USPAT" ENTERED AT 09:33:25 ON 12 MAR 92)  
 L1 64 SEA SOLAR AND BICYCLE#  
 L2 16 SEA L1 AND RADIATION  
 FILE 'JPOABS' ENTERED AT 09:54:58 ON 12 MAR 92  
 L3 9 SEA SOLAR AND BICYCLE#  
 L4 0 SEA L3 AND RADIATION  
 FILE USPAT

```

.....
.      WELCOME TO THE      .
.      U.S. PATENT TEXT FILE      .
.....
    
```

FILE JPOABS

```

.....
.      JAPANESE PATENT ABSTRACTS      .
.      CURRENTLY, DATA IS LOADED THROUGH THE ABSTRACT PUBLICA-      .
.      TION      .
.      DATE OF AUGUST 30, 1991.      .
.      THE LATEST GROUPS RECEIVED ARE: C0862 E1105, M1150 & P1245.      .
.....
    
```

= log y  
 U.S. Patent & Trademark Office LOGOFF AT 10:16:13 ON 12 MAR 92

717.05

|  |              |                |
|--|--------------|----------------|
| FORM PTO-89F2<br><b>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE<br/>                 PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE</b><br><br><b>SEARCH RECORD FORM</b><br>(SSR) | SERIAL NO.   | GROUP ART UNIT |
|  | APPLICANT(S) |                |

|  |
|--|
| <b>DATE OF SEARCH:</b>   |
| <b>SEQUENCE SEARCH RECORD</b>  |
| <p>A sequence search can be documented by the database(s) searched, search tool used (Fast DB, Blast, etc.) and the parameters used (Ktup, etc.) accompanied by the search query sequence or statement. This information may be documented by a printout of the query sequence parameters and the search results of an IG Suite sequence search.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>The information included in the attached printout need not be repeated below.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">CHECK HERE IF PRINTOUT IS ATTACHED _____</p> |
| Database/File(s) Searched:   |
| Program/Algorithm used: Fast DB _____, Fast A _____, Blast _____, Other _____  |
| Program/Algorithm parameters:  |
| Query and Parameters on attached printout _____  |
| Note:  |

|  |  |              |                |
|--|--|--------------|----------------|
| FORM PTO-BRF1<br><br><b>SEARCH RECORD FORM</b> | U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE<br>PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE | SERIAL NO.   | GROUP ART UNIT |
|  |  | APPLICANT(S) |                |

|  |
|--|
| DATE OF SEARCH:  |
| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>DATABASE SEARCH RECORD</b></p> |
| Database Service Name:   |
| File(s) Searched:  |
| Search Query:  |
| Query on attached printout _____                                 |
| Note:  |

717.05

| SEARCHED             |   |           |       |            |     |
|----------------------|---|-----------|-------|------------|-----|
| Class                | Sub.  | Date      | Exmr. |            |     |
| D7                   | 78, 74<br>(Updated from Present Patent No. 4,000,000) | 8-21-91   | RKL   |            |     |
| 424<br>D3<br>414     | 270<br>32R<br>1 (U.S. only)                           | } 8-21-91 | RKL   |            |     |
| 424<br>100           | 270 (updated)<br>99                                   |           |       | } 11-26-91 | AAM |
| Above                | (updated)   |           |       |            |     |
| IPC                  |   |           |       |            |     |
| A61K<br>A61K<br>A61k | 9/22<br>31/56<br>31/585                               | } 4-22-92 | F3    |            |     |

| SEARCH NOTES   |           |       |
|--|-----------|-------|
|  | Date      | Exmr. |
| S. N. 495,125 refs.<br>Ck'd<br>250/13 (cursory)<br>24/ separable fasteners<br>(consulted Globe, All 351)                           | } 8-21-91 | RKL   |
| Chem. Abs., Palladium<br>hydride, Jan.-June<br>1990  |           |       |
| Popular Mechanics<br>June-Dec. 1990  | 11-26-91  | AAM   |
| Introduction to<br>Hydraulic Fluids<br>Roger E.Hatton, 1962  |           |       |
| 45/36 (Publications only)  |           |       |
| A61K 9/44 (cursory)  |           |       |
| APS USPAT<br>3 laser and agric?<br>Dialog (See form)   |           |       |
| STN (See printout)   |           |       |
| Entries: Sequences<br>NC8I Y7-19-91 b (CD<br>ROM GB 130) Searched<br>HIV & vaccine,<br>neighbored Galloway<br>article dated 6/5/91 |           |       |

| INTERFERENCE SEARCHED |      |      |       |
|-----------------------|------|------|-------|
| Class                 | Sub. | Date | Exmr. |
|                       |      |      |       |

**717.06 Foreign Filing Dates [R-1]**

>See MPEP § 201.14(c), § 202.03 and § 201.14(d).<

**717.07 Related Applications [R-1]**

>The file wrapper should identify earlier filed related applications.

See MPEP § 202.02 and § 202.03.<

**720 Public Use Proceedings [R-1]**

>37 CFR 1.292. *Public use proceedings.*

(a) When a petition for the institution of public use proceedings, supported by affidavits or declarations and the fee set forth in § 1.17(j), is filed by one having information of the pendency of an application and is found, on reference to the examiner, to make a *prima facie* showing that the invention claimed in an application believed to be on file had been in public use or on sale more than one year before the filing of the application, a hearing may be had before the Commissioner to determine whether a public use proceeding should be instituted. If instituted, the Commissioner may designate an appropriate official to conduct the public use proceeding including the setting of times for taking testimony, which shall be taken as provided by §§ 1.671 to 1.685. The petitioner will be heard in the proceedings but after decision therein will not be heard further in the prosecution of the application for patent.

(b) The petition and accompanying papers should either: (1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been served upon the applicant or upon his attorney or agent of record; or (2) be filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible. The petition and accompanying papers, or a notice that such a petition has been filed, shall be entered in the application file.

(c) A petition for institution of public use proceedings shall not be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use and on sale issues in an interference shall be raised by a preliminary motion under § 1.633(a).

Public use proceedings are provided for in 37 CFR 1.292. The institution of public use proceedings is discretionary with the Commissioner. This section is intended to provide guidance when a question concerning public use proceedings arises.

A petition and fee (37 CFR 1.17(j)) is required to initiate consideration of whether to institute a public use proceeding. The petitioner ordinarily has information concerning a pending application which claims, in whole or in part, subject matter that the petitioner alleges was in "public use" or "on sale" in this country more than one year prior to the effective United States filing date of the pending application (see 35 U.S.C. 119, 1st paragraph, and 120). He or she thus asserts that a statutory bar (35 U.S.C. 102(b) alone or in combination with 35 U.S.C.

103) exists which prohibits the patenting of the subject matter of the application.

When public use petitions and accompanying papers are submitted they, or a notice in lieu thereof, will be entered in the application file. Duplicate copies should be submitted only when, after diligent effort, it has not been possible for petitioner to serve a copy of the petition on the applicant, his or her attorney or agent in which case the Special Program Law Office of the Office of the Deputy Assistant Commissioner for Patents Policy and Projects will attempt to get the duplicate copy to the applicant, his or her attorney or agent.

Notice of a petition for a public use proceeding will be entered in the file in lieu of the petition itself when the petition and the accompanying papers are too bulky to accompany the file. Any public use papers not physically entered in the file will be publicly available whenever the application file wrapper is available.

There are two types of public use proceedings: *ex parte* and *inter partes*. It is important to understand the difference. In the *ex parte* situation, the petitioner is not entitled, as a matter of right, to inspect the pending application. Thus, he or she stands in no better position than any other member of the public regarding access to the pending application. In the *inter partes* situation, the pending application is a reissue application. In the *inter partes* situation, the petitioner is privy to the contents of the pending application (37 CFR 1.612). Thus, as pointed out below, the petitioner in the *inter partes* situation participates in the public use proceedings to a greater degree than in the *ex parte* situation. A petitioner who was once involved in a terminated interference with a pending application is no longer privy to the application contents and will accordingly be treated as an *ex parte* petitioner. It should be noted that petitions filed on and after February 11, 1985 will not be allowed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.292(c) unless the petition arises out of an interference declared prior to February 11, 1985 or the interference was declared after February 11, 1985 but arose from an interference declared prior to that date.

Since, February 11, 1985, a petition for institution of public use proceedings cannot be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use issues can only be raised by a

**720.01**

preliminary motion under 37 CFR 1.633(a). However, if the issue of public use arises out of an interference declared prior to February 11, 1985, the petition may be filed by a party to the interference as to an application involved in the interference.

There may be cases where a public use petition has been filed in an application which has been restricted or is subject to a proper restriction requirement. If the petition alleges that subject matter covering both elected claims and nonelected claims is a statutory bar, only that part of the petition drawn to subject matter of the elected claims will be considered. However, if a public use proceeding is ultimately instituted, it will not necessarily be limited to the subject matter of the elected claims but may include the nonelected subject matter. Any evidence adduced on the nonelected subject matter may be used in any subsequent-filed application claiming subject matter without the requirement of a new fee (37 CFR 1.17(j)). The petitioner will not be heard regarding the appropriateness of any restriction requirement. <

**720.01 Preliminary Handling [R-1]**

>A petition filed under 37 CFR 1.292 should be forwarded to the Special Program Law Office of the Office of the Deputy Assistant Commissioner for Patent Policy and Projects, and served in accordance with 37 CFR 1.292(b). In addition, all other papers filed relating to the petition or subsequent public use proceeding must be served in accordance with 37 CFR 1.646 and 1.248. A member of the Special Program Law Office's staff will ascertain whether the formal requirements of 37 CFR 1.292 have been fulfilled. In particular, the petition will be reviewed to see if the alleged use or sale occurred more than one year before the effective filing date of the application, whether the petition contains affidavits and exhibits to establish the facts alleged, whether the papers have been filed in duplicate, or one copy has been served on applicant and whether the required fee has been tendered. The application file is ordered and its status ascertained so that appropriate action may be taken.

In those *ex parte* situations where a petitioner cannot identify the pending application by serial number, the petition papers will be forwarded to the appropriate group director for an identification search. Once the application file(s) is located, it should be forwarded to the Special Program Law Office. <

**720.02 Examiner Determination of Prima Facie Showing [R-1]**

>Once the Special Program Law Office staff member has determined that the petition meets the formal requirements of 37 CFR 1.292, and the application's status warrants consideration of the petition, he or she will prepare a letter for the Patent Legal Administrator, forwarding the petition and the application file to the examiner for determination of whether a *prima facie* case of public use or sale of the claimed subject matter is established by the petition. Any other papers that have been filed by the parties involved, such as a reply by the applicant or additional submissions by the petitioner, will also be forwarded to the examiner. Whether additional papers are accepted is within the discretion of the Special Program Law Office's staff member. However, protracted paper filing is discouraged since the parties should endeavor to present their best case as to the *prima facie* showing at the earliest possible time. No oral hearings or interviews will be granted at this stage, and the examiner is cautioned not to answer any inquiries by the petitioner or applicant.

A *prima facie* case is established by the petition if the examiner finds that the facts asserted in the affidavit(s), as supported by the exhibits, if later proved true by testimony taken in the public use proceeding, would result in a statutory bar to the claims under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) alone or in combination with 35 U.S.C. 103. See MPEP § 2120 *et seq.*

To make this determination, the examiner must identify exactly *what* was in public use or on sale, whether it was in use or on sale more than one year before the effective filing date, and whether the pending claims "read" on or are obvious over what has been shown to be in public use or on sale. On this last point, the examiner should compare all pending claims with the matter alleged to have been in use or on sale, not just the claims identified by petitioner.

In situations where the petition alleges only that the claims are obvious over subject matter asserted to be in public use or on sale, the petition should include prior art or other information on which it relies and explain how the prior art or other information in combination with the subject matter asserted to be in public use or on sale renders the claims obvious. The examiner is not expected to make a search of the prior art in evaluating the petition. If, however, the examiner determines that a

*prima facie* case of anticipation under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) has not been established but, at the time of evaluating the petition, the examiner is aware of prior art or other information which, in his or her opinion, renders the claims obvious over the subject matter asserted to be in public use or on sale the examiner may determine that a *prima facie* case is made out, even if the petition alleged only that the claims were anticipated under 35 U.S.C. 102(b).

After having made his/her determination, the examiner will forward a memorandum to the Patent Legal Administrator, stating his or her findings and his or her decision as to whether a *prima facie* case has been established. The findings should include a summary of the alleged facts, a comparison of at least one claim with the device alleged to be in public use or sale, and any other pertinent facts which will aid the Patent Legal Administrator in conducting the preliminary hearing. The report should be prepared in triplicate and addressed to the Patent Legal Administrator. <

### 720.03 Preliminary Hearing [R-1]

>Where the examiner concludes that a *prima facie* showing has not been established, both the petitioner and the applicant are so notified by the Office of the Deputy Assistant Commissioner for Patent Policy and Projects and the application proceedings are resumed without giving the parties an opportunity to be heard on the correctness of the examiner's decision. Where the examiner concludes that a *prima facie* case has been established, the Commissioner may hold a preliminary hearing. In such case, the parties will be notified by letter of the examiner's conclusion and of the time and date of the hearing. In *ex parte* cases, whether or not the examiner has concluded that a *prima facie* showing has been established, no copy of the examiner's memorandum to the Patent Legal Administrator will be forwarded to the petitioner. However, in such cases where the petition covers restrictable subject matter and it is evident that petitioner is not aware of a restriction requirement which has been or may be made, petitioner will be informed that the examiner's conclusion is limited to elected subject matter. While not so specifically captioned, the notification of this hearing amounts to an order to show cause why a public use proceeding should not be held. No new evidence is to be introduced or discussed at this hearing. The format of the hearing is established by the

member of the Special Program Law Office staff, and the Patent Legal Administrator presides. The examiner may attend as an observer only.

Where the hearing is held in the *ex parte* situation, great care will be taken to avoid discussion of any matters of the application file which are not already of knowledge to petitioner. Of course, applicant may of his or her own action or consent notify the petitioner of the nature of his or her claims or other related matters.

After the hearing is concluded, the Patent Legal Administrator will decide whether public use proceedings are to be initiated, and he/she will send appropriate notice to the parties. <

### 720.04 Public Use Proceeding Testimony[R-1]

>When the Patent Legal Administrator decides to institute public use proceedings, the case is referred to the examiner who will conduct all further proceedings. The fact that the affidavits and exhibits presented with the petition for institution of the public use proceedings have been held to make out a *prima facie* case does not mean that the statutory bar has been conclusively established. The statutory bar can only be established by testimony taken in accordance with normal rules of evidence, including the right of cross-examination. The affidavits are not to be considered part of the testimony and in no case can they be used as evidence on behalf of the party submitting them.

The procedure for taking testimony in a public use proceeding is similar to that for taking testimony in an interference. Normally, no representative of the Commissioner need be present at the taking of the testimony.

The examiner will set a schedule of times for taking testimony and for filing the record and briefs on the basis of the following:

Petitioner's testimony to close — 60 days;

Rebuttal testimony by applicant to close — 30 days later;

An original and one copy of the Record to be filed — 30 days later;

Petitioner's brief to be filed — 30 days later; and

Applicant's brief to be filed — 20 days later. Upon proper showing, the examiner may grant appropriate extensions of time.

**720.05**

No extension of time will be permitted under 37 CFR 1.136(a). Any extension of time request must be filed under 37 CFR 1.136(b).

It is understood from the above scheduling of times that a given time period begins with the close of the previous period, and that the completion of testimony or the filing of the Record or a brief before the close of the corresponding period does not change its closing date. To avoid confusion, the examiner should indicate specific dates for the close of each period.

In *ex parte* cases and in *inter partes* cases where the pending application is a reissue, an oral hearing is ordinarily not held.

In all public use proceedings, whether the ultimate issue is anticipation under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) or obviousness over 35 U.S.C. 103, testimony will be limited to the issues of public use or on sale. No testimony will be received on whether the claimed subject matter would have been obvious over subject matter asserted to be in public use or on sale.<

**720.05 Final Decision [R-1]**

>The final decision of the examiner should be "analogous to that rendered by the [Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences] in an interference proceeding, analyzing the testimony and stating conclusions, *In re Townsend*, 1913 C.D. 55. In reaching his or her decision, the examiner is not bound by the prior finding that a *prima facie* case has been established.

If the examiner concludes that a public use or sale bar exists, he or she will enter a rejection to that effect in the application file, predicating that rejection on the evidence considered and the findings and decision reached in the public use proceeding. Even if a rejection is not made, the examiner's written action should reflect that the evidence of 35 U.S.C. 102(b) activity has in fact been considered. Likewise, if the examiner concludes that a *prima facie* case (1) has not been established, or (2) has been established and rebutted (MPEP § 2124) then the examiner's written action should so indicate. Strict adherence to this format should cause the rationale employed by the examiner in the written action to be self-evident. In this regard, the use of reasons for allowance pursuant to 37 CFR 1.109 may also be appropriate, MPEP § 1302.14. In *ex parte* cases where the petitioner does not have access to the file, no copy of the examiner's action is mailed to the petitioner by the Office.

There is no review from the final decision of the examiner in the public use proceedings. A petition under 37 CFR 1.181, requesting that the Commissioner exercise his or her supervisory authority and vacate the examiner's decision, will not be entertained except where there is a showing of clear error. See *Ex parte Hartley* 1908 C.D. 224. Once the application returns to its *ex parte* status, appellate review under 35 U.S.C. 134 and 141-145 may be had of any adverse decision rejecting claim(s), as a result of the examiner's decisions as to public use or sale.<

**724 Trade Secret, Proprietary, and Protective Order Materials [R-1]**

>Situations arise in which it becomes necessary, or desirable, for parties to proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office relating to pending patent applications or reexamination proceedings to submit to the Office trade secret, proprietary, and/or protective order materials. Such materials may include those which are subject to a protective or secrecy order issued by a court or by the International Trade Commission (ITC). While one submitting materials to the Office in relation to a pending patent application or reexamination proceeding must generally assume that such materials will be made of record in the file and be made public, the Office is not unmindful of the difficulties this sometimes imposes. The Office is also cognizant of the sentiment expressed by the court in *In re Sarkar*, 197 USPQ 788 at 791 (CCPA 1978), which stated:

"that wherever possible, trade secret law and patent laws should be administered in such manner that the former will not deter an inventor from seeking the benefit of the latter, because, the public is *most* benefited by the early disclosure of the invention in consideration of the patent grant. If a patent applicant is unwilling to pursue his right to a patent at the risk of certain loss of trade secret protection, the two systems will conflict, the public will be deprived of knowledge of the invention in many cases, and inventors will be reluctant to bring unsettled legal questions of significant current interest . . . for resolution."

Parties bringing information to the attention of the Office for use in the examination of applications and reexaminations are frequently faced with the prospect of having legitimate trade secret, proprietary, or protective order material disclosed to the public.

Inventors and others covered by 37 CFR 1.56(c) and 1.555 have a duty to disclose to the Office information

they are aware of which is material to patentability. 37 CFR 1.56(b) states that "information is material to patentability when it is not cumulative to information already of record or being made of record in the application, and (1) it establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, a *prima facie* case of unpatentability of a claim; or (2) it refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes in:

(i) opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) asserting an argument of patentability.

A *prima facie* case of unpatentability is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability."

It is incumbent upon patent applicants, therefore, to bring "material" information to the attention of the Office. It matters not whether the "material" information can be classified as a trade secret, or as proprietary material, or whether it is subject to a protective order. The obligation is the same; it must be disclosed if "material to patentability" as defined in 37 CFR 1.56(b). The same duty rests upon a patent owner under 37 CFR 1.555 whose patent is undergoing reexamination.

Somewhat the same problem faces a protestor under 37 CFR 1.291(a) who believes that trade secret, proprietary, or protective order material should be considered by the Office during the examination of an application.

In some circumstances, it may be possible to submit the information in such a manner that legitimate trade secrets, etc., will not be disclosed, e.g., by appropriate deletions of nonmaterial portions of the information. This should be done only where there will be no loss of information material to patentability under 37 CFR 1.56 or 1.555.

The provisions of this section do not relate to material appearing in the description of the patent application.<

### **724.01 Completeness of the Patent File Wrapper [R-1]**

>It is the intent of the Office that the patent file wrapper be as complete as possible insofar as "material"

information is concerned. The Office attempts to minimize the potential conflict between full disclosure of "material" information as required by 37 CFR 1.56 and protection of trade secret, proprietary, and protective order material to the extent possible.

The procedures set forth in the following sections are designed to enable the Office to ensure as complete a patent file wrapper as possible while preventing unnecessary public disclosure of trade secrets, proprietary material, and protective order material.<

### **724.02 Method of Submitting Trade Secret, Proprietary, and/or Protective Order Materials [R-1]**

>Information which is considered by the party submitting the same to be either trade secret material or proprietary material, and any material subject to a protective order, must be clearly labeled as such and be filed in a sealed, clearly labeled, envelope or container. Each document or item must be clearly labeled as a "Trade Secret" document or item, a "Proprietary" document or item, or as an item or document "Subject To Protective Order." It is essential that the terms "Confidential," "Secret," and "Restricted" or "Restricted Data" not be used when marking these documents or items in order to avoid confusion with national security information documents which are marked with these terms (note also MPEP § 121). If the item or document is "Subject to Protective Order" the proceeding, including the tribunal, must be set forth on each document or item. Of course, the envelope or container, as well as each of the documents or items, must be labeled with complete identifying information for the file to which it is directed, including the Office or area to which the envelope or container is directed.

Examples of appropriate labels for such an envelope or container addressed to an application are as follows: (Appropriate changes would be made for papers filed in a reexamination file.)

A. "TRADE SECRET MATERIAL NOT OPEN TO PUBLIC. TO BE OPENED ONLY BY EXAMINER OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE EMPLOYEE.

In re Application of

Serial No

Filed:

For: (Title of Invention)

**724.03**

Group Art Unit:  
 Examiner:  
 ATTENTION: (Current Location of Application)”

**B. “PROPRIETARY MATERIAL NOT OPEN TO PUBLIC. TO BE OPENED ONLY BY EXAMINER OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PATENT AND TRADE-MARK OFFICE EMPLOYEE.**

In re Application of  
 Serial No  
 Filed:  
 For: (Title of Invention)  
 Examiner:  
 ATTENTION: (Current Location of Application)”

**C. “MATERIAL SUBJECT TO PROTECTIVE ORDER — NOT OPEN TO PUBLIC. TO BE OPENED ONLY BY EXAMINER OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE EMPLOYEE.**

Tribunal Issuing Protective Order:  
 Civil Action or Other Identification No.:  
 Date of Order:  
 Current Status of Proceeding: (Pending, Stayed, etc.)  
 In re application of:  
 Serial No.  
 Filed:  
 For: (Title of Invention)  
 Group Art Unit:  
 Examiner:  
 ATTENTION: (Current Location of Application)”

The envelope or container must be accompanied by a transmittal letter which also contains the same identifying information as the envelope or container. The transmittal letter must also state that the materials in the envelope or container are considered trade secrets or proprietary, or are subject to a protective order, and are being submitted for consideration under MPEP § 724. A petition under 37 CFR 1.182 and fee therefor (37 CFR 1.17(h)) to expunge the information, if found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, may also accompany the envelope or container.

In order to ensure that such an envelope or container is not mishandled, either prior to reaching the Office, or in the Office, the envelope or container should preferably be hand-carried to the particular area to which it is directed and in which the application or reexamination is pending at that time. If the proceeding is then pending in

an examining group, the envelope or container should be hand-carried to the office of the director of the examining group. The Office personnel receiving the envelope or container should be informed that it contains such material. If the envelope or container cannot be hand-carried to the office, it can be mailed to the Patent and Trademark Office in the normal manner, but that method of submission is not as desirable as hand-carrying the envelope or container to the Office or area involved. <

**724.03 Types of Trade Secret, Proprietary, and/or Protective Order Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02 [R-1]**

>The types of materials or information contemplated for submission under MPEP § 724.02 include information “material to patentability” but does not include information favorable to patentability. Thus, any trade secret, proprietary, and/or protective order materials which are required to be submitted on behalf of a patent applicant under 37 CFR 1.56 or patent owner under 37 CFR 1.555 can be submitted in accordance with MPEP § 724.02. Neither 37 CFR 1.56 nor 1.555 require the disclosure of information favorable to patentability, e.g., evidence of commercial success of the invention (see 42 Fed. Reg. 5590). Such information should not be submitted in accordance with MPEP § 724.02. If any trade secret, proprietary, and/or protective order materials are submitted in amendments, arguments in favor of patentability, or affidavits under 37 CFR 1.131 or 1.132, they will be made of record in the file and will not be given any special status.

Insofar as protestors under 37 CFR 1.291(a) are concerned, submissions can be made in accordance with MPEP § 724.02 if protestor or petitioner has access to the application involved. In such cases, of course, the requirements for service must be followed. The Office cannot ensure that the party or parties served will maintain the information secret. If the party or parties served find it necessary or desirable to comment on material submitted under MPEP § 724 before it is, or without its being, found “material to patentability,” such comments should either (1) not disclose the details of the material or (2) be submitted in a separate paper under MPEP § 724.02. <

### **724.04 Office Treatment and Handling of Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02 [R-1]**

>The exact methods of treating and handling materials submitted under MPEP § 724.02 will differ slightly depending upon whether the materials are submitted in an original application subject to the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 122 or whether the submission is made in a reissue application or reexamination file open to the public under 37 CFR 1.11(b) or (d). In any event, Office personnel must not disclose such materials to the public without authorization. Upon receipt of the submission, the transmittal letter and the envelope or container will be date stamped and brought to the attention of the examiner or other Office employee responsible for evaluating the submission. The receipt of the transmittal letter and envelope or container will be noted on the "Contents" of the application or reexamination file. In addition, the face of the application or reexamination file will have the notation placed thereon to indicate that trade secret, proprietary, or protective order material has been filed. The location of the material will also be specified. The words "TRADE SECRET MATERIALS FILED WHICH ARE NOT OPEN TO PUBLIC" on the face of the file are sufficient to indicate the presence of trade secret material. Similar notations will be made for either proprietary or protective order materials.<

#### **724.04(a) Materials Submitted in an Application Covered by 35 U.S.C. 122 [R-1]**

>Any materials submitted under MPEP § 724.02 in an application covered by 35 U.S.C. 122 will be treated in the following manner:

(1) The examiner, or other appropriate Office official who is responsible for considering the information, will make a determination as to whether or not any portion or all of the information submitted is important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent.

(2) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, it will be cited in the next Office action, or other appropriate Office communication and will become a part of the

file history, which upon issuance of the application as a patent would become available to the public.

(3) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, the next Office action or other appropriate Office communication will so indicate without including the details of the submitted information.

(4) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, that information will be resealed in its envelope or container and retained pending the possible filing of a petition to expunge the information.

(5) Any petition to expunge the submitted information or any portion thereof will be treated in accordance with MPEP § 724.05.<

#### **724.04(b) Materials Submitted in Reissue Applications Open to the Public Under 37 CFR 1.11(b) [R-1]**

>Any materials submitted under MPEP § 724.02 in a reissue application open to the public under 37 CFR 1.11(b) will be treated in the following manner:

(1) The submitted information will be maintained separate from the reissue application file and will not be publicly available until a determination has been made as to whether or not the information is important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent.

(2) The examiner, or other appropriate Office official who is responsible for considering the information, will make a determination as to whether or not any portion or all of the information submitted is important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent.

(3) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, it will be cited in the next Office action or other appropriate Office communication and will thereafter become a permanent part of the reissue application file and open to the public.

(4) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, the next Office action or other appropriate

**724.04(c)**

Office communication will so indicate without including in the communication the details of the submitted information.

(5) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent, that information will be resealed in its envelope or container and retained separate from the application file, and unavailable to the public, pending the possible filing of a petition to expunge the information.

(6) Pending the filing of the petition to expunge the sealed envelope or container should be clearly marked "Not Open To The Public" and Office personnel will not make such envelope or container available to any member of the public inspecting the reissue application file.

(7) Any petition to expunge a portion or all of the submitted information will be treated in accordance with MPEP § 724.05.<

**724.04(c) Materials Submitted in Reexamination File Open to the Public Under 37 CFR 1.11(d) [R-1]**

> Any materials submitted under MPEP § 724.02 in a reexamination file open to the public under 37 CFR 1.11(d) will be treated in the following manner:

(1) The submitted information will be maintained separate from the reexamination file and will not be publicly available until a determination has been made as to whether or not the information is important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether or not a claim is patentable.

(2) The examiner, or other appropriate Office official who is responsible for considering the information, will make a determination as to whether or not any portion or all of the information submitted is important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether or not a claim is patentable.

(3) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether or not a claim is patentable, it will be cited in the next Office action or other appropriate Office communication and will thereafter become a permanent part of the reexamination file and open to the public.

(4) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether or not a claim is patentable, the next

Office action or other appropriate Office communication will so indicate without including in the communication the details of the submitted information.

(5) If any portion or all of the submitted information is found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether or not a claim is patentable, that information will be resealed in its envelope or container and retained separate from the reexamination file, and unavailable to the public, pending the possible filing of a petition to expunge the information.

(6) Pending the filing of the petition to expunge the sealed envelope or container should be clearly marked "Not Open To The Public" and Office personnel will not make such envelope or container available to any member of the public inspecting the reexamination file.

(7) Any petition to expunge a portion or all of the submitted information will be treated in accordance with MPEP § 724.05.<

**724.05 Petition To Expunge Materials Submitted Under MPEP § 724.02 [R-1]**

> A petition to expunge information submitted under MPEP § 724.02 will be entertained only if the petition fee (37 CFR 1.17(h)) is filed and the information has been found *not* to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding on patentability. If the information is found to be important to a reasonable examiner in deciding on patentability, any petition to expunge the information will be denied. Any such petition to expunge information submitted under MPEP § 724.02 should be directed to the Office of the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Crystal Park 2, Suite 923. Such petition must contain:

(1) A clear identification of the information to be expunged without disclosure of the details thereof.

(2) A clear statement that the information to be expunged is trade secret material, proprietary material, and/or subject to a protective order, and that the information has not been otherwise made public.

(3) A clear identification of the application paper(s) which held that such information was *not* important to deciding patentability.

(4) A commitment on the part of the petitioner to retain such information for the period of any patent with regard to which such information is submitted.

(5) A statement that the petition to expunge is being submitted by, or on behalf of, the party in interest who originally submitted the information.

(6) The fee (37 CFR 1.17(h)) for a petition under 37 CFR 1.182.

Any such petition to expunge may accompany the submission of the information and, in any event, must be submitted in sufficient time that it can be acted on prior to the date on which the patent or reexamination certificate issues. Timely submission of the petition is, accordingly, extremely important. If the petition does not accompany the information when it is initially submitted, the petition should be submitted while the application or reexamination is pending in the examining group and before it is transmitted to the Publishing Division. If, for

any reason, a decision to expunge cannot be, or is not, made prior to the date on which the patent or reexamination certificate issues any material then in the file will remain therein and be open to the public. Accordingly, it is important that both the submission of any material under MPEP § 724.02 and the submission of any petition to expunge occur as early as possible during the examination process.

It should be noted that petitions to expunge information not submitted under MPEP § 724.02; i.e., information which is a part of the original disclosure such as the specification and drawings, will ordinarily not be favorably entertained. <



**MANUAL OF PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURE**